SUSTAINABLE FORESTRY

Dr. Gunjan Patil
Dr. Bhavana Dixit
Dr. Abhishek Maitry

SUSTAINABLE FORESTRY

SUSTAINABLE FORESTRY

Edited by

Dr. Gunjan Patil
Dr. Bhavana Dixit
Dr. Abhishek Maitry

INTERNATIONAL RESEARCH ACADEMIC PUBLICATION
New Delhi
2026

“Dedicated to the forests that sustain us, and to the communities who steward them.”

Copyright

Sustainable Forestry

Edited by Dr. Gunjan Patil, Dr. Bhavana Dixit and Dr. Abhishek Maitry

First Edition: 2026

Published by:
International Research Academic Publication (I R A Publication)
Registered / editorial office address: 233/1, Pkt: D-12, Sector-7, Rohini, New Delhi-110085, India
Email: info@irapublication.com
Website: www.irapublication.com

ISBN	**:** 978-93-88683-36-4
Book DOI	**:** 10.37648/ira.2026.01.001 (http://doi.org/10.37648/ira.2026.01.001)
Pages	**:** 268 pages
Print MRP	**:** 750 INR

Recommended citation: Patil, G., Dixit, B., & Maitry, A. (Eds.). (2026). Sustainable Forestry. International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Published Online
2026

9 789388 683364

Disclaimer

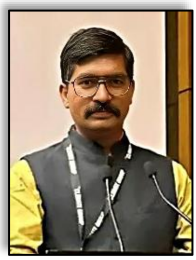
The views and opinions expressed in each chapter of this book are solely those of the respective authors and do not necessarily reflect the official position, policy or endorsement of the editors, the publisher, or the institutions with which the authors are affiliated.

While the editors and the publisher have taken reasonable care to ensure the accuracy of the information contained in this volume at the time of publication, they make no representation or warranty, express or implied, regarding the completeness, reliability, accuracy or suitability of the information, methods, data, equations or recommendations presented herein. Any reliance the reader places on such material is strictly at the reader's own discretion and risk.

The mention of specific companies, products, technologies, organizations, policies or geographical entities does not imply endorsement or recommendation by the editors or the publisher in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned. Boundaries, names and designations used in maps, figures and text do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the editors or the publisher concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area, or of its authorities.

The authors are responsible for obtaining the necessary permissions for any copyrighted material including figures, tables, photographs and extended quotations reproduced in their respective chapters, and for the originality and integrity of their contributions. To the fullest extent permitted by law, the editors and the publisher accept no liability for any loss, injury or damage arising directly or indirectly from the use or application of any content in this book.

Foreword



Shri Dhammshil Ganveer, IFS
Special Secretary
Department of Forest and Climate Change,
Government of Chhattisgarh, Mahanadi Bhawan,
Nawa Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India

Forests are among the most valuable natural assets on Earth. They sustain biodiversity, regulate climate and water cycles, conserve soil, support livelihoods and provide essential ecological, economic and cultural benefits to society. At a time when climate change, biodiversity loss, land degradation and increasing human pressures are transforming forest landscapes, sustainable forestry has become an essential foundation for environmental security and human well-being.

The edited book *Sustainable Forestry* provides a timely and comprehensive perspective on these challenges. Bringing together contributions from diverse disciplines, the book explores the principles and practices of sustainable forest management while addressing contemporary issues such as forest carbon, ecosystem services, social forestry, forest-based livelihoods, restoration, urban forestry, community participation and traditional ecological knowledge.

A major strength of the volume is its interdisciplinary approach. Sustainable forestry cannot be achieved through ecological or technical interventions alone. It requires the integration of scientific knowledge with sound governance, economic considerations, social participation and the experience of forest-dependent communities. The chapters presented in this volume reflect this integrated understanding and highlight the importance of balancing ecological integrity with human needs. The book will be valuable to students, researchers, teachers, forest managers, policymakers and environmental professionals. It offers both conceptual foundations and practical perspectives that can contribute to informed decision-making and responsible forest stewardship.

I congratulate the editors, contributors, reviewers and supporting institutions for their valuable efforts in bringing this volume together. I hope Sustainable Forestry will stimulate further research, encourage interdisciplinary collaboration and inspire effective action towards conserving and sustainably managing forests for present and future generations.

Editors’ Note

This volume brings together fourteen independently authored chapters on the theory, practice and emerging frontiers of sustainable forestry, with a particular (though not exclusive) emphasis on Indian and tropical contexts. The chapters move deliberately from foundational concepts to methods, governance, livelihoods and speculative frontier science, so that the book may be read either continuously, as a structured introduction to the field, or selectively, as a reference on individual themes.

Each chapter is self-contained. It opens with an abstract and keywords, develops its argument through figures, tables and cited evidence, and closes with its own list of references and a suggested citation. In editing the volume, we have sought to preserve the scholarly voice and analytical intent of every contributor: the chapters have been arranged, cross-checked and prepared for typesetting, but they have not been rewritten.

Preface

Forests occupy a singular place in the story of life on Earth. They are at once the planet's largest terrestrial store of carbon, the habitat of most of its land-dwelling species, the regulators of water and soil across whole regions, and the material and cultural foundation of the lives of well over a billion people. They are, as the opening chapter of this volume puts it, the living infrastructure of the biosphere. And yet the same forests that sustain life are being reshaped, and in many places diminished, by the accelerating demands of a growing and rapidly developing human population. The question that animates this book is therefore not whether forests matter, that is beyond dispute, but how the harmonious coexistence of people and forests, which can no longer be taken for granted, might be deliberately and durably designed.

Sustainable forestry is the discipline that takes up this question. Its intellectual roots lie in the centuries-old European principle of sustained yield, the idea that one should harvest no more than a forest can regrow, but its modern form is far broader and more demanding. Contemporary sustainable forest management asks that the ecological, economic and social values of forests be held together rather than traded against one another, and that management decisions be tested against the needs of future generations as much as the present. This volume is organised around that integrative ambition. It proceeds from concepts to consequences: from the meaning of sustainability and the three pillars on which it rests, through the anthropogenic pressures that threaten forests, to the ecosystem-based approaches, restoration strategies, governance arrangements and community institutions through which sustainability is actually pursued.

The book opens with a conceptual foundation that frames sustainable forestry as an integrative, evidence-driven and participatory philosophy rather than a single technique, and maps its contribution to the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals. From there the chapters fan out across the breadth of the field. Several address the carbon question that now dominates forest science and policy: the methods by which carbon stocks are measured in India's forests and plantations; the mechanisms by which forests function as carbon sinks; and the political economy through which forest carbon has been turned into a tradable commodity under REDD+ and the global carbon markets. Read together, these chapters show how a single molecule, carbon, connects the cell wall of a tree to the architecture of international climate finance, and how easily technical accuracy and social justice can pull apart when a living forest is reduced to a number.

A second cluster of chapters is concerned with people and their livelihoods. The volume examines social forestry and livelihood security in a forest-dominated Indian state, the wider dynamics of forest-based livelihoods and the community norms that govern them, and the distinctive and often unrecognised role of tribal women in the sustainable use of non-wood forest produce. These chapters emphasise that meaningful community participation, secure livelihoods and equitable resource management are essential for long-term forest conservation.

A third group turns to the ecological processes and services that underlie everything else, the dynamics of forest regeneration, ecosystem services, urban forestry and nature-based solutions for climate-resilient cities. A review of environmental sustainability in India provides a broader national perspective on current trends and future pathways. The book further highlights traditional ecological knowledge through the living root bridges of Meghalaya and explores emerging perspectives on wood and forest resources. Together, these contributions demonstrate that sustainable forestry requires the integration of ecological science, technological innovation, sound governance and traditional knowledge.

Two editorial commitments have shaped this volume: fidelity to evidence and respect for disciplinary plurality. The chapters draw on current literature, national and international assessments, field experience, and diverse perspectives from ecology, silviculture, economics, governance, materials science and the social sciences. Together, they reflect the inherently interdisciplinary nature of sustainable forestry.

This book is intended for postgraduate students, researchers, teachers, forest managers, policymakers and development practitioners working in forestry, ecology, environmental science, climate and livelihoods. While each chapter can be read independently, the volume as a whole provides a coherent journey from the foundations of sustainability to emerging challenges and opportunities.

No edited volume is possible without the contributions of authors, reviewers and supporting institutions. We sincerely acknowledge their valuable efforts and the support of the publisher. We hope this volume will help students understand, practitioners act and policymakers make informed decisions for the sustainable stewardship of forests for present and future generations.

The Editors

Dr. Gunjan Patil · Dr. Bhavana Dixit · Dr. Abhishek Maitry

2026

Editors' Messages

A Message from Dr. Gunjan Patil

Sustainability, in forestry as in life, is finally a question of balance. The chapters of this book return again and again to a simple but exacting idea: that the ecological, economic and social values of a forest must be kept whole together, because whenever one is pursued at the expense of the others the forest itself begins to fail. My hope for this volume is that it helps its readers to hold that balance in mind, to see a stand of trees at once as a carbon store, a habitat, a source of income and a place of meaning, and to resist the temptation to manage for only one of these at a time.

If the book has a single ambition, it is to move the reader from the older language of sustained yield to the fuller language of sustainability: from asking how much a forest can give, to asking how a forest can flourish while it gives. I offer it to students and colleagues in that spirit, and with gratitude to every contributor who helped to make the argument concrete.

A Message from Dr. Bhavana Dixit

Good forest science is necessary for good forests, but it is not sufficient. What converts knowledge into outcomes is governance, the policies, institutions and incentives that decide whose knowledge counts, who bears the costs and who receives the benefits. Several chapters in this volume examine that machinery directly, from the frameworks that govern carbon and community forestry to the national architecture through which environmental commitments are, or are not, delivered. My own reading of them returns to one conviction: that durable sustainability depends on institutions that are transparent, equitable and well supplied with data.

I hope this book is read not only in seminar rooms but wherever forest policy is made and implemented. If it helps a single decision to be taken with better evidence and a fairer distribution of benefit, it will have earned its place. I thank the contributors and reviewers for the care they brought to a set of genuinely difficult questions.

A Message from Dr. Abhishek Maitry

My own work has been with degraded land with the slow, unglamorous business of helping wounded ecosystems recover and it is from that vantage point that I read this collection. Restoration teaches humility: it reminds us that a forest is easier to lose than to rebuild, and that the knowledge held by the communities who live closest to the land is as valuable as anything measured from a satellite. Many of the chapters here honour that lesson, whether they concern the livelihoods of forest-dependent people, the ecological work of regeneration, or the indigenous engineering of living infrastructure.

I am especially glad that so many of the contributions come from early-career researchers and students. The task of stewarding forests will outlast all of us, and it will be carried forward by exactly these hands. To them, above all, I commend this book as an invitation to go into the field, to keep asking questions, and to treat the forest as something to be understood before it is used.

Editors’ Acknowledgements

An edited volume is a collective achievement, and this one has incurred many debts. Our first and deepest thanks go to the contributing authors, whose scholarship is the substance of this book and whose patience through the editorial process made it possible.

We are grateful to the peer reviewers and advisory colleagues whose critical evaluations strengthened the chapters, and whose contribution is acknowledged in the List of Reviewers. We also thank the institutions with which the contributors are affiliated for the research environments that made this work possible, in particular Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur; the Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg; the Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu; the Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishwavidyalaya, Raipur; Sri Sri University, Cuttack; the State Forest Research and Training Institute, Raipur; the Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur; Govt. E. Raghavendra Rao Post Graduate Science College, Bilaspur; and Madanlal Sahu Government College, Balod.

We thank International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi, for their commitment to the project and for guiding it through production. We gratefully acknowledge any financial or institutional support received in the preparation of book chapters.

Finally, we thank our families and colleagues for their forbearance and encouragement during the long work of editing. Whatever merit this book possesses is shared with all of the above; its remaining shortcomings are our own.

The Editors

Dr. Gunjan Patil · Dr. Bhavana Dixit · Dr. Abhishek Maitry

2026

About the Editors

Dr. Gunjan Patil

Associate Professor

Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur 495009, Chhattisgarh, India.

Correspondence: gunjan210315@gmail.com

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-8195-0398

Area of Interest: Forestry, Restoration Ecology, Phytoremediation, Seed Technology, and Ecorestoration services.

Major Achievements: Awarded an SRF-ASRB, ICAR fellowship in 2009, and qualified for ASRB NET-2009 and 2010.

Dr. Bhavana Dixit

Joint Director

Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur 492002, Chhattisgarh, India.

Correspondence: drbhavandixit@gmail.com

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-6451-1770

Area of Interest: Forest Pathology, Lichenology, Carbon Forestry, Natural Resource Management, Forest Ecology, Biodiversity, and Applied Microbiology.

Major Achievements: Awarded the Beahrs Environmental Leadership Program (ELP), University of California, Berkeley, in 2022 for the programme on Sustainable Environmental Management.

Dr. Abhishek Maitry

Guest Teacher

College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg 491111, Chhattisgarh, India.

Correspondence: abhimaitry@yahoo.com

ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3503-5735

Area of Interest: Restoration Ecology, Soil Reclamation, Wetland Ecology, Forest Genetics, and Wildlife Management.

Major Achievements: Qualified UGC NET in Environmental Sciences and Forestry subject and received Young Researcher Award in the field of Forest Ecology and Environment at International level.

List of Reviewers

The editors gratefully acknowledge the faculties/scholars who served as peer reviewers for the chapters of this book. The manuscript records that the chapters benefited from the comments of critical reviewers and research advisory committee members; however, individual reviewers are not named within the manuscript.

1. **Dr. Sangram B Chavan** Agriculture Research Scientist, ICAR-National Institute of Abiotic Stress Management Malegaon, Baramati, Pune 413115, Maharashtra, India

2. **Dr. Sajiwan Kumar** Associate Professor, School of Studies in Forestry & Wildlife, Shaheed Mahendra Karma Vishwavidyalaya, Jagdalpur 494001, Chhattisgarh, India

3. **Dr. Waghmare Balraju** Post Doctoral Fellow, Birbal Sahni Institute of Palaeosciences, Lucknow 226007, Uttar Pradesh, India

4. **Dr. Preety Dubey** Adhoc Faculty, School of Studies in Forestry & Wildlife, Shaheed Mahendra Karma Vishwavidyalaya, Jagdalpur 494001, Chhattisgarh, India

5. **Dr. Ekta Singh** Guest Faculty, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg 491111, Chhattisgarh, India

6. **Dr. Damini Sharma** Assistant Professor, Department of Forest Biology and Tree Improvement, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg - 491111, Chhattisgarh, India

7. **Ms. Sudipa Priyadarshini** Research Scholar, Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Agriculture, Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishwavidyalaya, Raipur 492012, Chhattisgarh, India

8. **Dr. Samyak Singh** Special Project Associate, CAMPA Project, Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur 495009, Chhattisgarh, India

9. **Dr. Ashutosh Anand** Junior Research Fellow, State Forest Research and Training Institute, Raipur 493111, Chhattisgarh, India

10. **Ms. Hemlata Jaiswal** Research Scholar, Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur 495009, Chhattisgarh, India

List of Contributors

1. **Dr. Abhishek Maitry**
College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India; and State Forest Research and Training Institute, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India.

2. **Aishwarya Chandra**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

3. **Aishwary Kant Vaishnav**
Department of Forest Product and Utilization, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

4. **Animesh Shukla**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

5. **Dr. Anupama Mahato**
Department of Botany, Govt. E. Raghavendra Rao Post Graduate Science College, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

6. **Aradhana Lakra**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

7. **Dr. Bhavana Dixit**
Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India.

8. **Bheemreddyvalla Venkateshwar Reddy**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

9. **Dr. Damini Sharma**
Department of Forest Biology and Tree Improvement, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

10. **Dinesh Manhare**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

11. **Prof. Garima Tiwari**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

12. **Dr. Gunjan Patil**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

13. **Hina**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

14. **Jaagriti Patra**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

15. **Janhvi Gupta**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

16. **Katikala Anish**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

17. **Prof. Krishna K. Chandra**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

18. **Dr. Manoj Kumar Kashyap**
State Forest Research and Training Institute, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India.

19. **Mhaiskar Priya Rajendra**
Department of Forest Ecology and Climate Science, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

20. **Dr. Milkuri Chiranjeeva Reddy**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

21. **Nalini**
Department of Forest Biology and Tree Improvement, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

22. **Dr. Poonam Xess**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

23. **Dr. Ramesh**
Department of Botany, Madanlal Sahu Government College, Armarikala, Balod, Chhattisgarh, India.

24. **Rohith Ravula**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

25. **Rushali Mishra**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

26. **Sachin Kumar**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

27. **Saket Kumar Kosma**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

28. **Shishir Chandrakar**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

29. **Subham Ghose**
Department of Agricultural Economics, Faculty of Agriculture, Sri Sri University, Cuttack, Odisha, India.

30. **Sudipa Priyadarshini**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Agriculture, Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishwavidyalaya, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India.

31. **Prof. S. C. Tiwari**
Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India.

32. **Ujjwal Swarnkar**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

33. **Dr. Yamini Baghel**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India.

34. **Yerrawada Naveen**
Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India.

Table of Contents

Preliminary Pages

Chapters

CHAPTER 1

Sustainable Forestry: Concepts, Imperatives and Pathways for a Resilient Future

Gunjan Patil[1], Bhavana Dixit[2] and Abhishek Maitry[3]*

[1]*Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur– 495009, India*

[2]*Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur– 492001, Chhattisgarh India*

[3]*College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg– 491111, Chhattisgarh, India*

*Corresponding E-mail: abhimaitry@yahoo.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Patil, G., Dixit, B., & Maitry, A. (2026). Sustainable Forestry: Concepts, Imperatives and Pathways for a Resilient Future. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 1-12). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Forests are the living infrastructure of the biosphere: they regulate the global climate, safeguard freshwater and soils, harbour the majority of terrestrial biodiversity, and underpin the livelihoods, culture, and health of billions of people. Yet the same forests that sustain life are being reshaped by intensifying human demands, so that the harmonious coexistence of people and forests can no longer be assumed; it must be deliberately designed. This introductory chapter frames the conceptual foundations of sustainable forestry and argues that the central challenge of the field is to secure the long-term sustainability of society while minimizing the pressures placed on finite forest resources. Beginning with the global distribution of forests, where, according to the World Bank (2023), the Russian Federation alone accounts for roughly 20% of the world's forest cover and Brazil, Canada, the United States, and China together contribute approximately 31%, the chapter situates forests as active regulators of the Earth's climate system and as a carbon sink equivalent to almost half of global fossil-fuel emissions. It then develops sustainable forestry through its three interlocking pillars (ecological integrity, economic viability, and social equity) before examining the anthropogenic pressures of agricultural expansion, degradation, overexploitation, and climate change that threaten forest permanence. The discussion advances ecosystem-based approaches, scientific research, and adaptive management as the technical core of sustainability, and community participation and multi-stakeholder engagement as its social core. Finally, the chapter maps the contribution of forests to the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals, emphasising collective responsibility and enhanced public awareness of the ecological, economic, and social importance of forests. Together these themes establish sustainable forestry not as a single technique but as an integrative, evidence-driven, and participatory philosophy for stewarding forests across generations.

Keywords: sustainability; forests; biodiversity; community participation; climate.

1. Introduction

1.1 The Global Distribution and Significance of Forests

Forests cover approximately 4.06 billion hectares, or about 31% of the world's land area, and their distribution is strikingly uneven (Food and Agriculture Organization [FAO], 2020). More than half of all forests are concentrated in a handful of nations. According to the World Bank (2023), the Russian Federation alone accounts for about 20% of the world's forest cover, while Brazil, Canada, the United States, and China together contribute approximately 31%. This concentration carries a profound implication: decisions taken by a small number of states, and by the communities and enterprises operating within them, exert an outsized influence on the global forest estate and on the ecological services that flow from it. Forests are not a uniform resource but a mosaic of boreal, temperate, tropical, and dryland systems, each with distinct dynamics, vulnerabilities, and management needs (FAO & United Nations Environment Programme [UNEP], 2020).

The importance of forests is simultaneously ecological, economic, and social. Ecologically, they store the majority of terrestrial carbon, stabilise soils, regulate hydrological cycles, and provide habitat for a large share of the planet's known species (Maitry et al., 2023). Economically, they supply timber, fuelwood, fibre, and a wealth of non-timber forest products, while sustaining industries and rural economies. Socially, an estimated 1.6 billion people depend on forests to varying degrees for food, medicine, energy, income, and cultural identity. Enhancing public awareness of these intertwined values, and of the collective responsibility they imply, is a prerequisite for conservation, because forests are ultimately sustained or degraded by the cumulative choices of societies (FAO & UNEP, 2020).

1.2 Forests as Regulators of the Global Climate System

Beyond the goods they provide, forests perform a planetary regulatory function. Through photosynthesis they withdraw carbon dioxide (CO_2) from the atmosphere and lock it into biomass and soils, making them central to the moderation of climate change. Synthesising in-situ measurements across boreal, temperate, and tropical biomes over three decades, Pan et al. (2024) found that the global forest carbon sink has remained remarkably steady at roughly 3.5 petagrams of carbon per year, an uptake equivalent to almost half of fossil-fuel emissions. Critically, however, they also showed that around two-thirds of this benefit has been negated by tropical deforestation, and that sinks in boreal and intact tropical forests are weakening under intensifying disturbance. The regulatory capacity of forests is therefore neither automatic nor guaranteed; it is contingent on how forests are managed, protected, and restored (Mo et al., 2023).

This dual character, in which forests are both providers of resources and regulators of climate (Maitry et al., 2023), defines the tension at the heart of this book. Increasing human demands and developmental pressures challenge the harmonious coexistence of people and forests, and the discipline of sustainable forestry exists precisely to reconcile them. (Maitry et al., 2024; Maitry et al., 2025a)

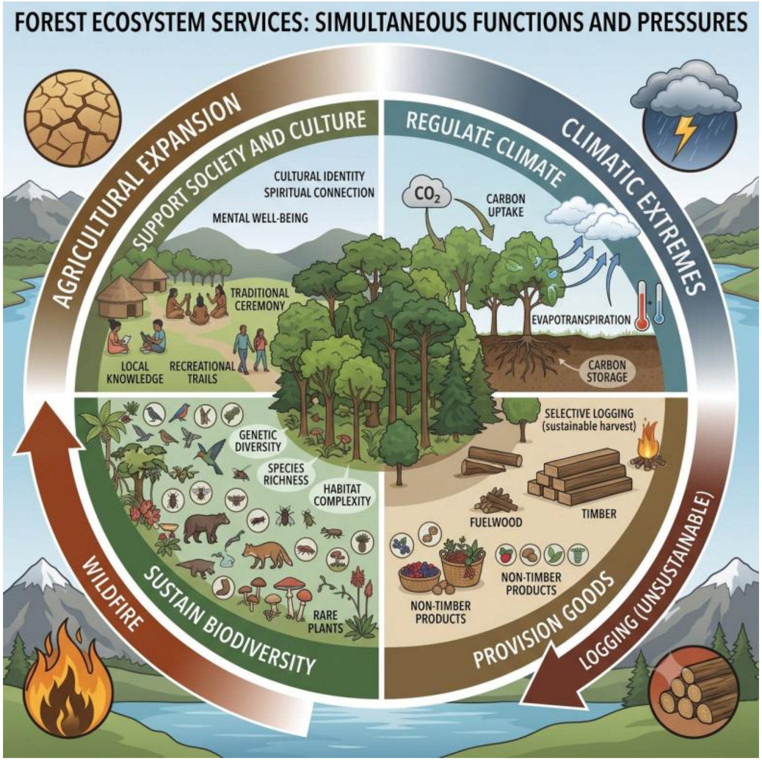


Figure 1. The multifunctional roles of forests. Forests simultaneously regulate climate (carbon uptake, storage, and evapotranspiration), provision goods (timber, fuelwood, and non-timber products), sustain biodiversity, and support society and culture, even as agricultural expansion, logging, wildfire, and climatic extremes press inward on these functions.

2. The Concept of Sustainable Forestry

2.1 From Sustained Yield to Sustainability

The idea that forests should be used without exhausting them is centuries old, originating in the European concept of sustained yield, the principle of harvesting no more timber than the forest could regrow. Modern sustainable forestry, however, is far broader. It is anchored in the definition of sustainable development articulated by the World Commission on Environment and Development (WCED, 1987) as development that “meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.” Applied to forests, this reframes the objective from maximising a single product to sustaining the full portfolio of ecological, economic, and social values over the long term. The critical gap that sustainable forestry addresses is thus the long-term sustainability of society itself, achieved while minimizing the pressures exerted on forest resources (Marchi et al., 2018).

2.2 The Three Pillars of Sustainable Forestry

Contemporary sustainable forest management (SFM) rests on three interdependent pillars (ecological, economic, and social) that must be kept in balance rather than traded off against one another (Grünberg et al., 2023). Sustainability is achieved only when all three dimensions are satisfied simultaneously; privileging one at the expense of the others produces the very trade-offs that undermine forest permanence (Schweier et al., 2019).

Figure 2. The three interlocking pillars of sustainable forestry. Sustainability is realised only where the ecological, economic, and social pillars overlap; the pairwise intersections (viable, bearable, and equitable) remain partial, and only their shared core represents sustainable forestry.

2.2.1 Ecological Sustainability

The ecological pillar concerns the maintenance of forest health, productivity, biodiversity, and ecological processes. It requires that harvesting and other interventions remain within the regenerative capacity of the ecosystem, that soil and water are protected, and that structural and species diversity is conserved as the basis of resilience (Marchi et al., 2018).

2.2.2 Economic Sustainability

The economic pillar recognises that forests must generate sufficient and enduring value, through timber, non-timber products, ecotourism, and payments for ecosystem services, to justify their retention against competing land uses. Productivity and cost remain the most frequently assessed criteria in practice, reflecting the sector's continued economic emphasis (Grünberg et al., 2023).

2.2.3 Social Sustainability

The social pillar addresses the rights, livelihoods, safety, and cultural values of forest-dependent people and forest workers. Reviews consistently find this pillar to be the least studied of the three, revealing a persistent blind spot that sustainable forestry must correct if it is to be genuinely balanced (Grünberg et al., 2023).

Table 1. The three pillars of sustainable forestry: objectives, representative indicators, and illustrative interventions.

Pillar	Core objective	Representative indicators	Illustrative interventions
Ecological	Maintain forest health, biodiversity, and ecological processes	Growing stock, deadwood volume, species richness, soil and water quality	Reduced-impact logging, retention of habitat trees, protected buffers
Economic	Secure enduring and equitable economic value	Yield and productivity, cost efficiency, revenue diversity, value added	Non-timber products, ecotourism, payments for ecosystem services, certification
Social	Protect rights, livelihoods, safety, and culture	Employment, tenure security, worker safety, benefit-sharing, participation	Community forestry, fair benefit-sharing, capacity building, safe work practices

3. Anthropogenic Pressures on Forest Resources

Forests sustain life, yet increasing human demands and developmental pressures challenge this harmonious coexistence. Understanding these pressures is essential, because sustainable forestry is in large part a structured response to them.

3.1 Deforestation and Agricultural Expansion

Agricultural expansion is the dominant driver of forest loss. Synthesising pantropical evidence, Pendrill et al. (2022) estimated that 90–99% of tropical deforestation between 2011 and 2015 was driven by agriculture, although only 45–65% of cleared land became productive farmland within a few years, implying substantial inefficiency and speculative clearing. At the landscape scale, commercial and subsistence agriculture, followed by settlement expansion and infrastructure development, are repeatedly identified as the principal drivers, with commodities such as rubber, cassava, and maize prominent among them (Jayathilake et al., 2020). These findings indicate that halting deforestation requires both deforestation-free supply chains and landscape-level governance.

3.2 Forest Degradation and Overexploitation

Even where forests are not cleared outright, degradation erodes their structure, biodiversity, and carbon stocks. In tropical Asia, Laurance (2024) documented severe forest loss exceeding 70% in half of the major forested nations, driven by expanding human populations alongside industrial logging and plantation development, and compounded by weak governance and corruption. Degradation is often less visible than deforestation but can be equally consequential for ecological function (Maitry et al., 2025b).

3.3 Climate Change as a Compounding Pressure

Climate change acts as a threat multiplier, intensifying drought, fire, pest outbreaks, and storm damage. As Pan et al. (2024) demonstrated, disturbance-driven losses are already weakening carbon sinks in boreal and intact tropical forests, creating feedback in which a degraded forest both stores less carbon and becomes more vulnerable to further loss. The pressures on forests are thus interacting rather than independent, demanding integrated rather than piecemeal responses.

Table 2. Principal anthropogenic pressures on forests, their drivers, and consequences.

Pressure	Principal drivers	Ecological and social consequences
Deforestation	Commercial and subsistence agriculture, cattle ranching, infrastructure	Habitat and biodiversity loss, carbon emissions, hydrological disruption
Forest degradation	Unsustainable and illegal logging, fuelwood extraction, overgrazing	Reduced carbon stocks, simplified structure, loss of resilience
Land-use conversion	Plantation expansion, urbanisation, mining	Fragmentation, edge effects, displacement of communities
Climate change	Rising temperatures, altered rainfall, extreme events	Increased fire, pests, and drought stress; weakening carbon sinks

4. Ecosystem-Based Approaches and Forest Management

If Section 3 defines the problem, ecosystem-based approaches define the technical response. They shift the unit of management from the individual stand or product to the whole ecosystem and the services it provides.

4.1 Ecosystem-Based Management and Nature-based Solutions

Ecosystem-based approaches manage forests as integrated socio-ecological systems, seeking to sustain the full suite of services (carbon, water, biodiversity, and livelihoods) simultaneously. They are closely allied with nature-based solutions (NbS), defined as actions that work with nature to address societal challenges while benefiting both people and biodiversity (Seddon et al., 2020). A global systematic assessment found that interventions in natural and semi-natural ecosystems more often ameliorated climate impacts than not, and generally performed as well as or better than engineered alternatives (Chausson et al., 2020). However, NbS are not a panacea: they cannot substitute for the rapid phase-out of fossil fuels, must extend beyond simplistic tree-planting to protect intact and diverse ecosystems, and should be implemented with the full engagement of local communities (Seddon et al., 2021).

4.2 Restoration of Degraded Forest Landscapes

Because so much of the forest estate is already degraded, restoration is now integral to sustainable forestry. Global assessments indicate that forest carbon storage sits far below its natural potential, with the majority of that potential recoverable simply by allowing existing but degraded forests to recover to maturity under protection (Mo et al., 2023). Restoration is most durable when it prioritises native, diverse, and locally appropriate systems over monocultures, thereby rebuilding ecological function rather than merely increasing canopy cover.

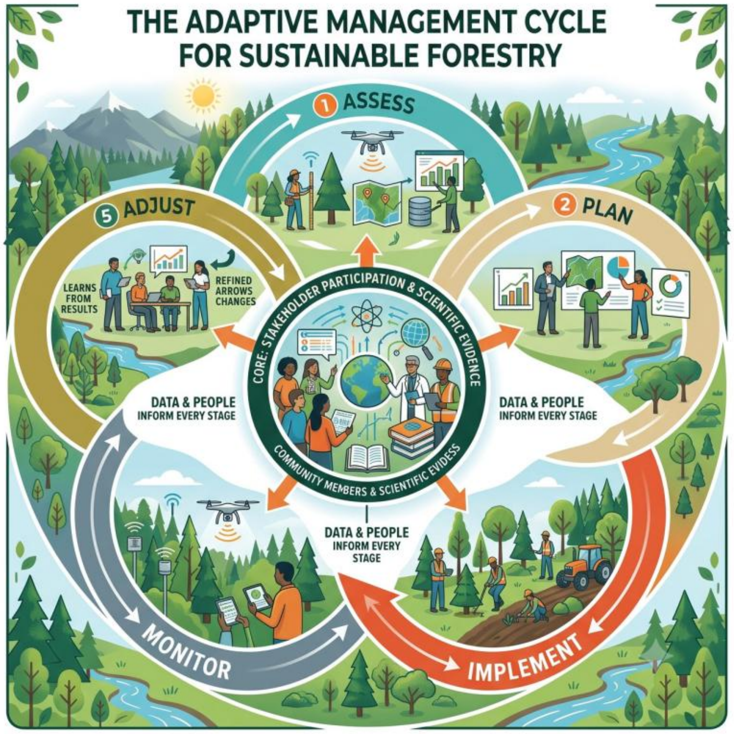


Figure 3. The adaptive management cycle for sustainable forestry. Management proceeds as a continuous five-stage loop (assess, plan, implement, monitor, and adjust) turning around a core of stakeholder participation and scientific evidence, so that data and people inform every stage.

4.3 Scientific Research, Monitoring, and Adaptive Management

Sound management depends on sound evidence. Scientific research, long-term monitoring, and the selection of appropriate criteria and indicators allow managers to detect change, evaluate trade-offs, and adjust practice accordingly (Schweier et al., 2019). This adaptive, iterative posture, learning by doing and revising in light of new information, is indispensable under the deep uncertainty introduced by climate change, and it links the technical and social dimensions of sustainability by making management transparent and accountable.

5. The Role of Community Participation and Stakeholders

Sustainable forestry cannot be achieved by technical prescription alone; it is realised through people. Community participation and stakeholder engagement are therefore not optional add-ons but structural components of durable forest governance.

5.1 Community Forest Management

Devolving rights and responsibilities to local users has been promoted for decades as a way to align conservation with development. In the most comprehensive analysis to date, spanning 643 cases across 51 countries, Hajjar et al. (2020) found that community forest management delivered positive environmental and income outcomes in the majority of cases, although forest access and resource rights were sometimes weakened by the very policies intended to formalise management. Positive outcomes across all dimensions were rare and depended on enabling conditions such as secure tenure, favourable biophysical conditions, and well-designed interventions.

5.2 Joint Forest Management and Co-management

In South Asia, Joint Forest Management (JFM) and landscape co-management have institutionalised the sharing of authority between state agencies and local communities. A study of JFM in the Kashmir Himalayas found moderate levels of participation across planning, implementation, and monitoring, with education, landholding, training, and access to information promoting engagement, and factors such as a lack of incentives and restrictions on harvesting discouraging it (Thoker et al., 2024). Co-management under Pakistan's large-scale afforestation programme similarly improved rural livelihoods where community-based organisations were established, while elite capture and inadequate incentives constrained participation (Ullah et al., 2022). The lesson is consistent: participation must be genuine, equitable, and supported by fair benefit-sharing to succeed.

5.3 Multi-stakeholder Governance

Beyond local communities, sustainable forestry engages a wide array of stakeholders (governments, the private sector, civil society, researchers, and Indigenous Peoples) whose interests must be negotiated. Sustainability impact assessment offers a framework for making these trade-offs explicit and defensible for policymakers and stakeholders alike (Schweier et al., 2019). Inclusive governance that respects rights and distributes benefits fairly is the social foundation upon which the ecological and economic pillars ultimately rest.

Table 3. Key stakeholder groups in sustainable forestry: primary interests and typical roles.

Stakeholder group	Primary interests	Typical roles and contributions
Local and Indigenous communities	Livelihoods, tenure, cultural and spiritual values	On-the-ground stewardship, traditional knowledge, monitoring
Government and forest agencies	Policy, regulation, revenue, public goods	Legal frameworks, enforcement, technical support, coordination

Stakeholder group	Primary interests	Typical roles and contributions
Private sector and industry	Timber and product supply, profitability, market access	Investment, sustainable sourcing, certification, employment
Researchers and academia	Evidence, innovation, capacity building	Data, criteria and indicators, monitoring tools, training
Civil society and NGOs	Conservation, equity, accountability	Advocacy, facilitation, safeguarding of rights

6. Contributions to the Sustainable Development Goals

The relevance of sustainable forestry extends across the United Nations 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development and its 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) (United Nations [UN], 2015). Forests contribute most directly to SDG 15 (Life on Land), SDG 13 (Climate Action), and SDG 2 (Zero Hunger), but their influence radiates further, to clean water (SDG 6), affordable and clean energy through fuelwood (SDG 7), poverty reduction (SDG 1), and decent work (SDG 8) (Baumgartner, 2019). Importantly, these contributions are neither uniform nor automatic: they vary with forest type, condition, and management practice, and can involve trade-offs as well as synergies (Ahrens et al., 2025).

Table 4. Selected linkages between sustainable forestry and the Sustainable Development Goals.

Sustainable Development Goal	Contribution of sustainable forestry
SDG 1 – No Poverty	Forest income, employment, and safety nets for rural and forest-dependent people
SDG 2 – Zero Hunger	Food, fodder, and agroforestry systems that support nutrition and farm resilience
SDG 6 – Clean Water and Sanitation	Watershed protection, regulation of flows, and reduction of soil erosion
SDG 7 – Affordable and Clean Energy	Sustainable fuelwood and bioenergy for billions of people
SDG 13 – Climate Action	Carbon sequestration, storage, and adaptation through nature-based solutions
SDG 15 – Life on Land	Biodiversity conservation, restoration of degraded land, and halting deforestation

The forest sector therefore plays a dual role, capable of advancing sustainability yet also of undermining it when poorly governed, which is why integrated assessment is needed to determine whether a given policy genuinely supports the SDGs (Baumgartner, 2019). Despite the widespread invocation of the SDGs, holistic methods for measuring the forest–SDG relationship remain underdeveloped, indicating an important agenda for future research (Aguayo Lopes da Silva et al., 2023). Recognising forests as cross-cutting enablers of the SDGs reframes sustainable forestry as a contribution not merely to environmental protection but to the entire development project of the twenty-first century.

7. Conclusion

Forests are at once a resource that societies consume and a regulator on which all societies depend. This introductory chapter has argued that reconciling these roles is the defining task of sustainable forestry. The global concentration of forests in a few nations, and their function as a carbon sink equivalent to nearly half of fossil-fuel emissions, mean that the stakes of getting forest management right are planetary in scale. Yet the same forests face mounting and interacting pressures (agricultural expansion, degradation, overexploitation, and climate change) that no single intervention can resolve. The response set out here is deliberately integrative. Sustainable forestry balances the ecological, economic, and social pillars rather than trading them against one another; it deploys ecosystem-based approaches, restoration, and adaptive management grounded in scientific evidence; and it treats community participation and multi-stakeholder engagement as structural necessities rather than courtesies. Positioned within the 2030 Agenda, sustainable forestry emerges as a cross-cutting enabler of human development as well as environmental protection. The overarching message is one of collective responsibility. Forests are sustained or lost through the cumulative decisions of states, enterprises, communities, and individuals, and enhancing public awareness of their ecological, economic, and social importance is therefore not peripheral to conservation but central to it. The chapters that follow build on this foundation, translating the concepts introduced here into the science, policy, and practice of stewarding forests for present and future generations.

References

Aguayo Lopes da Silva, R., Fernandes, M. M., Fernandes, M. R. de M., & Brandão, F. (2023). How is the forest sector's contribution to the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) being addressed? A systematic review of the methods. Sustainability, 15(9), 7084. https://doi.org/10.3390/su15097084

Ahrens, D., Baumann, M., & Weber, N. (2025). Rethinking synergies and trade-offs at the forest–Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) nexus: A systematic review. Sustainable Development. Advance online publication. https://doi.org/10.1002/sd.3187

Baumgartner, R. J. (2019). Sustainable Development Goals and the forest sector: A complex relationship. Forests, 10(2), 152. https://doi.org/10.3390/f10020152

Chausson, A., Turner, B., Seddon, D., Chabaneix, N., Girardin, C. A. J., Kapos, V., Key, I., Roe, D., Smith, A., Woroniecki, S., & Seddon, N. (2020). Mapping the effectiveness of nature-based solutions for climate change adaptation. Global Change Biology, 26(11), 6134–6155. https://doi.org/10.1111/gcb.15310

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2020). Global Forest Resources Assessment 2020: Main report. FAO. https://doi.org/10.4060/ca9825en

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations & United Nations Environment Programme. (2020). The state of the world's forests 2020: Forests, biodiversity and people. FAO & UNEP. https://doi.org/10.4060/ca8642en

Grünberg, J., Ghaffariyan, M. R., Jourgholami, M., Labelle, E. R., Kaakkurivaara, N., Robert, R. C. G., & Kühmaier, M. (2023). Criteria for assessing the sustainability of logging operations: A systematic review. Current Forestry Reports, 9(6), 350–369. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40725-023-00203-3

Hajjar, R., Oldekop, J. A., Cronkleton, P., Newton, P., Russell, A. J. M., & Zhou, W. (2020). A global analysis of the social and environmental outcomes of community forests. Nature Sustainability, 4(3), 216–224. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41893-020-00633-y

Jayathilake, H. M., Prescott, G. W., Carrasco, L. R., Rao, M., & Symes, W. S. (2020). Drivers of deforestation and degradation for 28 tropical conservation landscapes. Ambio, 50(1), 215–228. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13280-020-01325-9

Laurance, W. F. (2024). Forest destruction in tropical Asia. Current Science, 126(1), 7–14.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025a). Evaluating phytoremediation approaches for the restoration of degraded ecosystems in India. Nature Environment & Pollution Technology, 24(2). https://doi.org/10.46488/NEPT.2025.v24i02.B4262

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025b). Quantitative assessment of vegetation dynamics through species composition and diversity indices in restoring Nandini limestone mines, Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Bio-resource and Stress Management, 16(4), 1–11. https://doi.org/10.23910/1.2025.6035

Maitry, A., Patil, G., Dubey, P., & Ramesh. (2024). Heavy metal stress management through phytoremediation to mitigate climate change impacts: an overview. International Journal of Environment and Climate Change, 14(4), 708–718. https://doi.org/10.9734/IJECC/2024/v14i44152

Maitry, A., Sharma, D., Shah, P., Baretha, G., Ramesh, & Patil, G. (2023). Assessment of wetland ecosystem services (RAWES approach) in an urban settlement area: a case study of Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. Indian Journal of Ecology, 50(4), 954–962. https://doi.org/10.55362/IJE/2023/3995

Marchi, E., Chung, W., Visser, R., Abbas, D., Nordfjell, T., Mederski, P. S., McEwan, A., Brink, M., & Laschi, A. (2018). Sustainable Forest Operations (SFO): A new paradigm in a changing world and climate. Science of the Total Environment, 634, 1385–1397. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2018.04.084

Mo, L., Zohner, C. M., Reich, P. B., Liang, J., de Miguel, S., Nabuurs, G.-J., Renner, S. S., van den Hoogen, J., Araza, A., Herold, M., Mirzagholi, L., Ma, H., Averill, C., Phillips, O. L., Gamarra, J. G. P., Hordijk, I., Routh, D., Abegg, M., Adou Yao, Y. C., … Crowther, T. W. (2023). Integrated global assessment of the natural forest carbon potential. Nature, 624(7990), 92–101. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-023-06723-z

Pan, Y., Birdsey, R. A., Phillips, O. L., Houghton, R. A., Fang, J., Kauppi, P. E., Keith, H., Kurz, W. A., Ito, A., Lewis, S. L., Nabuurs, G.-J., Shvidenko, A., Hashimoto, S., Lerink, B., Schepaschenko, D., Castanho, A., & Murdiyarso, D. (2024). The enduring world forest carbon sink. Nature, 631(8021), 563–569. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-024-07602-x

Pendrill, F., Gardner, T. A., Meyfroidt, P., Persson, U. M., Adams, J., Azevedo, T., Bastos Lima, M. G., Baumann, M., Curtis, P. G., De Sy, V., Garrett, R., Godar, J., Goldman, E. D., Hansen, M. C., Heilmayr, R., Herold, M., Kuemmerle, T., Lathuillière, M. J., Ribeiro, V., … West, C. (2022). Disentangling the numbers behind agriculture-driven tropical deforestation. Science, 377(6611), eabm9267. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.abm9267

Schweier, J., Magagnotti, N., Labelle, E. R., & Athanassiadis, D. (2019). Sustainability impact assessment of forest operations: A review. Current Forestry Reports, 5(3), 101–113. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40725-019-00091-6

Seddon, N., Chausson, A., Berry, P., Girardin, C. A. J., Smith, A., & Turner, B. (2020). Understanding the value and limits of nature-based solutions to climate change and other global challenges. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B, 375(1794), 20190120. https://doi.org/10.1098/rstb.2019.0120

Seddon, N., Smith, A., Smith, P., Key, I., Chausson, A., Girardin, C., House, J., Srivastava, S., & Turner, B. (2021). Getting the message right on nature-based solutions to climate change. Global Change Biology, 27(8), 1518–1546. https://doi.org/10.1111/gcb.15513

Thoker, I. A., Bhat, M. S., & Mir, R. A. (2024). An appraisal of people's participation in the joint forest management programme in the Kashmir Himalayas. Forest Policy and Economics, 160, 103159. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.forpol.2024.103159

Ullah, A., Zeb, A., Saqib, S. E., & Kächele, H. (2022). Landscape co-management and livelihood sustainability: Lessons learned from the billion trees afforestation project in Pakistan. Land Use Policy, 115, 106034. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.landusepol.2022.106034

United Nations. (2015). Transforming our world: The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development (A/RES/70/1). United Nations.

World Bank. (2023). Forest area (% of land area) [Data set]. World Bank Open Data. https://data.worldbank.org/indicator/AG.LND.FRST.ZS

World Commission on Environment and Development. (1987). Our common future. Oxford University Press.

CHAPTER 2

Potential role of Urban Green Spaces (UGS) as Nature Based Solutions (NbS) in mitigating the Climate Change impact: A review

Anupama Mahato*

Department of Botany, Govt. E. Raghavendra Rao Post Graduate Science College, Bilaspur, C.G, India

*Corresponding E-mail: anupamamahato4@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Mahato, A. (2026). Potential role of Urban Green Spaces (UGS) as Nature Based Solutions (NbS) in mitigating the Climate Change impact: A review. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 13-20). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Unplanned urbanization is eventually results in unsustainable cities that are susceptible to the climatic shift. The most frequent climate change hazards that urban areas face are urban heat island effect, extreme flooding, air pollution, biodiversity loss and many more. This review aims to determine how urban green spaces assist individuals in coping with the climate change impact in urban landscape. The innumerable benefits of UGS are discussed in this review. When creating UGSs, which serve as the Nature based Solutions for adapting to and reducing climate change events, the choice of tree species should also be taken into account. Academician, policy makers, local and national planning officials, and others may find the review useful in implementing and creating Urban Green Spaces.

Keywords: Nature based Solutions (NbS); Urban Green Space (UGS); Climate change; Urban forests; sustainability.

1. Introduction

Urbanization restricts society's access to better jobs, healthcare, and living circumstances, but it also offers chances for economic, social and technical growth (Ramaiah & Avatar, 2019). However, unplanned urbanization and potential climate change are unfriendly and unsustainable.

Carbon dioxide is the primary cause of global warming and the climate change events to it. The concentration of CO2 in the atmosphere raised from 280 ppm from preindustrial era to over 420 ppm at present. The urban environment is suffering from the accelerated effects of climate change events such as flooding, urban heat island, soil erosion, water scarcity, decline in biodiversity etc. Dense infrastructure in cities also makes a substantial contribution to greenhouse gas emissions. Grossi et al. (2023) reported in their research that buildings accounts for 39% of global energy related greenhouse gas emissions, with materials and construction methods accounting for 11%. The remaining 28% of emissions are caused by operational factors like building energy use and heating and cooling.

In order to limit the global warming below 1.5 °C, 730 billion tons of CO_2 must be eliminated from the atmosphere this century (IPCC). This necessitates fixing of atmospheric carbon dioxide into the terrestrial and aquatic ecosystem (Bussotti and Pollastrini, 2025). Using nature-based solutions could be an effective approach in achieving this target.

'Nature Based Solutions' refers to the concept of leveraging nature to assist in achieving the Sustainable Development Goals (Srinurak et al., 2024).

Recently the conception of Nature based Solutions (NbS) has increased vigorously and also being promoted by prominent-by-prominent organizations such as the Nature Conservancy and the IUCN (Cohen-Shacham et al., 2025, Seddon et al., 2020). Many countries are using NbS as a long term, sustainable approach to development (O'Sullivan et al., 2020, Bartlett & Mistry, 2021). It includes Spain transitioning to organic forestry, Slovenia toward rewildling, Ethiopia concentrating on sediment trapping, Iceland moving toward land restoration and Sweden toward wetland development (Keesstra et. al., 2018).

The only living element and vital element of the urban infra structure are Urban Green Spaces (UGS). It encompasses both public and private open spaces in cities that are directly or indirectly accessible to users. The advantages of urban green spaces for human health, the environment, society, culture, and economy were discussed by a number of scientists (Zhao et al., 2024, Collins et. al., 2019, Hoyle et. al., 2020, Shah, et al. 2021). Furthermore, it improves the quality of life and behaviour of residents (Mahato et al., 2023, Mikiugu et. al., 2012). Functional advantages offered by UGS include atmospheric and indoor cooling, reduced air temperature, air pollution dispersion, carbon sequestration, flood control, storm damage reduction, noise reduction, climate regulation, aesthetics and quality of life.

UGS can provides both adaptation and mitigation opportunities against climate change (Haq et. al., 2021, Duan et. al., 2018). In order to address climate change, it is imperative that technological innovation and socio-ecological principles which prioritize human wellfare and community-based decision making should be incorporated (Gulsrud et. al., 2018). In order to design climate resilient urban infrastructure planned urban landscape may play important role in it (Farhadi et. al., 2025).

This paper draws on pertinent studies and literature reviews to outline the role of urban forests in addressing climate change. The findings may help government officials and city planners in recognizing the multiple benefits of the existing UGS. In addition, this review may highlight the potential contribution of UGS in reducing the UHI effect.

2. Methodology

A literature review has been conducted using various database (sub as Web of Science, Science Direct, SpringerLink, MDPI, Scopus, PubMed) available through online. The selected publications were dated between 2010 and 2025. The primary keywords utilized included Urban Green Spaces, Urban Blue Spaces, Climate Change & Urban Green Spaces, Nature Based Solutions, Climate Change & urban areas, urban forestry, urban greening etc. A total number of 70 articles from different regions were included.

3. Result and Discussion

This section explains how UGS helps mitigate the effects of climate change based on the conclusions and findings reported in the publications chosen as the final sample of study. The WHO (World Health Organization) recommended 9 square meters of green space per person, however the Urban Development Plans Formulation & Implementation (UDPFI) guideline, 2014, states that India should have 10-12 square meters of urban green and open spaces because of its multiple benefits.

During heat waves, green canopies offer shade and evapo-transpiration, while vegetation lowers the surrounding temperature and increase relative humidity . Enough greenery lowers the temperature by two to five degrees Celsius. As per Kumar et al. (2025) during summer, the air temperature dropped by 0.80 to 2.24 °C and the land temperature by 3.80 to 8.37 °C. Grilo et al. (2020) showed small green areas have detectable cooling effects within a 60-meter radius.

Additionally, Mavrogianni et al. (2014) emphasized how street tree shadow modifies the indoor environment and lowers the risk of overheating. In hot and dry conditions, plants contribute to the creation of localized humidity. By raising humidity by 5-15%, tree canopies can enhance microclimatic stability, according to Buyadi et al. (2015).

The Urban Heat Island effect is caused by notable variations in solar radiation, temperature, wind speed, relative humidity, rainfall pattern between rural and urban built environment (Heidt and Neef, 2008). The UGS helps in reducing heat island effect (Zhou et al., 2023). Gill et. al (2007) studied the significant role of green infrastructure for adapting climate change. Their model incorporates the relationship between green infrastructure and surface temperature and surface runoff, which aids in developing a climate change adaption strategy. Degefu et. al. (2023) investigated the relationship between land surface temperature and the dynamics of Ethiopia's urban green spaces. Their findings, indicate that urban blue and green spaces significantly lower UHI by enhancing the cooling effect. The urban heat island effect can effectively be mitigated by dense parks and medium sized trees are effective in mitigating

Using GIS, Srinurak et al. (2024) took the initiative to manage urban trees. Urban forests are essential for mitigating the impacts of climate change in India (Joshi et al., 2024; Mahato et al., 2019). To preserve the natural landscape and avoid landslides, coastal cities and hill stations should place a special emphasis on increasing urban tree cover. In addition to carbon sequestration and increasing the natural beauty of coastal cities, dense mangroves should be planted along the shoreline to lessen the effects of unexpected climatic events like cyclone, hurricane etc.

According to Bussotti and Pollastrini (2025), forests and other terrestrial natural ecosystems serve as carbon sinks, but when natural disturbances become more severe and frequent, forests may become carbon sources. Native tree species, such as Azadirachta indica (Neem), Ficus religiosa (Peepal), Tamarindus indica (Tamarind), Madhuca longifolia (Mahua) etc. are the most efficient at sequestering carbon and lowering urban air pollution, according to a number of Indian studies (Pandya et al., 2013, Ugle et al., 2010, Negi et al., 2003) .

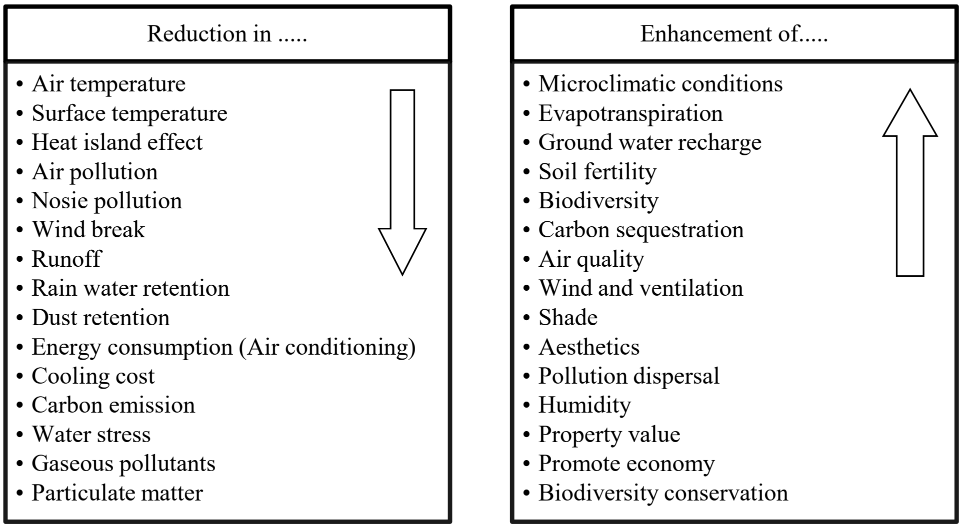


Figure 1. Role of UGS as NBS in coping and adapting with climate change

Nitrogen dioxide and particulate matter are two harmful pollutants that trees filter. The characteristics of the tree canopy, such as its density and proximity to other structures, determine how well urban plants can eliminate pollutants (Litschike & Kuttler, 2008). Trees with greater leaf surface area can remove 60-70 times more gaseous pollutants than small ones (Nowak, 1994). The strategic placement of vegetation affects wind speed and pollutant dispersion. Trees can improve urban airflow and energy efficiency by acting as windbreaks or ventilation corridors, reported that avian fauna of many urban areas prefer native trees because they provide them with suitable food resources compared to non-native trees.

3.1. Selection of tree species is a crucial factor for limiting the negative effect of trees on climate

During the early phases of their establishment and under optimum cultivation conditions, monocultures of fast-growing species can sequester carbon more rapidly than naturally regenerating forests (Teskey et al., 2008). Managed forest possesses less carbon stock than unmanaged forests. Proper management of forests can foster the capacity of forests to deal with disturbances such as forest fire and pest outbreaks (Noormets, 2015). Native species enhance ecosystem stability by supporting native fauna and strengthening ecological interactions, while also contributing effectively to nutrient cycling and regional biodiversity maintenance (Tallamy 2004; Alvey 2006; Aronson et al. 2014). Invasive species are neither ecologically nor sustainably beneficial and these species contribute minimally to carbon stock, as reported by Kumar et al. (2025). There studies recorded that invasive species Leucaena leucocephala and *Prosopis juliflora* sequester (0.59 and 0.23 tC/m2) less carbon as compared to native species.

3.2. Challenges

Growing trees in highly urbanized areas is a challenge due to limited soil volume and water demand for irrigation. In addition, the maintenance costs and damage to trees due insect, pests and stress (Nowak, 2004) due to heat, cold, poor soil quality, lack of nutrient etc. needs to be taken into consideration. Srinurak et al., (2024) took an initiative for urban tree management using GIS. Their finding indicated that more than 55% of the urban trees of Chiang Mai, Thailand are in danger from animals and insects.

Urban trees are susceptible to vandalism and are at risk of falling due to resident's mis-behaviour, inadequate management and poor tree care practices (Srinurak et al., 2024). Selection on tree species should be of utmost importance, because some trees species release Biogenic Volatile Organic Compounds (BVOCs), that through atmospheric chemical reaction, produce Green House Gases and toxic substances like ozone (Bussotti and Pollastrini, 2025). Proper tree care and maintenance should be done depending on the species and different period of the year. Grossi et al. (2023) suggested Net Zero Carbon Buildings (ZCB) to mitigate climate change risks in urban areas. Other initiatives include creation of sponge areas, wetland areas, green walls, waste land restoration, hydroponics, soil less farming etc.

These findings support that UGS are essential resources for regulating the climate.

4. Conclusion

It is the high time for conservation, protection, and management of green spaces. The finding of the study will help the town planners, administrators, academicians and researchers in decision making so as to take effective mitigation and adaptive strategies against the future climate change impact. Construction and development UGS are utmost importance as global warming and climate change is the greatest environmental issue the earth is facing. There is further scope of research about species wise response against adaptation and mitigation role climate change.

Acknowledgement

The author is thankful to the critical reviewers and research advisory committee members for their expert comments and guidance.

References

Alvey, A. A. (2006). Promoting and preserving biodiversity in the urban forest. Urban forestry & urban greening, 5(4), 195-201.

Aronson, M. F., La Sorte, F. A., Nilon, C. H., Katti, M., Goddard, M. A., Lepczyk, C. A., ... & Winter, M. (2014). A global analysis of the impacts of urbanization on bird and plant diversity reveals key anthropogenic drivers. Proceedings of the royal society B: biological sciences, 281(1780).

Bartlett, R., & Mistry, J. (2021). The contributions of NBS to Urban resilience. https://doi.org/10.1108/978-1-80043-636-720211002

Berardi, U., Jandaghian, Z., & Graham, J. (2020). Effects of greenery enhancements for the resilience to heat waves: A comparison of analysis performed through mesoscale (WRF) and microscale (Envi-met) modeling. Science of the Total Environment, 747, 141300.

Bussotti, F and Pollastrini, M. (2025). Planting Trees as a Nature-Based Solution to Mitigate Climate Change: Opportunities, Limits, and Trade-Offs. Forests 2025, 16, 810. https://doi.org/ 10.3390/f16050810

Buyadi, S. N. A., Mohd, W. M. N. W., & Misni, A. (2015). Vegetation's role on modifying microclimate of urban resident. Procedia-Social and Behavioral Sciences, 202, 400-407.

Cohen-Shacham, E., Cabecinha, E., & Andrade, A. (2025). Applying the IUCN Global Standard for Nature-based SolutionsTM.

Collins, C., Haase, D., Heiland, S., & Kabisch, N. (2022). Urban green space interaction and wellbeing–investigating the experience of international students in Berlin during the first COVID-19 lockdown. Urban forestry & urban greening, 70, 127543.

Degefu, M. A., Argaw, M., Feyisa, G. L., & Degefa, S. (2023). Dynamics of green spaces-Land surface temperature intensity nexus in cities of Ethiopia. Heliyon, 9(2).

Duan, J., Wang, Y., Fan, C., Xia, B., & de Groot, R. (2018). Perception of urban environmental risks and the effects of urban green infrastructures (UGIs) on human well-being in four public green spaces of Guangzhou, China. Environmental management, 62(3), 500-517.

Erell, E. (2017). Urban greening and microclimate modification. In Greening Cities: Forms and Functions (pp. 73-93). Singapore: Springer Singapore.

Farhadi, R., Soltanifard, H., & Alizadeh, B. (2025). Enhancing climate resilience through urban landscape design: Strategies for green infrastructure and adaptation. In Urban Climate and Urban Design (pp. 117-128). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.

Gill, S., Handley, J.F., Ennos, R., Pauleit, S. (2007). Adapting cities for climate change: The role of the green infrastructure. Built Environ. 33: 115-133.

Grilo F, Pinho P, Aleixo C, Catita C, Silva P, Lopes N, Freitas C, Santos-Reis M, McPhearson T, Branquinho C (2020) Using green to cool the grey: modelling the cooling effect of green spaces with a high spatial resolution. Sci Total Environ 724(138):182

Grossi, F.; Ge, H.; Zmeureanu, R. Baba, F. (2023). Feasibility of Planting Trees around Buildings as a Nature-Based Solution of Carbon Sequestration—An LCA Approach Using Two Case Studies. Buildings. 13(41). https://doi.org/ 10.3390/buildings13010041.

Gulsrud, N.M., Hertzog, K., Shears, I. (2018). Innovative urban forestry governance in Melbourne?: Investigating "green placemaking" as a nature-based solution. Environmental Research. 161:158-167.

Haq SM, Islam MN, Siddhanta A, Ahmed KJ and Chowdhury MTA. (2021). Public perceptions of Urban Green Spaces: Convergences and Divergences. Front. Sustain. Cities S:755313. Doi: 10.3389/frsc.2021.755313.

Heidt, H. and Neef, M. (2008). Benefits of urban space for improving urban climate. Ecology, Planning and management of urban forest: international perspective.

Hoyle, H. (2020). What is urban nature and how do we perceive it?. In Naturally challenged: contested perceptions and practices in urban green spaces (pp. 9-36). Cham: Springer International Publishing.

Joshi, P. K., Rao, K. S., Bhadouria, R., Tripathi, S., & Singh, R. (2024). Blue-Green Infrastructure for Sustainable Urban Settlements. Springer.

Keesstra, S., Nunes, J., Novara, A., Finger, D., Avelar, D., Kalantari, Z., & Cerdà, A. (2018). The superior effect of nature based solutions in land management for enhancing ecosystem services. Science of the total environment, 610, 997-1009.

Kirschner, V., Moravec, D., & Macků, K. (2023). Green or blue bodies to mitigate the urban heat island? The case of a compact European city. PREPRINT (Version 1) available at Research Square, 10.

Kumar, A., panwar, M., Mina , U. (2025). Roadside green spaces: role of tree diversity in carbon storage and thermal comfort. Discover cities. 2:132. https://doi.org/10.1007/s44327-025-00169-w

Litschike T, Kuttler W. (2008). On the reduction of urban particle concentration by vegetation – a review. Meteorologische Zeitschrift. 17:229–240. https://doi.org/10.1127/0941-2948/2008/0284

Mahato, A., Sahu, N., & Koshale, J. P. (2023). Perspective of Urban Green Spaces (UGS) in the smart city of Bilaspur, India. Dynamics of urban forestry, 41-55.

Mahato, Anupama and Singh, Anish Kumar. (2019). Climate change and its mitigation strategies through forestry. Chhattisgarh Journal of Science and Technology. ISSN: 0973-7219. 16 (4): 31-34

Mavrogianni A, Davies M, Taylor J, Chalabi Z, Biddulph P, Oikonomou E, et al. (2014). The impact of occupancy patterns, occupant-controlled ventilation and shading on indoor overheating risk in domestic environments. Build Environ.78:183–98. doi:10.1016/j.buildenv.2014.04.008.

Mikiugu, M.M., Kinoshita, I. and Tashiro, Y. (2012). Urban Green Space Analysis and Identification of its potential expansion areas. Procedia-Social and Behavioral Sciences. 35:449-458.

Narango, D. L., Tallamy, D. W., & Marra, P. P. (2017). Native plants improve breeding and foraging habitat for an insectivorous bird. Biological Conservation, 213, 42-50.

Negi, J. D. S., Manhas, R. K., & Chauhan, P. S. (2003). Carbon allocation in different components of some tree species of India: a new approach for carbon estimation. Current Science, 85(11), 1528-1531.

Noormets, A.; Epron, D.; Domec, J.C.; McNulty, S.G.; Fox, T.; Sun, G.; King, J.S. (2015). Effects of forest management on productivity and carbon sequestration: A review and hypothesis. For. Ecol. Manag. 355: 124–140.

Nowak, D. J., Kuroda, M., & Crane, D. E. (2004). Tree mortality rates and tree population projections in Baltimore, Maryland, USA. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 2(3), 139-147.

O'Sullivan, F., Mell, I., & Clement, S. (2020). Novel solutions or rebranded approaches: evaluating the use of nature-based solutions (NBS) in Europe. Frontiers in Sustainable Cities, 2, 572527.

Pandya, I. Y., Salvi, H., Chahar, O., & Vaghela, N. (2013). Quantitative analysis on carbon storage of 25 valuable tree species of Gujarat, incredible India. Indian Journal of Scientific Research, 4(1), 137.

Ramaiah, M and Avtar, R. (2019). Urban green Spaces and their need in cities of rapidly urbanizing India: A Review. Urban science. 3: 94. https://doi:10.3390/urbansci3030094

Seddon, N., Chausson, A., Berry, P., Girardin, C. A., Smith, A., & Turner, B. (2020). Understanding the value and limits of nature-based solutions to climate change and other global challenges. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 375(1794).

Shah, A., Garg, A., & Mishra, V. (2021). Quantifying the local cooling effects of urban green spaces: Evidence from Bengaluru, India. Landscape and Urban Planning, 209, 104043.

Srinurak, N.; Wonglangka, W.; Sukwai, J. (2024). Smart Urban Forest Initiative: Nature-Based Solution and People-Centered Approach for Tree Management in Chiang Mai, Thailand. Sustainability. 16. 11078. https:// doi.org/10.3390/su162411078

Tallamy, D. W. (2004). Do alien plants reduce insect biomass?. Conservation biology, 18(6), 1689-1692.

Teskey, R.O.; Saveyn, A.; Steppe, K.; McGuire, M.A. (2008). Origin, fate and significance of CO2 in tree stems. New Phytol. 177. 17–32.

Ugle, P., Rao, S., & Ramachandra, T. V. (2010). Carbon sequestration potential of urban trees. Proceedings of the Lake, 22.

Wood, E. M., & Esaian, S. (2020). The importance of street trees to urban avifauna. Ecological Applications, 30(7), e02149.

Zhao, S., Dong, J., Guo, F., Zhang, H., & Zhu, P. (2024). Optimization of green space in high-density built-up areas based on cooling simulations: A case study in Xi'an, China. Urban Climate, 58, 102225.

Zhou, W., Yu, W., Zhang, Z., Cao, W., & Wu, T. (2023). How can urban green spaces be planned to mitigate urban heat island effect under different climatic backgrounds? A threshold-based perspective. Science of the total environment, 890, 164422.

CHAPTER 3

Forest Regeneration Dynamics and Ecosystem Services: Implications for Sustainable Forest Management in Tropical Landscapes

Sachin Kumar[1], Milkuri Chiranjeeva Reddy[1*], Mhaiskar Priya Rajendra[2], Bheemreddyvalla Venkateshwar Reddy[1], Rohith Ravula[1], Katikala Anish[1], Yerrawada Naveen[1]

[1]*Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India, 502279*

[2]*Department of Forest Ecology and Climate Science, Forest College and Research Institute, Mulugu, Siddipet, Telangana, India, 502279*

*Corresponding E-mail: chiranjeevamilkuri@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Kumar, S., Reddy, M. C., Rajendra, M. P., Reddy, B. V., Ravula, R., Anish, K., & Naveen, Y. (2026). Forest Regeneration Dynamics and Ecosystem Services: Implications for Sustainable Forest Management in Tropical Landscapes. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 21-35). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Tropical forests are among the most biologically rich and ecologically important ecosystems on Earth. They provide a wide range of ecosystem services that support biodiversity conservation, regulate climate, maintain soil and water resources, and sustain the livelihoods of millions of people. However, increasing anthropogenic pressures such as deforestation, forest degradation, land-use change, and climate variability have significantly altered forest structure, species composition, and regeneration potential. In this context, understanding the dynamics of natural forest regeneration has become essential for ensuring long-term forest sustainability and ecological resilience. This chapter examines the ecological processes that influence forest regeneration and their relationship with ecosystem service provision in tropical forest landscapes. Particular attention is given to the role of natural regeneration in restoring forest structure, maintaining species diversity, enhancing carbon sequestration, and supporting soil and hydrological functions. The chapter synthesizes current scientific knowledge on key regeneration mechanisms, including seed dispersal, seedling establishment, species recruitment, and the influence of biotic and abiotic factors such as disturbance regimes, microclimatic conditions, soil characteristics, and human interventions. In addition, the chapter discusses how regeneration processes contribute to critical ecosystem services, including carbon storage, habitat provision, climate regulation, and livelihood support for forest-dependent communities. Case-based insights and management perspectives are presented to highlight the importance of regeneration-oriented silvicultural practices in promoting sustainable forest management in tropical regions. By integrating ecological understanding with ecosystem service frameworks and sustainable forest management principles, this chapter emphasizes the need for adaptive and regeneration-focused management strategies to strengthen forest resilience, conserve biodiversity, and support sustainable landscape management in tropical ecosystems.

Keywords: Forest Regeneration Dynamics; Ecosystem Services; Sustainable Forest Management; Tropical Forest Ecosystems; Carbon Sequestration.

1. Introduction

Tropical forests are among the most complex and important ecosystems on Earth. They cover about one-third of the world's forest area and support nearly 80% of terrestrial biodiversity. These forests play a key role in maintaining environmental balance by regulating biogeochemical cycles and influencing both regional and global climate systems. In addition to their ecological value, tropical forests are vital for human well-being, especially in developing countries, where millions of people depend on them for food, fuel, medicine, and income through timber and non-timber forest products (Sheppard et al., 2020; Thompson et al., 2011).

Today, tropical forests are widely recognized for the multiple ecosystem services they provide. These include provisioning services such as food and raw materials, regulating services like climate control and water regulation, supporting services such as nutrient cycling, and cultural benefits. Forests act as major carbon sinks, helping to reduce atmospheric carbon dioxide and mitigate climate change. They also help regulate water cycles by improving infiltration, maintaining streamflow, and preventing soil erosion. At the same time, they provide habitats for a vast range of plant and animal species, supporting biodiversity and ecological stability (van Meerveld et al., 2021; Waheed et al., 2024; Mori, 2017). However, the ability of forests to provide these services depends largely on their health, structure, and capacity to regenerate, which are now under increasing threat (Chazdon, 2008; Ferraz et al., 2014).

Despite their importance, tropical forests are facing serious challenges due to human activities. Deforestation, forest degradation, agricultural expansion, infrastructure development, and unsustainable resource use are rapidly changing forest landscapes. In addition, climate change is making the situation worse by altering rainfall patterns, increasing temperatures, and causing more frequent extreme events like droughts and storms. These factors not only damage forests but also disrupt their natural regeneration processes (Jakovac et al., 2021; García et al., 2020). Although sustainable forest management has shifted from timber-focused approaches to more ecosystem-based strategies, its effectiveness is still debated, as forest loss continues in many regions (Putz & Thompson, 2020; Holm, 2015).

Forest regeneration refers to the natural or assisted renewal of vegetation through processes such as seed dispersal, germination, seedling growth, and species development. These processes are influenced by a combination of biological and environmental factors, including species traits, soil conditions, disturbances, and microclimate (Howe & Smallwood, 1982; Martínez-Ramos et al., 2016). Natural regeneration, in particular, is gaining attention as a cost-effective and sustainable method for restoring degraded forests while improving biodiversity and carbon storage (Strassburg et al., 2016; Uriarte & Chazdon, 2016).

Regenerating forests can help mitigate climate change, improve soil quality, restore water balance, and create habitats for wildlife. However, regeneration success depends on local conditions such as land-use history, landscape structure, and human activities. This makes it essential to adopt flexible and site-specific management approaches (Rodríguez-León et al., 2025). Overall, integrating regeneration into sustainable forest management represents a major shift toward more resilient and ecosystem-based practices. Modern SFM focuses on balancing ecological health with human needs by promoting natural regeneration, restoration efforts, and community participation. This approach aligns with global goals for forest restoration, climate mitigation, and biodiversity conservation (Melo et al., 2013; Edwards et al., 2014). Therefore, this chapter aims to explore the processes of forest regeneration, its link to ecosystem services, and its importance for sustainable forest management in tropical landscapes (Gupta et al., 2026).

2. Concept of Forest Regeneration in Tropical Ecosystems

2.1 Natural Regeneration

Natural regeneration is the process by which forests recover and grow back on their own without direct human intervention. In tropical ecosystems, this process is very important because it helps maintain forest continuity, biodiversity, and overall ecosystem health. It involves several stages such as seed production, dispersal, germination, seedling establishment, and growth into mature trees. Natural regeneration plays a key role in shaping forest structure, especially in secondary and degraded forests (Fig. 1), where it drives ecological succession and long-term recovery (Chazdon et al., 2016; Martínez-Ramos et al., 2016). This process occurs through different mechanisms depending on the species and environmental conditions. The most common method is seed-based regeneration, where seeds are dispersed from parent trees by wind, gravity, or animals. In tropical forests, animals such as birds, bats, and mammals play a major role in dispersing seeds and maintaining species diversity (Howe & Smallwood, 1982; Thompson et al., 2011). In addition to seeds, some species regenerate through vegetative methods like coppicing (regrowth from cut stumps) and root suckers. These mechanisms allow forests to recover quickly after disturbances like fire or logging and improve their resilience under harsh conditions (Jakovac et al., 2021; García et al., 2020).

Natural regeneration has several advantages compared to artificial methods. It is cost-effective, requires little human input, and helps create more diverse and stable ecosystems. Naturally regenerated forests often have higher genetic diversity and are better adapted to local environmental conditions (Uriarte & Chazdon, 2016). Research also shows that natural regeneration can improve ecosystem services such as carbon storage, soil stability, and habitat restoration, often performing better than plantation forests in the long term (Strassburg et al., 2016; Edwards et al., 2014). It also strengthens ecological resilience by helping forests recover from disturbances and adapt to environmental changes (Nasi & Frost, 2009; Mori, 2017).

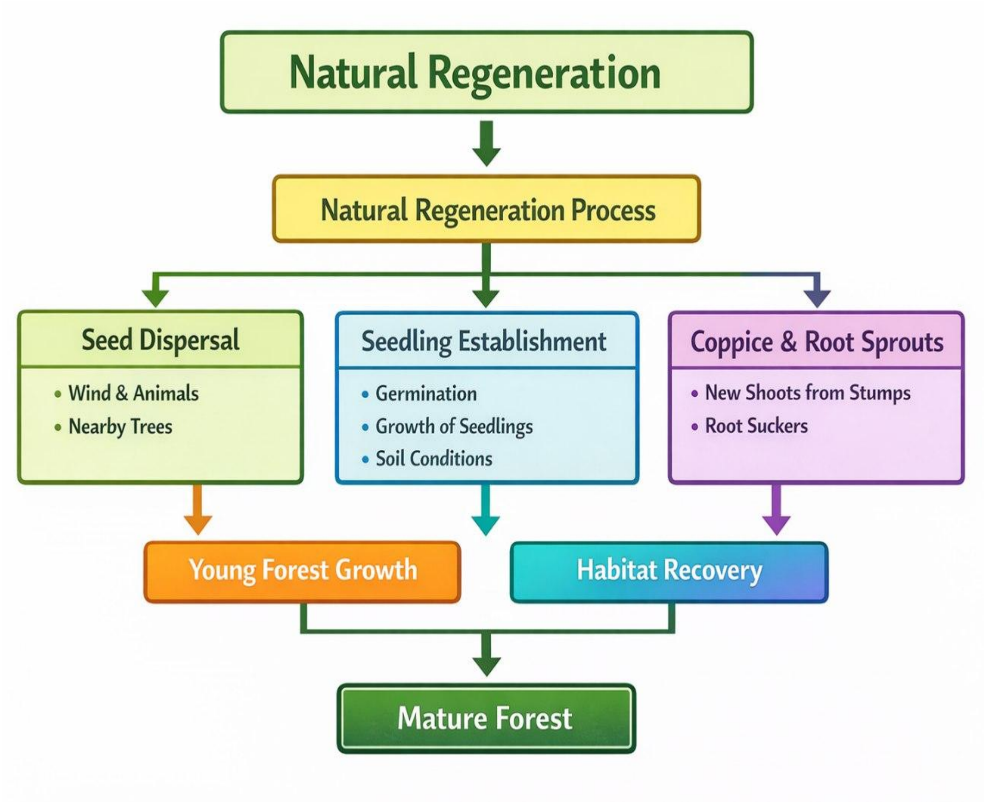


Figure 1. Natural Regeneration Process

2.2 Artificial Regeneration

Artificial regeneration involves growing forests through human efforts such as planting seeds, seedlings, or using assisted techniques. This approach is mainly used in areas where natural regeneration is not possible due to heavy degradation, soil erosion, or lack of seed sources. Plantation forestry, which may include monoculture or mixed-species plantations, is a common form of artificial regeneration used for timber production, carbon storage, and land restoration (Santopuoli, 2012; Toman & Ashton, 1996). A more balanced approach is Assisted Natural Regeneration (ANR), which combines natural and artificial methods (Fig. 2). ANR focuses on protecting and supporting existing natural seedlings by removing competing vegetation, controlling disturbances like fire and grazing, and improving site conditions. It is considered a cost-effective and eco-friendly method for restoring degraded tropical forests, especially when combined with landscape restoration strategies (Snelder & Lasco, 2008; Uriarte & Chazdon, 2016).

Artificial regeneration is useful for speeding up forest recovery in severely degraded areas and allows the introduction of desired species for economic or ecological purposes. However, it also has limitations. Plantation forests, especially monocultures, often have lower biodiversity, simpler structure, and are more vulnerable to pests and climate stress compared to natural forests (Wang et al., 2025; Pohjanmies et al., 2017). Such systems may also provide fewer ecosystem services and reduced ecological stability when compared to naturally regenerated forests (Edwards et al., 2014). Therefore, combining natural regeneration with targeted human interventions is now widely recommended for better long-term sustainability, particularly under changing environmental conditions (García et al., 2020; Mori, 2017).

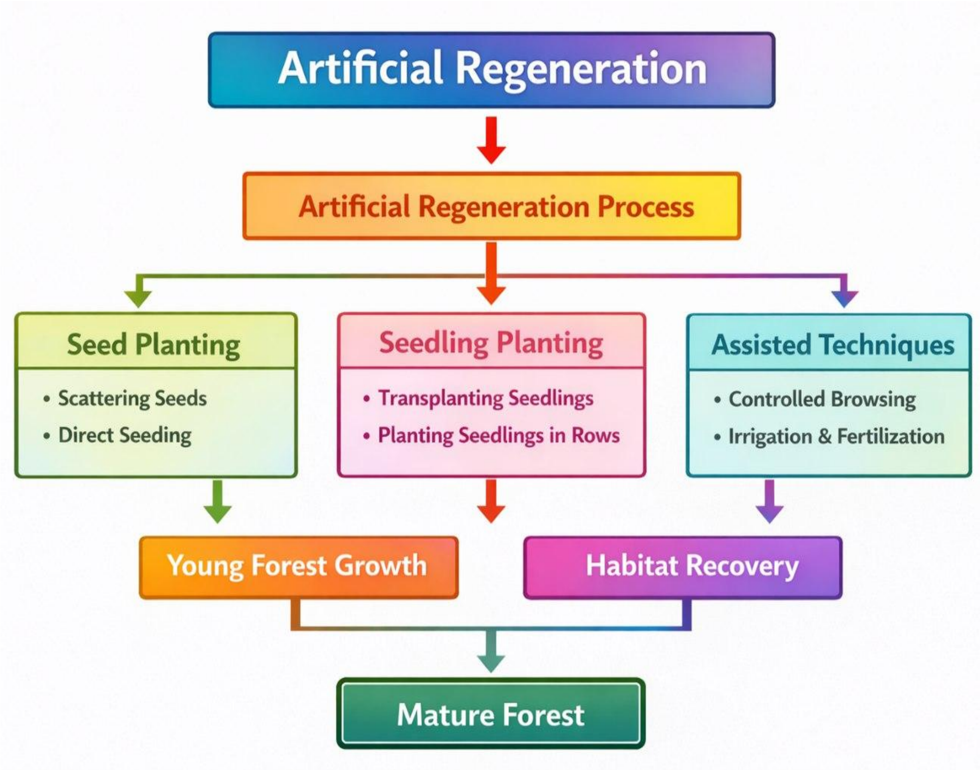


Figure 2. Artificial Regeneration Process

2.3 Factors Influencing Regeneration

Forest regeneration in tropical ecosystems depends on a combination of biotic (living) and abiotic (non-living) factors. These factors influence how well forests recover, what species grow, and how ecosystems develop over time.

A. Biotic factors: Biotic factors include seed dispersal, herbivory, competition, and species interactions. Birds and mammals play an important role in dispersing seeds across the landscape, thereby promoting forest regeneration and maintaining species diversity (Fig. 3). Herbivores, however, can reduce seedling survival, while competition among plants for light, water, and nutrients influences plant growth and species composition. These biotic interactions collectively determine the success of forest regeneration and emphasize the importance of conserving biodiversity for healthy and resilient forest ecosystems (Ma et al., 2024).

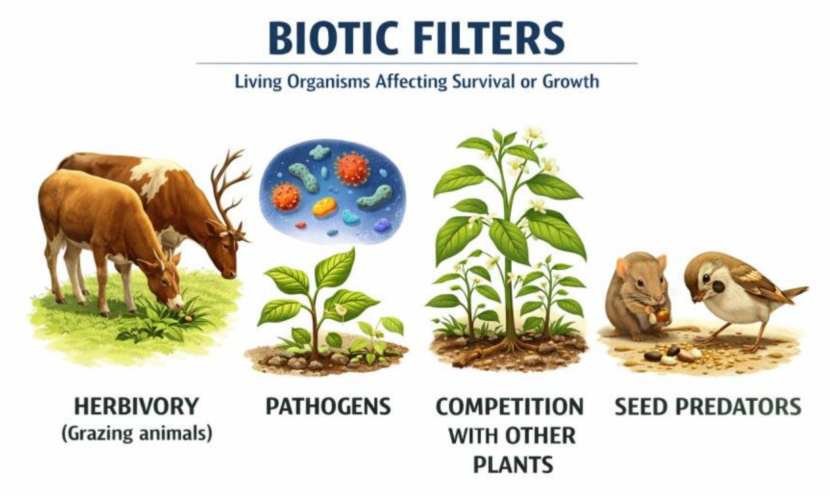


Figure 3. Different Biotic Factors

B. Abiotic factors: Abiotic factors include soil conditions, moisture, light availability, and climate. These environmental factors strongly influence seed germination, seedling establishment, and overall forest regeneration. Soil fertility and nutrient availability are essential for seed germination and plant growth (Fig. 4) because they directly affect root development, microbial activity, and overall plant productivity (Lõhmus et al., 2015; Holm, 2015). Light availability, which is influenced by canopy cover and forest gaps, determines whether shade-tolerant or light-demanding species become established and therefore plays a key role in shaping regeneration patterns and species composition (Mori, 2017). Similarly, climatic factors such as temperature and rainfall regulate regeneration processes by affecting seed viability, germination rates, and seedling survival, particularly under changing climate conditions (van Meerveld et al., 2021; Meybeck et al., 2012).

Figure 4. Different Abiotic Factors

Importantly, regeneration is influenced by the interaction of all these factors rather than any single one. Disturbances such as fire, logging, or land clearing can significantly alter soil properties, microclimate, and resource availability, thereby influencing regeneration pathways and successional trajectories (Pohjanmies et al., 2017; Edwards et al., 2014). Land-use history is also a critical determinant, as heavily degraded or previously cultivated lands often exhibit reduced soil fertility, altered nutrient cycles, and limited seed banks, making natural recovery more difficult (Jakovac et al., 2021; Ferraz et al., 2014). These combined effects highlight the importance of considering multiple interacting abiotic drivers when designing effective forest restoration and management strategies.

3. Ecological Mechanisms Driving Forest Regeneration

3.1 Seed Production and Dispersal

Seed production and dispersal constitute the initial and most critical stages of forest regeneration in tropical ecosystems. The concept of seed rain—the quantity and diversity of seeds arriving at a given site over time—determines the potential pool of species available for regeneration. In tropical forests, seed rain is highly variable and influenced by species composition, phenology, and proximity to seed sources (Jakovac et al., 2021).

Dispersal mechanisms play a pivotal role in shaping regeneration patterns. Seeds are dispersed through abiotic agents such as wind (anemochory) and gravity (barochory), as well as biotic agents, particularly animals (zoochory). Animal-mediated dispersal is especially dominant in tropical forests, where birds, bats, and mammals transport seeds across heterogeneous landscapes, enhancing species richness and spatial heterogeneity. The decline of key dispersers due to habitat fragmentation or hunting can significantly disrupt regeneration processes and reduce forest resilience (Howe & Smallwood, 1982). The effectiveness of dispersal directly influences forest structure and diversity. Areas with limited seed input, such as highly degraded landscapes, often exhibit reduced regeneration potential and altered species composition. Conversely, landscapes with active faunal interactions tend to support diverse and functionally rich regenerating communities. Thus, seed dispersal processes are fundamental not only for species persistence but also for maintaining ecosystem complexity and connectivity (Chazdon et al., 2016).

3.2 Seed Germination and Seedling Establishment

Following dispersal, seed germination and seedling establishment represent critical bottlenecks in the regeneration process. These stages are highly sensitive to microenvironmental conditions, including temperature, humidity, and light availability. In tropical forests, microclimatic variability created by canopy structure and gap dynamics plays a decisive role in determining germination success. For instance, shaded understory conditions favor shade-tolerant species, while canopy openings promote the establishment of light-demanding species (van Meerveld et al., 2021).

Soil moisture and nutrient availability are equally important factors influencing seedling growth and survival. Adequate moisture is essential for germination, particularly in seasonal tropical environments where water stress can limit recruitment. Soil fertility, including the availability of nitrogen, phosphorus, and organic matter, further regulates early plant development and competitive interactions among seedlings (Santopuoli, 2012).

Despite favorable conditions, seedling survival is often constrained by multiple biotic and abiotic stresses, including herbivory, pathogen attacks, competition, and environmental extremes. These constraints create regeneration bottlenecks, where only a small proportion of germinated seeds successfully establish and grow. Such bottlenecks are crucial in determining species composition and forest dynamics. Studies have shown that these early-stage limitations significantly influence long-term forest recovery and ecosystem functioning (Strassburg et al., 2016).

3.3 Species Recruitment and Stand Development

Species recruitment and stand development represent the transition from seedlings to mature forest communities, contributing to forest structure and biomass accumulation through ecological succession (Jakovac et al., 2021). In tropical forests, succession begins with pioneer species in open areas, followed by intermediate and late-successional species under stable conditions. Gap dynamics, caused by disturbances such as tree falls or storms, regulate light and microclimate, creating niches that enhance species diversity (Chazdon et al., 2016). Species turnover is shaped by recruitment, competition, and environmental filtering, leading to complex, multilayered forest structures. However, stand development is influenced by disturbance history and landscape context (Ma et al., 2024). Although regeneration can restore biodiversity and ecosystem functions, full recovery may take decades, requiring sustainable management approaches (Nasi & Frost, 2009).

4. Disturbance Regimes and Their Influence on Regeneration

4.1 Natural Disturbances and Forest Regeneration

Natural disturbances such as fire, storms, drought, and pest outbreaks play a fundamental role in shaping tropical forest dynamics by influencing regeneration processes and ecosystem structure. Although these disturbances may initially cause vegetation damage, they also create ecological opportunities for forest recovery by forming canopy gaps, increasing light availability, and promoting seed germination and seedling recruitment. The ecological effects of natural disturbances largely depend on their intensity, frequency, and spatial extent. Low-intensity disturbances generally enhance species diversity and maintain ecosystem heterogeneity, whereas high-intensity or recurrent disturbances can delay regeneration, reduce seedling survival, and alter successional pathways. Therefore, understanding natural disturbance regimes is essential for predicting forest recovery and maintaining long-term ecosystem resilience.

4.2 Anthropogenic Disturbances and Management Implications

Anthropogenic disturbances, including logging, grazing, shifting cultivation, and habitat fragmentation, often exert more severe and persistent impacts on forest regeneration than natural disturbances. These activities degrade soil quality, reduce seed banks, disrupt seed dispersal processes, and alter species composition, thereby diminishing the regenerative capacity of tropical forests (Nasi & Frost, 2009). The response of regenerating forests varies depending on disturbance history, land-use intensity, and existing ecosystem conditions. Consequently, effective regeneration requires adaptive and site-specific forest management strategies that integrate ecological restoration, sustainable land-use planning, and conservation practices. Such approaches enhance ecosystem resilience while supporting long-term sustainable forest recovery.

5. Forest Regeneration and Ecosystem Services

5.1 Carbon Sequestration and Climate Regulation

Forest regeneration plays a vital role in carbon sequestration by capturing atmospheric CO_2 through biomass growth and soil carbon storage. Secondary forests often show rapid carbon uptake during early succession. Although primary forests store more carbon overall, regenerating forests significantly support climate mitigation by restoring degraded carbon pools (Strassburg et al., 2016; Chazdon et al., 2016). Natural regeneration is often more cost-effective than plantations (Santopuoli, 2012).

5.2 Biodiversity Conservation

Regenerating forests support biodiversity by providing habitats and promoting species richness through succession. Secondary forests act as refuges in fragmented landscapes. However, outcomes depend on land-use history and connectivity, with natural regeneration generally maintaining higher ecological integrity than monocultures (Jakovac et al., 2021; Ma et al., 2024; Nasi & Frost, 2009).

5.3 Soil and Hydrological Functions

Regeneration improves soil fertility, structure, and nutrient cycling through increased organic matter. Root systems stabilize soil and reduce erosion. It also enhances water infiltration, groundwater recharge, and runoff regulation, supporting watershed functions (van Meerveld et al., 2021; Fernández et al., 2019).

5.4 Livelihood Support

Regenerating forests provide NTFPs such as food, fuel, and medicine, supporting rural livelihoods. Approaches like agroforestry and community management integrate conservation with income generation (Snelder & Lasco, 2008; Sheppard et al., 2020; Nasi & Frost, 2009).

6. Regeneration-Based Silvicultural Approaches for Sustainable Forest Management

Regeneration-based silvicultural approaches have emerged as central strategies for achieving sustainable forest management (SFM) in tropical landscapes by aligning ecological processes with management interventions. These approaches emphasize the enhancement of natural regeneration while integrating socio-economic objectives, thereby promoting long-term ecosystem resilience and productivity (Fernández et al., 2019).

6.1 Assisted Natural Regeneration (ANR)

Assisted Natural Regeneration (ANR) is a low-cost and ecologically effective approach that facilitates the recovery of degraded forests by protecting and enhancing existing natural regeneration. It involves interventions such as controlling competing vegetation, preventing grazing and fire, and improving site conditions to accelerate natural succession. ANR has gained prominence in tropical regions due to its ability to restore biodiversity, improve carbon sequestration, and reduce restoration costs compared to plantation-based methods. Studies have shown that ANR can significantly enhance ecosystem service recovery while maintaining native species diversity and ecological integrity (Strassburg et al., 2016).

6.2 Selective Logging and Gap Management

Selective logging and gap management represent silvicultural practices that mimic natural disturbance regimes to promote regeneration while maintaining forest structure. Reduced-impact logging (RIL) techniques minimize damage to residual vegetation and soil, thereby preserving regeneration potential. Gap creation through controlled canopy openings enhances light availability, facilitating the establishment of both pioneer and shade-tolerant species. However, the sustainability of such practices depends on careful planning, appropriate harvesting intensity, and post-harvest management. Poorly managed logging can degrade ecosystems and hinder regeneration, highlighting the need for scientifically informed interventions (Putz et al., 2008).

6.3 Community-Based Forest Management

Community-based forest management (CBFM) integrates local knowledge and stakeholder participation into forest governance, enhancing both ecological and socio-economic outcomes. By involving forest-dependent communities in decision-making and resource management, CBFM promotes sustainable use of forest resources while supporting regeneration processes. Evidence from tropical regions indicates that community-managed forests often exhibit improved regeneration, biodiversity conservation, and reduced deforestation rates due to stronger local stewardship and accountability (Nasi & Frost, 2009).

6.4 Agroforestry and Landscape Restoration

Agroforestry systems and landscape restoration approaches provide integrated solutions that combine tree planting with agricultural practices, thereby enhancing both ecological and livelihood benefits. Agroforestry promotes regeneration by improving soil fertility, increasing biodiversity, and creating microclimatic conditions conducive to tree growth. At the landscape level, restoration initiatives that incorporate natural regeneration, assisted interventions, and sustainable land-use planning contribute to the recovery of ecosystem services and connectivity across fragmented habitats (Snelder & Lasco, 2008). Overall, regeneration-based silvicultural approaches offer practical pathways for balancing conservation and development objectives. Their effectiveness lies in integrating ecological principles with adaptive management strategies to ensure sustainable forest recovery and resilience in tropical ecosystems (Santopuoli, 2012).

7. Challenges and Future Perspectives

7.1 Climate Change and Land-Use Challenges

Forest regeneration in tropical ecosystems faces several interconnected challenges across ecological, social, and technological dimensions. One of the most significant challenges is climate change. Rising temperatures, irregular rainfall patterns, and frequent extreme events such as droughts and storms can negatively affect seed production, germination, and seedling survival. These changes may alter species composition and disrupt natural succession, making forest recovery more uncertain in the future (Fig. 5) (Jakovac et al., 2021; van Meerveld et al., 2021; García et al., 2020; Meybeck et al., 2012).

Land-use conflicts also pose a major barrier to successful forest regeneration. In many tropical regions, forest lands are increasingly converted for agriculture, infrastructure development, and other human activities. At the same time, local communities depend on forests for their livelihoods, which can lead to overexploitation of regenerating areas (Snelder & Lasco, 2008; Sheppard et al., 2020; Morse et al., 2009). Balancing conservation objectives with human needs therefore requires integrated land-use planning and sustainable landscape management approaches (Chazdon et al., 2016; Nasi & Frost, 2009; Melo et al., 2013).

7.2 Monitoring Limitations and Emerging Technologies

Another major challenge is the lack of effective long-term monitoring systems. Forest regeneration is a slow and complex process, yet many existing assessments rely on short-term observations and do not adequately capture long-term ecological changes. As highlighted by Chazdon et al. (2016), current monitoring approaches often fail to reflect the dynamic nature of regenerating forests. In addition, limited data availability and inadequate monitoring frameworks restrict the evaluation of restoration success and ecosystem service recovery (Pohjanmies et al., 2017; Lõhmus et al., 2015).

Recent technological advancements provide promising opportunities to overcome these limitations. Remote sensing, Geographic Information Systems (GIS), and artificial intelligence (AI) can improve the monitoring of forest regeneration, facilitate the analysis of large spatial datasets, and support evidence-based decision-making for sustainable forest management (Binlajdam et al., 2025; Gupta et al., 2026).

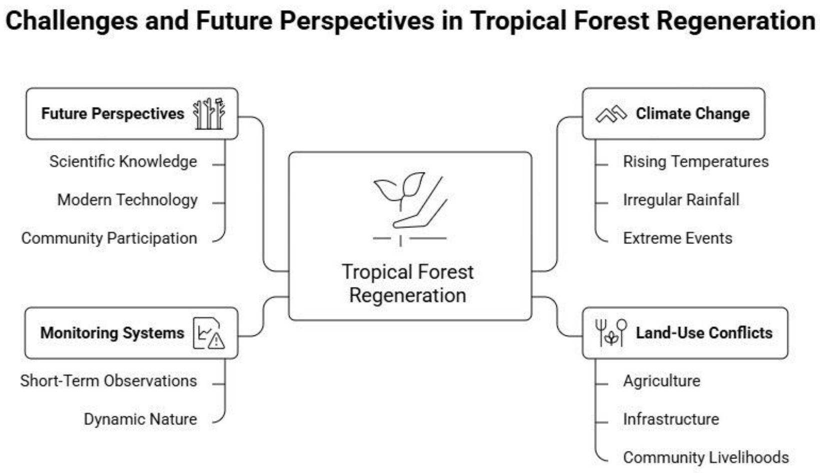


Figure 5. Tropical ecosystems face several interconnected challenges

8. Conclusion

Forest regeneration is essential for maintaining the health, productivity, and resilience of tropical forests. Both natural and assisted regeneration play important roles in restoring forest structure, conserving biodiversity, and improving ecosystem services such as carbon storage, soil protection, and water regulation. These benefits also support the livelihoods of millions of people who depend on forests, highlighting the strong link between ecology and human well-being. Natural regeneration, when properly protected, is a cost-effective and sustainable way to restore degraded forests. However, its success depends on local conditions such as disturbance history, land use, and environmental factors. In highly degraded areas, artificial regeneration and silvicultural practices can help speed up recovery, but they should be combined with natural processes for better long-term results. Despite progress in sustainable forest management, challenges like climate change, land-use conflicts, and limited monitoring systems continue to affect regeneration efforts. Addressing these issues requires adaptive and landscape-level approaches that combine science, technology, and community involvement. Modern tools such as remote sensing and ecological modeling can improve forest monitoring and decision-making. Strengthening policies, encouraging community participation, and valuing ecosystem services are also crucial. Overall, promoting regeneration-based approaches is key to achieving sustainable forest management and long-term conservation goals.

References

Chazdon, R. L. (2008). Beyond deforestation: Restoring forests and ecosystem services on degraded lands. Science, 320(5882), 1458–1460.

Chazdon, R. L., Brancalion, P. H. S., Lamb, D., Laestadius, L., Calmon, M., & Kumar, C. (2016). When is a forest a forest? Forest concepts and definitions in the era of forest and landscape restoration. Ambio, 45(5), 538–550.

Edwards, D. P., Tobias, J. A., Sheil, D., Meijaard, E., & Laurance, W. F. (2014). Maintaining ecosystem function and services in logged tropical forests. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 29(9), 511–520.

Fernández-Fernández, M., Naves, P., Witzell, J., Musolin, D. L., Selikhovkin, A. V., Paraschiv, M., ... & Diez, J. J. (2019). Pine pitch canker and insects: Relationships and implications for disease spread in Europe. Forests, 10(8), 627.

Ferraz, S. F., Ferraz, K. M., Cassiano, C. C., Brancalion, P. H. S., da Luz, D. T., Azevedo, T. N., & Metzger, J. P. (2014). How good are tropical forest patches for ecosystem services provisioning? Landscape Ecology, 29(2), 187–200.

García, C., Espelta, J. M., & Hampe, A. (2020). Managing forest regeneration and expansion at a time of unprecedented global change. Journal of Applied Ecology, 57(12), 2310–2315.

Gupta, G., Kumar, R., Singh, K., Rawat, V., Lavania, P., Kumari, P., & Kumar, P. (2026). Forest resources: Sustainable exploitation and management. In Advanced geospatial and ground-based techniques in forest monitoring (pp. 85–109). Elsevier.

Holm, S. O. (2015). A management strategy for multiple ecosystem services in boreal forests. Journal of Sustainable Forestry, 34(4), 358–379.

Howe, H. F., & Smallwood, J. (1982). Ecology of seed dispersal. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics, 13, 201–228.

Jakovac, C. C., Junqueira, A. B., Crouzeilles, R., Peña-Claros, M., Mesquita, R. C. G., & Bongers, F. (2021). The role of land-use history in driving successional pathways and its implications for tropical forest restoration. Biological Reviews, 96(4), 1114–1134.

Lõhmus, A., Remm, L., & Rannap, R. (2015). Just a ditch in forest? Reconsidering draining in the context of sustainable forest management. BioScience, 65(11), 1066–1076.

Ma, X., Vanneste, S., Chang, J., Ambrosino, L., Barry, K., Bayer, T., ... & Van de Peer, Y. (2024). Seagrass genomes reveal ancient polyploidy and adaptations to the marine environment. Nature plants, 10(2), 240-255.

Martínez-Ramos, M., Pingarroni, A., Rodríguez-Velázquez, J., Toledo-Chelala, L., Zermeño-Hernández, I., & Bongers, F. (2016). Natural forest regeneration and ecological restoration in human-modified tropical landscapes. Biotropica, 48(6), 745–757.

Melo, F. P., Arroyo-Rodríguez, V., Fahrig, L., Martínez-Ramos, M., & Tabarelli, M. (2013). On the hope for biodiversity-friendly tropical landscapes. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 28(8), 462–468.

Meybeck, A., Lankoski, J., Redfern, S., Azzu, N., & Gitz, V. (2012). Building resilience for adaptation to climate change in agriculture. FAO/OECD Workshop Proceedings.

Mori, A. S. (2017). Biodiversity and ecosystem services in forests: Management and restoration founded on ecological theory. Journal of Applied Ecology, 54(1), 7–11.

Morse, W. C., Schedlbauer, J. L., Sesnie, S. E., Finegan, B., Harvey, C. A., Hollenhorst, S. J., & Wulfhorst, J. D. (2009). Consequences of environmental service payments for forest retention and recruitment. Ecology and Society, 14(1).

Nasi, R., & Frost, P. G. H. (2009). Sustainable forest management in the tropics: Is everything in order but the patient still dying? Ecology and Society, 14(2), 40.

Pohjanmies, T., Triviño, M., Le Tortorec, E., Mazziotta, A., Snäll, T., & Mönkkönen, M. (2017). Impacts of forestry on boreal forests: An ecosystem services perspective. Ambio, 46(7), 743–755.

Putz, F. E., & Thompson, I. D. (2020). Defining sustainable forest management in the tropics. In Achieving sustainable management of tropical forests (pp. 25–40).

Putz, F. E., Sist, P., Fredericksen, T., & Dykstra, D. (2008). Reduced-impact logging: challenges and opportunities. Forest ecology and management, 256(7), 1427-1433.

Rodríguez-León, C. H., Sterling, A., Trujillo-Briñez, A., Suárez-Córdoba, Y. D., & Roa-Fuentes, L. L. (2025). Forest attribute dynamics in secondary forests. Diversity, 17(1), 39.

Santopuoli, G. (2012). Forest management and sustainability: Concepts and applications. Forestry Studies, 56, 45–58.

Sheppard, J. P., Chamberlain, J., Agúndez, D., Bhattacharya, P., Chirwa, P. W., Gontcharov, A., ... & Mutke, S. (2020). Sustainable forest management beyond the timber-oriented status quo: transitioning to co-production of timber and non-wood forest products—a global perspective. Current Forestry Reports, 6(1), 26-40.

Snelder, D. J., & Lasco, R. D. (2008). Smallholder tree growing for rural development and environmental services: Lessons from Asia. Springer.

Strassburg, B. B., Barros, F. S., Crouzeilles, R., Iribarrem, A., Santos, J. S. D., Silva, D., ... & Latawiec, A. E. (2016). The role of natural regeneration to ecosystem services provision and habitat availability: a case study in the Brazilian Atlantic Forest. Biotropica, 48(6), 890-899.

Thompson, I. D., Okabe, K., Tylianakis, J. M., Kumar, P., Brockerhoff, E. G., Schellhorn, N. A., & Nasi, R. (2011). Forest biodiversity and ecosystem services: Translating science into policy. BioScience, 61(12), 972–981.

Toman, M. A., & Ashton, P. M. S. (1996). Sustainable forest ecosystems and management: A review. Forest Science, 42(3), 366–377.

Uriarte, M., & Chazdon, R. L. (2016). Incorporating natural regeneration in forest landscape restoration. Biotropica, 48(6), 915–924.

Van Meerveld, H. J., Jones, J. P., Ghimire, C. P., Zwartendijk, B. W., Lahitiana, J., Ravelona, M., & Mulligan, M. (2021). Forest regeneration can positively contribute to local hydrological ecosystem services: Implications for forest landscape restoration. Journal of Applied Ecology, 58(4), 755-765.

Waheed, M., Haq, S. M., Arshad, F., Bussmann, R. W., Hashem, A., & Abd_Allah, E. F. (2024). Plant distribution and ecological traits in subtropical forests. Frontiers in Forests and Global Change, 7, 1406075.

Wang, J., Zhang, H., Wang, H., & Zhang, Y. (2025) Can the Environmental Carrying Capacity of Yancheng Coastal Wetlands in the Western Pacific Sustain the Growing Milu Deer Population? Available at SSRN 5319343.

CHAPTER 4

Environmental Sustainability in India: A Decadal Review of Trends, Challenges and Future Pathways

Abhishek Maitry[1,2], Manoj Kumar Kashyap[2], Damini Sharma[1], Gunjan Patil[3*], Ramesh[4]

[1]*College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India*

[2]*State Forest Research and Training Institute, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India*

[3]*Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India*

[4]*Department of Botany, Madanlal Sahu Government College Armarikala, Balod, Chhattisgarh, India*

*Corresponding E-mail: gunjan210315@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Maitry, A., Kashyap, M. K., Sharma, D., Patil, G., & Ramesh (2026). Environmental Sustainability in India: A Decadal Review of Trends, Challenges and Future Pathways. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 36-62). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

India's rapid economic growth and demographic expansion have intensified pressures on land, water, air, forests and biodiversity, raising concerns about the long-term sustainability of its development trajectory. Over the past decade, national policies, international commitments and subnational initiatives have sought to reconcile economic aspirations with environmental limits, yet many indicators still point to widening sustainability gaps. This systematic review synthesizes peer-reviewed literature (2015–2025) together with key international and national assessments to examine environmental sustainability trends in India across biophysical indicators, climate change impacts, biodiversity and ecosystem services, urban environments, energy transitions, waste management, and environmental governance. Following a PRISMA-inspired protocol, 312 records were screened from Scopus, Web of Science, and Google Scholar, of which 136 publications met predefined inclusion criteria focusing on India-specific empirical or review studies. The results show modest gains in forest cover and renewable energy capacity alongside persistent, and in some cases worsening, challenges in air quality, land degradation, groundwater stress, and urban environmental health. Climate projections under the IPCC Sixth Assessment Report (AR6) scenarios indicate escalating risks from heat extremes, intense precipitation, droughts, and Himalayan cryosphere change, with disproportionate impacts on poor and climate-vulnerable regions. The governance analysis reveals a sophisticated legal and policy architecture but chronic implementation deficits, fragmented institutions, data gaps, and persistent trade-offs between infrastructure-led growth and ecological integrity. The review identifies critical research gaps in the integrated assessment of cumulative impacts, just transitions, subnational disparities, and the social dimensions of vulnerability. It concludes by outlining future research priorities and policy pathways for steering India toward a low-carbon, resource-efficient, and socially inclusive sustainability transition.

Keywords: Environmental sustainability; sustainable development; climate change; biodiversity; environmental governance.

1. Introduction

Environmental sustainability has become a central pillar of global development discourse, particularly in the context of the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and the Paris Agreement. For rapidly industrializing economies, reconciling economic growth with ecological limits poses complex policy and governance challenges, because environmental degradation increasingly constrains human development, health, and livelihoods (Kumar et al., 2022; Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022; Maitry et al., 2024b). India, home to more than one-sixth of humanity, is simultaneously one of the world's fastest-growing major economies and one of its most environmentally stressed countries, carrying high burdens of air and water pollution, land degradation, biodiversity loss, and climate vulnerability (Gupta et al., 2018; Jan et al., 2023).

Developing economies play a pivotal role in global sustainability transitions, because their infrastructure, energy systems, and urban forms are still taking shape and can lock in long-term patterns of emissions and resource use. India's cumulative emissions remain lower than those of many developed economies, yet its current greenhouse gas emissions rank among the highest globally, and its projected energy demand growth is substantial (Bhasin and Arora, 2019; Jackson et al., 2022). At the same time, India faces acute local environmental crises, including some of the world's highest levels of ambient PM2.5 pollution, severe groundwater depletion in key agricultural regions, and escalating climate-related disasters (Mondal et al., 2022; Falak et al., 2022; Gupta et al., 2018).

The empirical and review literature on India's environmental sustainability has expanded significantly since 2015. It now spans sector-specific analyses (for example, of air quality, forests, and renewable energy), cross-cutting assessments that link sustainability to economic and institutional factors, and evaluations of national policies and international commitments (Khandey et al., 2023; Mondal et al., 2022). Even so, the evidence base remains fragmented across disciplines and sectors, and there is a shortage of integrated, up-to-date synthesis framed around environmental sustainability indicators, climate risks, and governance pathways (Mishra et al., 2024). Existing reviews often focus on a single theme, such as air pollution, water, or climate policy, without systematically connecting the multiple dimensions of sustainability or aligning them with the SDG and Paris Agreement frameworks (Ritu and Kaur, 2024).

This review addresses these gaps through a systematic literature review of environmental sustainability in India during 2015–2025, complemented by an analysis of major international and national datasets and assessments. Its objectives are threefold: (i) to characterize trends in key environmental sustainability indicators (forest cover, emissions, water, air quality, biodiversity, and land degradation); (ii) to synthesize the evidence on sectoral challenges and adaptation–mitigation interactions across climate, biodiversity, urban environments, energy, and waste; and (iii) to critically examine environmental governance and policy implementation, identify emerging research frontiers, and propose future research and policy directions.

2. Methodology: Systematic Review Approach

2.1 Search strategy and databases

We conducted a systematic literature review following principles broadly consistent with the PRISMA guidelines, adapted for environmental social–ecological research. Three main bibliographic databases were searched Scopus, the Web of Science Core Collection, and Google Scholar supplemented by targeted searches of institutional repositories and grey literature from the IPCC, FAO, UNEP, World Bank, IEA, the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (MoEFCC), the Forest Survey of India (India State of Forest Report), and the Central Pollution Control Board (CPCB).

The core search strings combined terms related to (i) geography ("India" OR "Indian"), (ii) sustainability ("environmental sustainability" OR "sustainable development" OR "ecological footprint" OR "environmental indicators"), and (iii) domains ("climate change", "biodiversity", "ecosystem services", "air pollution", "water", "land degradation", "renewable energy", "waste management", "environmental governance"). Boolean operators and truncations were adjusted for each database, and citation chaining was used to identify additional relevant publications from the reference lists of key articles (Maitry et al., 2025a).

2.2 Time frame and document types

The review focused on the period 2015–2025 to align with the post-2015 SDG era and the major climate and biodiversity agreements, while capturing recent empirical data and policy developments. Peer-reviewed journal articles formed the core evidence base, with a preference for Scopus-indexed journals such as Science of the Total Environment, Environmental Research, Journal of Environmental Management, Ecological Indicators, Land Degradation & Development, Environmental Science & Policy, Nature Sustainability, and Sustainability. High-quality national and international reports (for example, IPCC AR6, the India State of Forest Report, CPCB air and waste reports, and World Bank and IEA datasets) were included to provide authoritative statistics and policy context.

2.3 Inclusion and exclusion criteria

Studies were included when they (i) were empirical or review studies focusing wholly or primarily on India; (ii) were clearly relevant to environmental sustainability (biophysical indicators, environmental quality, ecosystem services, climate impacts, or policy and governance); (iii) were published between 2015 and 2025; and (iv) were available in full text in English. Studies were excluded when they (i) focused mainly on other countries with only passing reference to India; (ii) lacked explicit environmental relevance (for example, purely economic or technological analyses without environmental outcomes); or (iii) were non-peer-reviewed opinion pieces or short communications, unless widely cited in policy debates.

The initial database search yielded 312 records after the removal of duplicates. Title and abstract screening excluded 128 records against the criteria above, leaving 184 articles for full-text assessment (Figure 1). Of these, 48 were excluded for insufficient empirical focus on India or limited environmental relevance, resulting in a final sample of 136 peer-reviewed articles together with 20 major reports and datasets.

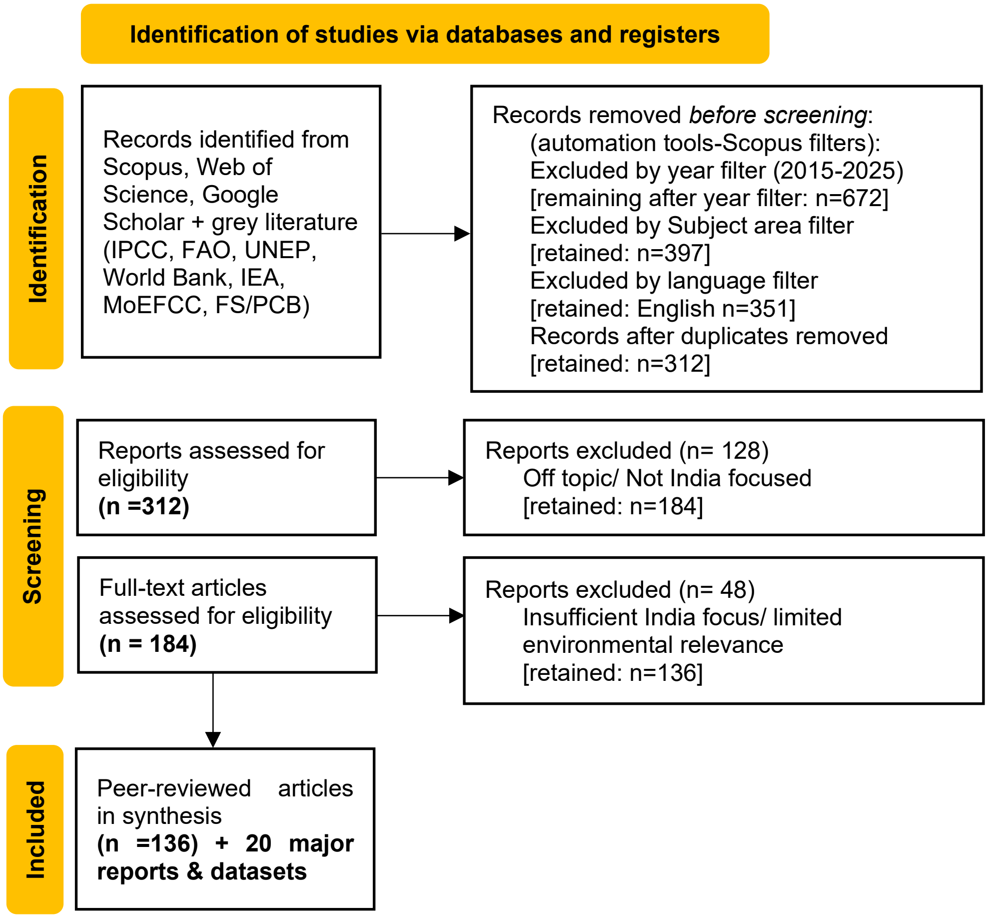


Figure 1. The screening process, summarized as a PRISMA-style flow diagram.

2.4 Data extraction and synthesis

For each included article, we extracted information on study location, time period, environmental indicators or outcomes, methodological approach, key findings, and policy implications. Studies were then grouped into thematic domains: indicators; climate impacts and adaptation; biodiversity and ecosystem services; urban environments; energy and low-carbon transitions; waste and circular economy; and governance and policy. We adopted a narrative synthesis approach, emphasizing critical comparison across studies, the identification of convergence and divergence in findings, and the articulation of cross-sectoral trade-offs and synergies.

3. Environmental Sustainability Indicators in India

3.1 Forest cover and terrestrial ecosystems

Forest cover is a central sustainability indicator in India's climate mitigation, biodiversity conservation, and rural livelihood agendas, and it is monitored regularly through the India State of Forest Reports (ISFR) and international datasets. Recent analyses of World Bank data indicate that India's forest cover, as a share of total land area, has remained relatively stable or increased slightly since the early 1990s, with notable subnational variation. A national-scale assessment of forest cover dynamics from 1990 to 2021, based on World Bank and complementary datasets, reported heterogeneous trends: some states showed net gains from afforestation and social forestry, while others experienced continued losses driven by urbanization, agricultural expansion, and infrastructure (Philip, 2024; Clark et al., 2021).

Remote-sensing studies in specific regions corroborate this mixed picture. Time-series land use–land cover analyses in East Godavari (Andhra Pradesh) and parts of the Western Himalaya and Eastern Ghats have documented significant forest disturbance from logging, fire, and grazing, alongside localized recovery linked to conservation interventions and community forestry. Recent work on forest restoration potential suggests that existing land uses place substantial constraints on large-scale afforestation as a climate mitigation strategy; one study estimated that the feasible restoration area is about 1.58 Mha, sequestering around 61.3 Tg C, far lower than global extrapolations would suggest (Kaur et al., 2023; Gopalakrishna et al., 2022; Yan and Wang, 2022; Ramachandran et al., 2016).

India's forest policy commitments, including the goal of achieving 33% tree and forest cover, carry complex hydrological and livelihood implications. A study in the Central Indian Highlands, combining field measurements and modelling, showed that expanding tree cover on croplands may reduce groundwater recharge and dry-season irrigation water, with consequences for food security if not carefully planned. These findings highlight the importance of integrating forest expansion targets with water and agricultural sustainability considerations (Clark et al., 2021).

3.2 Greenhouse gas emissions and ecological footprint

India's total greenhouse gas emissions nearly tripled between 1990 and 2018, rising from about 1,990 Mt CO_2-equivalent to more than 3,300 Mt CO_2-equivalent, driven largely by fossil fuel combustion, industrial processes, and agriculture. Fossil CO_2 emissions rebounded rapidly after the temporary dip during the COVID-19 lockdowns, reaching around 2.7 Gt CO_2 in 2021, slightly above 2019 levels. Recent decomposition and structural analyses highlight the roles of economic growth, energy intensity, and structural change in shaping India's emissions trajectory, with services playing a growing role in consumption-based emissions and heavy industry and construction dominating intermediate emissions (Jana and Lise, 2023; Jackson et al., 2022; Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022; Wang et al., 2020).

Beyond conventional emissions metrics, several recent studies have used the ecological footprint as a composite indicator of environmental sustainability. Analyses for India suggest that the per capita ecological footprint has risen significantly with GDP growth and energy consumption, although human capital and trade openness can moderate environmental pressures by fostering cleaner technologies and pro-environmental behaviour. Macroeconomic modelling studies that integrate growth, electricity consumption, and GHG emissions under various policy scenarios point to the feasibility of meeting selected SDGs while constraining emissions through improved energy efficiency and the accelerated deployment of renewables (Gupta et al., 2018; Khanday et al., 2023; Ritu and Kaur, 2024).

3.3 Air pollution and ambient air quality

India experiences some of the highest ambient PM2.5 concentrations in the world, with severe implications for public health and environmental sustainability. A regional, population-based study of South Asia documented that between 1990 and 2020, India's CO_2 emissions increased from 578.5 to 2,441.8 Mt and its total GHG emissions nearly tripled, with associated deterioration in air quality indicators and a rising disease burden. Satellite-based analyses for major Indian cities under the National Clean Air Programme (NCAP) show that pollutants such as NO_2 and particulate matter declined temporarily during the COVID-19 lockdowns but rebounded as economic activity resumed underscoring the structural nature of air pollution sources (Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022; Kumar et al., 2020; Gadakh et al., 2022).

National ambient air quality reports by the CPCB (not individually reviewed here, but widely cited in the literature) routinely identify transport, industry, power generation, construction dust, and biomass burning as major contributors to urban air pollution, with Delhi and other northern cities experiencing frequent severe episodes. Agricultural residue burning in Punjab and Haryana has been strongly linked to transboundary air pollution in the Indo-Gangetic Plain and the Delhi National Capital Region; review studies document high emissions of particulates and greenhouse gases and highlight the technological and behavioural barriers to alternative residue management (Parihar et al., 2023; Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022).

3.4 Water availability and stress

Water sustainability in India is characterized by strong spatial and temporal variability, shaped by monsoon-dependent river basins, overexploited aquifers, and competing demands from agriculture, industry, and urban use. Climate-linked observational studies for South Asia project changes in precipitation intensity, drought frequency, and evapotranspiration that will further stress water resources, particularly in already vulnerable regions. Research on the hydrological implications of increased forest and tree cover points to trade-offs between carbon sequestration and water availability at the basin scale, indicating potential reductions in dry-season streamflow under some afforestation scenarios (Mondal et al., 2022; Falak et al., 2022; Sanjay et al., 2020; Clark et al., 2021).

Groundwater depletion in intensively farmed regions such as the Indo-Gangetic Plain has emerged as a critical concern, although comprehensive national-scale analyses of groundwater sustainability remain limited in the peer-reviewed literature considered here. Emerging work on transboundary water governance including in the Koshi basin between India and Nepal highlights the importance of cooperative arrangements and climate-resilient infrastructure for managing shared water risks (Dixit, 2017).

3.5 Biodiversity status and land degradation

India is one of the world's 17 megadiverse countries, containing several globally significant biodiversity hotspots such as the Western Ghats, the Eastern Himalaya, and parts of the Indo-Burma region. Nevertheless, many studies document ongoing habitat loss, fragmentation, and degradation driven by land-use change, infrastructure development, and climate change. Soil quality–based assessments in the Eastern Ghats and remote-sensing studies in Gir and other protected areas reveal high levels of forest degradation and shifts in forest density classes, despite nominal stability in canopy cover (Sengupta et al., 2024; Gopalakrishna et al., 2022; Ramachandran et al., 2016; Mehta et al., 2022).

The conservation biology literature indicates that existing land uses and tenure systems constrain the potential for large-scale restoration to deliver climate and biodiversity benefits; one national-scale analysis estimates a limited feasible restoration area relative to the ambitious targets implied by global "30 × 30" and land-based mitigation pledges. Land degradation outside formally protected forests including in drylands and rainfed agricultural regions remains underrepresented in the empirical literature, although national reports suggest that a substantial share of India's land area is affected by erosion, salinization, and vegetation loss (Gopalakrishna et al., 2022; Sengupta et al., 2024; Maitry et al., 2025b).

Table 1 synthesizes selected national-scale environmental indicators from the reviewed literature and authoritative datasets. The values should be read as indicative ranges rather than precise time series, owing to methodological differences among sources.

Table 1. Indicative environmental sustainability indicators for India (circa 2015–2022)

Indicator	Approximate status and trend	Sources
Forest cover (% of land area)	Slight net increase since the 1990s; heterogeneous subnational trends—gains in some states from afforestation, losses in others from urbanization and agricultural expansion	Philip, 2024; Kaur et al., 2023; Clark et al., 2021
Total GHG emissions	Nearly tripled between 1990 and 2018; India accounted for ~80% of South Asia's GHG emissions in the 2010s	Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022; Jain et al., 2025
Fossil CO_2 emissions	Rebounded to ~2.7 Gt CO_2 in 2021, about 3% above 2019 pre-COVID levels	Jackson et al., 2022

Indicator	Approximate status and trend	Sources
Ambient air pollution	Among the world's highest PM2.5 concentrations; temporary improvement during COVID-19 lockdowns, followed by a rebound	Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022; Gadakh et al., 2022; Kumar et al., 2020
Renewable energy share in power mix	Increased from roughly 15% in 2015 to over 20% by the early 2020s	Eren et al., 2019; Indrajayanthan and Mohanty, 2022
Plastic waste generation	Estimated at about 660,788 tonnes in 2017–18, with significant underreporting from some states	Phanisankar et al., 2020; Hossain et al., 2022
GHG emissions from freshwater ecosystems	India contributes about 4% of global GHG emissions from freshwater systems	Mondal et al., 2022

4. Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation

4.1 Observed and projected climate trends

Observational datasets and climate model analyses for South Asia indicate robust warming trends and changes in precipitation patterns over India, including increases in mean temperature, the frequency of heatwaves, and the intensity of extreme rainfall events. An observational study using multiple geospatial indicators reported upward trends in temperature, CO_2 emissions, NO_2 density, and electricity generation across India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh between 1995 and 2021, linking these to climate change and infrastructure expansion. Regional climate modelling efforts coordinated by Indian institutions provide dynamically downscaled projections for the Indian monsoon region, showing increased monsoon variability, intensified extreme events, and shifts in seasonal cycles under medium- to high-emission scenarios (Falak et al., 2022; Sanjay et al., 2020).

Emerging global-scale analyses of "realistic" warming trajectories suggest that the end-of-century increase in global mean temperature may be held to around 2–3 °C under current and planned policies, though with large uncertainties and strong regional heterogeneity. For India, even moderate global warming levels are projected to substantially increase the frequency of extreme heat, intense rainfall, and compound hazards, amplifying social and ecological vulnerabilities (Maitry et al., 2024a; Scafetta, 2024).

4.2 Extreme events and agricultural vulnerability

Recent climate-impact studies for South Asia show the growing exposure of populations and cropland to climate extremes. Analyses of climate-driven drought exposure project that, by the mid-21st century, South Asian cropland including large areas in India will see substantial increases in exposure to agricultural drought, particularly under high-emission scenarios such as SSP3-7.0. Similarly, studies of heavy precipitation indices project large increases in days with heavy rainfall and in multi-day extreme precipitation events, with the Indo-Gangetic Plain and western India facing pronounced risks owing to dense populations and extensive agriculture (Talukder et al., 2025; Mondal et al., 2024).

Agricultural productivity in India is sensitive to both temperature and water stress, and climate change is expected to exacerbate yield variability, particularly in rainfed systems. Although the literature considered here includes relatively few India-specific quantitative projections at the crop level, the IPCC AR6 regional assessments emphasize increased risks of heat stress, drought, and flooding for major cereal crops in South Asia under warming beyond 1.5–2 °C, with associated implications for food security and rural livelihoods (Scott et al., 2024; Jan et al., 2023).

4.3 Water stress and the Himalayan cryosphere

India's water security is closely linked to monsoon variability and Himalayan cryospheric change. Studies using remote sensing and modelling across South Asia project an increase in the frequency and severity of droughts in several Indian regions, with climate change playing a dominant role in future exposure, at least through mid-century. At the same time, extreme precipitation and flooding risk are projected to increase in the eastern Indo-Gangetic Plain and other densely populated basins (Mahato et al., 2022; Mondal et al., 2024; Talukder et al., 2025).

Although the reviewed literature does not focus extensively on glacier mass balance, IPCC AR6 and associated regional assessments underline rapid glacier retreat in the Himalaya and increased risks from glacial lake outburst floods, altered river flows, and downstream changes in water supply. These cryosphere-related changes have cascading implications for hydropower reliability, irrigation, and ecosystem services in northern India, calling for integrated adaptation planning that accounts for long-term cryospheric trends (Jan et al., 2023; Scott et al., 2024).

4.4 Adaptation policies and institutional responses

India's climate policy framework is anchored in the National Action Plan on Climate Change (NAPCC), launched in 2008 and subsequently updated through a series of national missions and state action plans. A recent policy-focused analysis characterizes the NAPCC as combining elements of hierarchical and networked governance, with strong central framing but variable subnational implementation and limited mainstreaming into sectoral policies. Forest policies and programmes have gradually incorporated climate adaptation objectives, for example, through joint forest management, watershed development, and ecosystem-based adaptation though systematic assessments of their effectiveness remain limited (Deshpande et al., 2025; Murthy and Kumar, 2019; Bhasin and Arora, 2019).

IPCC AR6 emphasizes the narrow and rapidly closing window for climate-resilient development and the need for integrated mitigation and adaptation strategies that address justice and equity concerns. For India, this implies scaling up investment in climate-resilient agriculture, water management, disaster risk reduction, and urban planning, as well as addressing structural drivers of vulnerability such as caste, gender, and socioeconomic marginalization that shape climate impacts in South Asian contexts (Bishwakarma and Roongtawanreongsri, 2024; Delap et al., 2025; Scott et al., 2024; Jan et al., 2023).

5. Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services

5.1 Biodiversity hotspots and protected areas

India hosts parts of four global biodiversity hotspots and maintains a large network of protected areas, including national parks, wildlife sanctuaries, and tiger reserves. Analyses of India's potential to contribute to the global "30 × 30" target under the Kunming–Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework argue that India could nominally meet the quantitative target by recognizing a broader set of area-based conservation measures, but that qualitative aspects representation, connectivity, and governance are critical. The same assessment stresses that protected areas are unevenly distributed across ecosystems and often face strong external pressures from infrastructure, resource extraction, and tourism (Sengupta et al., 2024; Gopalakrishna et al., 2022).

Species-level studies, though fewer in number than habitat assessments, highlight climate-induced range shifts and habitat loss for high-altitude and range-restricted species in the Himalaya and other mountain regions. Population and distribution assessments for emblematic species such as mugger crocodiles, large carnivores, and endemic plants point to both conservation successes in some protected areas and ongoing threats from habitat fragmentation, pollution, and human–wildlife conflict (Rathore et al., 2021; Abedin et al., 2024; Vyas and Vaghashiya, 2020).

5.2 Ecosystem service valuation and trade-offs

The quantitative valuation of ecosystem services in India is an emerging field, with studies focusing on carbon sequestration, water regulation, and non-timber forest products, among others. Assessments of forest restoration potential show relatively modest additional carbon sequestration once realistic land-use constraints are considered, challenging narratives that place large-scale tree planting at the centre of mitigation strategy. At the same time, landscape-level analyses of forest cover and dietary quality suggest that forests contribute to nutrition security by enhancing dietary diversity, although the causal pathways are complex and mediated by market access and socioeconomic factors (Mahato and Sharma, 2024; Maitry et al., 2023; Milbank, 2023; Gopalakrishna et al., 2022).

The hydrological implications of increased tree cover in agricultural landscapes illustrate important ecosystem service trade-offs. In the Central Indian Highlands, modelling indicates that while increased tree cover can enhance soil infiltration locally, it may reduce groundwater recharge and dry-season baseflow at the catchment scale, raising concerns about water availability for Rabi crops and downstream users. These findings underscore the need to design ecosystem-based interventions that explicitly account for multiple services and potential distributional impacts (Sharma et al., 2022b; Clark et al., 2021).

5.3 Conservation successes and failures

The literature reviewed here points to several notable conservation successes, such as improved forest condition in some jointly managed forests and the stabilization or recovery of certain charismatic species in well-protected reserves. However, there is also evidence of continuing forest degradation especially in open and scrub forests and of ongoing biodiversity loss outside protected areas. Legal and policy analyses highlight tensions between conservation objectives and development projects, as well as the implications of recent amendments to forest legislation for land diversion and community rights (Das, 2020; Kaur et al., 2025; Ramachandran et al., 2016; Mehta et al., 2022; Murthy and Kumar, 2019; Philip, 2024). Emerging discussions of India's role in global biodiversity targets emphasize the need to broaden conservation strategies beyond strict protected areas to include other effective area-based conservation measures, community-conserved areas, and integrated landscape approaches that align biodiversity objectives with livelihoods and climate adaptation (Gopalakrishna et al., 2022; Sengupta et al., 2024).

6. Urban Environmental Sustainability

6.1 Urbanization, air pollution, and heat islands

India's urban population has grown rapidly, and its major metropolitan regions experience intense environmental pressures from transport, industry, construction, and energy use. Studies combining satellite remote sensing with ground observations for highly urbanized areas document high concentrations of NO_2, SO_2, and particulate matter, with significant public health implications. The National Clean Air Programme seeks to reduce PM2.5 and PM10 concentrations in non-attainment cities through a mix of regulatory and voluntary measures, but early assessments suggest only modest progress and the need for more stringent structural interventions in the transport and energy sectors (Maitry et al., 2024a; Gadakh et al., 2022; Abdul Jabbar et al., 2022).

Urban heat island (UHI) effects in Indian cities have received comparatively less systematic attention in the literature sample, but regional climate and land surface temperature analyses indicate rising UHI intensity associated with the expansion of impervious surfaces and the loss of urban green and blue spaces. These trends interact with climate-driven heatwaves, amplifying heat stress for urban residents particularly the urban poor in informal settlements though in-depth empirical studies on UHI and social vulnerability remain limited.

6.2 Water pollution, waste, and sanitation

Urban water sustainability challenges include untreated sewage discharge, industrial effluents, and stormwater runoff, all of which degrade river and lake ecosystems. Case-specific water quality assessments for Indian cities show widespread exceedance of permissible limits for multiple parameters in surface water and groundwater, although national-scale synthesis remains sparse for the review period considered here. Wastewater treatment capacity lags behind generation, and the energy-efficient operation of municipal water and wastewater utilities has emerged as a priority for both environmental and fiscal sustainability (Kathe et al., 2024; Liu et al., 2012).

Sanitation initiatives under the Swachh Bharat Mission (SBM) have significantly expanded toilet coverage and led to many rural and urban areas being officially declared "open-defecation-free." Yet a systematic review of the SBM's effectiveness finds persistent open defecation in several regions, driven by financial constraints, water scarcity, social norms, and mistrust of government statistics. These findings underscore the importance of behavioural change, reliable water supply, and robust monitoring systems for achieving and sustaining sanitation gains (VerKuilen et al., 2023).

6.3 Solid waste and the informal sector

Indian cities generate large and growing volumes of municipal solid waste, with limited segregation at source and inadequate collection, recycling, and scientific disposal infrastructure. CPCB estimates suggest that plastic waste generation alone was around 660,788 tonnes in 2017–18, with significant underreporting from many states and union territories. Reviews of plastic waste management in India identify major challenges in reverse logistics, source-segregated collection, and the enforcement of plastic waste rules, but they also highlight opportunities in extended producer responsibility (EPR), informal sector integration, and circular economy approaches (Phanisankar et al., 2020; Hossain et al., 2022).

Studies of emerging zero-waste and plastic-free initiatives in Indian cities showcase local innovations that reduce single-use plastics and promote alternative materials, while also cautioning against unintended socioeconomic effects and greenwashing. However, comprehensive city-level assessments of waste flows, informal recycling networks, and material circularity remain scarce, representing a key gap in urban sustainability research (Conlon, 2023).

6.4 Smart and sustainable city initiatives

India's Smart Cities Mission has provided an important policy platform for integrating environmental sustainability into urban planning, at least in principle. The Indian Smart City Environmental Sustainability Index (ISCESI) was developed to assess the environmental performance of 60 smart cities across multiple indicators, including air quality, water, waste, energy, and green spaces. The index reveals wide variation in performance: some cities score relatively well thanks to better waste management and green cover, while many lag behind on air quality and water indicators (Shruti et al., 2020).

Critiques of smart city initiatives argue that many projects prioritize digital infrastructure and real estate development over fundamental environmental services, and that citizen participation and the inclusion of informal settlements are often limited. Even so, the ISCESI and related tools provide an analytical basis for benchmarking and improving urban environmental sustainability performance across Indian cities (Shruti et al., 2020).

7. Energy Transition and Low-Carbon Development

7.1 India's energy mix and emissions

India's energy system remains heavily reliant on coal, which accounted for around 70% of electricity generation as of the early 2020s despite significant growth in renewable capacity. Analyses of electricity generation technology and energy sustainability emphasize that coal-based power continues to dominate with associated greenhouse gas and air pollutant emissions even as recognition grows of the health and environmental costs of this dependence. Decomposition studies of carbon emissions from energy use highlight the contributions of economic activity, energy intensity, fuel mix, and structural change to India's emissions trajectory (Wang et al., 2020; Anjum and Chauhan, 2024; Indrajayanthan and Mohanty, 2022; Jana et al., 2023).

In the international climate arena, India has pledged to achieve net-zero emissions by 2070 and to substantially increase its non-fossil electricity capacity by 2030, building on earlier Nationally Determined Contributions (NDCs) under the Paris Agreement. Model-based evaluations of India's climate targets indicate that meeting the intensity-based and non-fossil capacity targets is feasible with moderate GDP impacts, but that deep decarbonization consistent with net zero would require more transformative changes in energy systems, infrastructure, and consumption patterns (Sobha, 2022; Singh et al., 2019; Bhasin and Arora, 2019).

7.2 Renewable energy expansion

India has made substantial progress in expanding renewable energy capacity, becoming one of the world's largest markets for solar and wind power. Empirical analyses report that the share of renewables in total power generation increased from about 15.4% in 2015 to over 20% by 2022, with installed renewable capacity exceeding 160–190 GW by the early-to-mid 2020s. Solar capacity has grown particularly rapidly some estimates suggest more than a 20-fold increase between 2014 and 2024 alongside strong growth in wind power (Eren et al., 2019; Mohanty, 2024; Usah et al., 2020).

Studies quantifying India's renewable energy potential using reanalysis data and capacity factor modelling show high solar potential across much of the country (excluding parts of the western Himalaya) and strong wind resources along the Western Ghats, the Gujarat coast, and offshore regions. Integrated assessments suggest that India has the technical potential to meet a large share of its electricity demand from renewables, given suitable grid integration, storage, and demand management strategies. However, the land requirements for renewable installations are substantial, and careful siting is needed to avoid conflicts with high-biodiversity areas and productive agriculture (Kiesecker et al., 2019; Hunt and Bloomfield, 2024; Sobha, 2022).

7.3 Policy instruments and financing

India's renewable energy transition has been driven by a suite of policy instruments, including feed-in tariffs, competitive auctions, renewable purchase obligations, fiscal incentives, and public finance through institutions such as the Indian Renewable Energy Development Agency (IREDA). A decade-long review of renewable energy financing in India estimates that around INR 5.9–6.1 lakh crore was invested between 2014 and 2023, contributing to a near-doubling of renewable capacity from about 80 GW to 191 GW by FY 2024. The analysis emphasizes the importance of diversified financing instruments, risk mitigation mechanisms, and stable policy signals for scaling up investment toward the 2030 non-fossil capacity targets (Mohanty, 2024).

At the state level, a multi-criteria decision analysis of clean energy transition potential across major power-producing states ranks Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, and Gujarat relatively high, based on resource potential, grid infrastructure, and policy support. Nonetheless, integration challenges related to grid stability, forecasting, storage, and institutional coordination remain significant, particularly as renewable penetration increases (Mishra et al., 2024; Anjum and Chauhan, 2024; Indrajayanthan and Mohanty, 2022).

7.4 Just transitions and co-benefits

While much of the literature focuses on the technical and economic dimensions of the energy transition, emerging work highlights the social and environmental co-benefits and trade-offs. Decarbonizing the power sector offers significant opportunities to improve air quality and public health, particularly in coal-dependent regions, but it may also entail employment and livelihood transitions for workers and communities dependent on fossil fuel industries. Integrated assessments of the transport and power sectors suggest that electrifying transport with renewable power could deliver large emissions reductions and co-benefits in India, but would require coordinated infrastructure planning and regulatory support (Sobha et al., 2023; Anjum and Chauhan, 2024; Indrajayanthan and Mohanty, 2022). Research on green hydrogen and sectoral decarbonization points to the potential for renewable-based hydrogen to substitute for fossil fuels in industry and heavy transport, though these technologies are still nascent in India and require substantial policy and investment support (Patel et al., 2024).

8. Waste Management and Circular Economy

8.1 Municipal solid waste and plastics

India's waste sector illustrates both the challenges and the opportunities of a circular economy transition. Municipal solid waste generation has increased rapidly with urbanization and changing consumption patterns, and although national data are fragmented, multiple studies highlight low rates of source segregation, recycling, and scientific disposal. Plastic waste is a particular concern: CPCB-based estimates indicate that India generated roughly 660,788 tonnes of plastic waste in 2017–18, though underreporting from many states implies that the true figures are likely higher (Quijandria, 2023; Hossain et al., 2022; Phanisankar et al., 2020).

Comprehensive reviews of plastic waste management in India document a predominance of low-value, multi-layered packaging in waste streams, limited implementation of extended producer responsibility (EPR), and heavy reliance on informal waste pickers and recyclers. Technological solutions such as pyrolysis, co-processing in cement kilns, and advanced recycling are being explored, but concerns remain over emissions, economic viability, and scalability (Hossain et al., 2022; Maitlo et al., 2022; Phanisankar et al., 2020; Conlon, 2023).

8.2 COVID-19 and biomedical waste

The COVID-19 pandemic triggered a sharp increase in biomedical and plastic waste, driven by the widespread use of personal protective equipment (PPE), single-use plastics, and packaging. Global and India-focused reviews in Science of the Total Environment and related journals highlight the resulting strain on waste management systems and the potential environmental and health risks of inadequately managed biomedical waste. Analyses of biomedical waste during the pandemic in India underscore the need for improved segregation, greater treatment capacity, and occupational safety for waste workers, as well as the development of sustainable PPE and waste-to-resource innovations (Singh et al., 2020; Kathiravan et al., 2023; Sharma et al., 2022a; Vanapalli et al., 2021).

8.3 Circular economy policies and local initiatives

India has introduced several policy instruments aimed at promoting circularity, including the Plastic Waste Management Rules (2016, subsequently amended), the E-Waste Management Rules, and guidelines on extended producer responsibility for plastics and electronic products. Case studies of EPR implementation and single-use plastic bans in cities such as Pune reveal significant enforcement challenges, capacity constraints, and stakeholder conflicts, yet they also demonstrate opportunities for multi-stakeholder collaboration and innovation (Nomani et al., 2022; Hossain et al., 2022).

At the grassroots level, emerging zero-waste communities and plastic-free campaigns illustrate how social movements, civil society organizations, and local governments can drive changes in material use and waste practices, although systematic evaluations of their environmental and socioeconomic impacts remain limited. International and regional workshops on waste management goals for South Asia stress the importance of data systems, institutional capacity, and policy coherence for aligning waste management with the SDG targets (Kumar and George, 2021; Conlon, 2023). Table 2 provides an indicative summary of key waste-related indicators and policy instruments.

Table 2. Selected waste and circular economy indicators for India

Dimension	Indicative status or trend	Sources
Municipal solid waste	Rapidly increasing generation with low source segregation; limited engineered landfills and waste-to-energy plants; data gaps across cities	Quijandria, 2023; Hossain et al., 2022
Plastic waste	~660,788 tonnes reported in 2017–18; significant underreporting; dominance of packaging plastics	Phanisankar et al., 2020; Hossain et al., 2022

Dimension	Indicative status or trend	Sources
Biomedical waste (COVID-19)	Sharp increase during the pandemic; capacity constraints in treatment and disposal; heightened occupational risks	Kathiravan et al., 2023; Vanapalli et al., 2021
Circular economy policies	Plastic Waste Management Rules, E-Waste Rules, EPR guidelines; varied implementation quality across states and cities	Hossain et al., 2022; Nomani et al., 2022

9. Environmental Governance and Policy Analysis

9.1 Legal and institutional architecture

India has a dense and evolving environmental legal framework, including foundational laws such as the Environment (Protection) Act, the Air Act, the Water Act, the Forest (Conservation) Act, and the Wildlife (Protection) Act, complemented by judicial interventions and national policies on environment, forests, and climate change. Despite this sophisticated architecture, implementation gaps, overlapping mandates, and capacity constraints at the state and local levels undermine environmental outcomes, as evidenced by persistent air and water pollution and ongoing habitat degradation (Murthy and Kumar, 2019; Bhasin and Arora, 2019; Gadakh et al., 2022; Kumar et al., 2022).

Recent legal scholarship on forest governance argues that definitional ambiguities and new legislative amendments such as the Forest (Conservation) Amendment Act, 2023 may weaken safeguards against forest diversion and widen the gap between official forest statistics and ecological realities. Judicial interventions, including landmark public interest litigations, have played a critical role in forest and pollution control, but their long-term effectiveness in reshaping governance practices remains contested (Kaur et al., 2025).

9.2 Climate policy and the NAPCC

India's climate policy trajectory, from the Kyoto Protocol through the Paris Agreement, reflects a gradual shift from a defensive, equity-based stance to more proactive engagement in global mitigation and adaptation, while maintaining a strong emphasis on development priorities. The NAPCC and its associated missions on solar energy, enhanced energy efficiency, sustainable habitat, water, sustaining the Himalayan ecosystem, a green India, sustainable agriculture, and strategic knowledge for climate change are central pillars of national climate governance (Jayaram, 2024; Bhasin and Arora, 2019; Deshpande et al., 2025).

A recent mixed-methods evaluation of climate–health action plans (for selected states) and policy-style analyses of the NAPCC point to mixed performance: progress in areas such as renewable energy deployment and energy efficiency, but limited mainstreaming of climate considerations into health, urban development, and social protection policies. Policy-style analysis highlights a predominantly top-down orientation, limited deliberation with vulnerable communities, and variable state-level capacities (Chaudhry et al., 2025; Deshpande et al., 2025).

9.3 Environmental policy, institutions, and financial mechanisms

Studies of financial development, institutions, and environmental outcomes in India suggest that stronger financial systems and higher institutional quality can support long-term ecological sustainability by enabling green investment and fostering better environmental governance. Analyses of green finance and carbon taxation options indicate that carefully designed fiscal instruments could reduce emissions while supporting sustainable development projects and enhancing social acceptability (Rao and Tandan, 2025; Payal et al., 2023; Khanday et al., 2023).

Nevertheless, the enforcement of environmental regulation often remains weak, constrained by under-resourced pollution control boards, limited monitoring, and political economy pressures linked to industrial lobbies and infrastructure-led development. Integrated assessments argue that bridging the gap between environmental policy design and on-the-ground implementation requires institutional reform, improved data systems, capacity building, and stronger accountability mechanisms (Gadakh et al., 2022; Kumar et al., 2022). Figure 2 conceptually illustrates India's multilevel environmental governance framework, highlighting interactions among national policies and laws, state implementation, local institutions, the judiciary, and non-state actors, and indicating key leverage points for strengthening environmental sustainability.

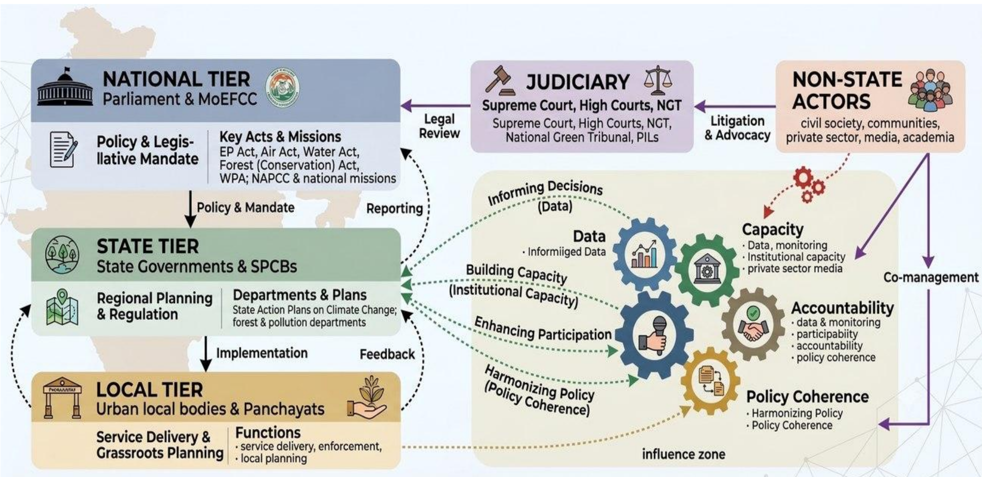


Figure 2. Conceptual framework of environmental governance in India.

10. Emerging Research Trends and Knowledge Gaps

10.1 Bibliometric and thematic trends

The reviewed literature indicates a marked increase in India-focused environmental sustainability research since 2015, with a strong presence in journals such as Science of the Total Environment, Sustainability, Ecological Indicators, Environmental Research, and Land Degradation & Development. Thematically, the major research clusters are: (i) air pollution and health; (ii) climate change impacts and energy transitions; (iii) forest cover dynamics and restoration; (iv) plastic and solid waste management; and (v) environmental governance and policy evaluation (Parihar et al., 2023; Philip, 2024; Hossain et al., 2022; Ritu and Kaur, 2024; Kumar et al., 2022).

Emerging areas include integrated SDG assessments using complex-network and multi-criteria frameworks, state-level SDG performance analysis, and cross-sectoral modelling of energy, water, and land systems. There is also growing attention to the social dimensions of climate vulnerability, such as the roles of caste, gender, and labour precarity though these strands remain less connected to mainstream environmental indicators and policy debates (Unni et al., 2025; Gupta et al., 2018; Delap et al., 2025; Bishwakarma and Roongtawanreongsri, 2024).

10.2 Understudied environmental challenges

Several critical environmental issues in India are comparatively underrepresented in the 2015–2025 literature sample. These include: (i) comprehensive assessments of groundwater sustainability and pollution; (ii) systematic analysis of land degradation and desertification beyond forested landscapes; (iii) the cumulative impacts of linear infrastructure (roads, transmission lines, canals) on ecosystems; and (iv) coastal and marine ecosystem degradation and blue economy trade-offs. Although individual case studies exist, integrated national-scale syntheses remain scarce.

Urban environmental research, though expanding, often concentrates on a few major megacities, leaving smaller and medium-sized cities, peri-urban regions, and informal settlements underresearched. Similarly, there is limited empirical work on just transitions for coal-dependent regions, including the socioeconomic impacts on workers, local economies, and ecosystems (Anjum and Chauhan, 2024; Shruti et al., 2020; Gadakh et al., 2022).

10.3 Data, methods, and integration gaps

Methodologically, many studies rely on remotely sensed data and national statistics, which are essential for large-scale assessment but may obscure local socio-ecological dynamics and institutional contexts. There is a need for more mixed-methods research that combines quantitative indicator analysis with qualitative and participatory approaches, in order to understand how environmental change is experienced and governed at multiple scales (Bishwakarma and Roongtawanreongsri, 2024; Sengupta et al., 2024).

Data gaps are a recurrent theme, particularly for waste flows, groundwater, urban green and blue infrastructure, and the distributional impacts of environmental policies. Improving environmental data systems, interoperability among agencies, and open data access would greatly enhance the capacity for evidence-based policy and research. Integrated modelling frameworks that link climate, energy, water, land, and socioeconomic systems remain relatively rare for India, yet they are essential for analyzing the trade-offs and synergies in sustainability transitions (Gupta et al., 2018; Sobha, 2022). Figure 3 presents a conceptual framework linking Drivers, Pressures, State, Impacts, and Responses (DPSIR) for environmental sustainability in India, integrating multiple sectors and governance levels.

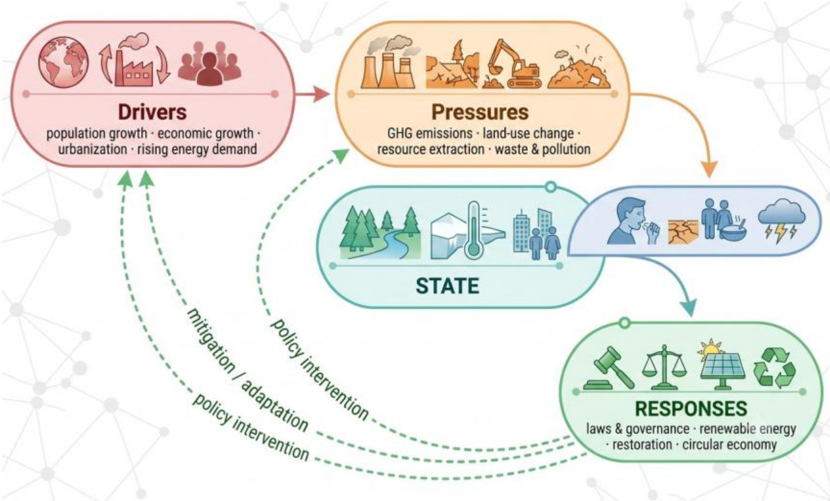


Figure 3. DPSIR-style conceptual framework for environmental sustainability in India.

11. Future Research Directions

11.1 Interdisciplinary and integrated assessment

Advancing environmental sustainability in India requires research that crosses disciplinary and sectoral boundaries. Priority areas include integrated assessments of water–energy–food–biodiversity nexus trade-offs, using coupled models and scenario analysis to evaluate alternative development pathways under climate uncertainty. Such assessments should be grounded in robust empirical data and should incorporate stakeholder perspectives to ensure relevance and legitimacy (Gupta et al., 2018; Clark et al., 2021). Research is also needed on the cumulative and multi-scalar impacts of infrastructure, including transport corridors, energy projects, and urban expansion on ecosystems and communities. This calls for the integration of spatial analysis, environmental impact assessment, political ecology, and institutional analysis (Kaur et al., 2025; Sengupta et al., 2024).

11.2 Technological innovation and just transitions

Technological innovation will play a key role in India's sustainability transition, from renewable energy systems and energy storage to low-carbon industrial processes, nature-based solutions, and advanced waste management technologies. Research should focus not only on technical feasibility and cost but also on distributional impacts, employment effects, and social acceptance, ensuring that transitions are just and inclusive (Mishra et al., 2024; Patel et al., 2024).

Key research topics include: (i) regionally differentiated pathways for phasing down coal while safeguarding livelihoods; (ii) the deployment of green hydrogen and other emerging technologies in hard-to-abate sectors; (iii) decentralized renewable energy solutions for rural and peri-urban areas; and (iv) the sustainable intensification and diversification of agriculture in ways that reduce emissions and enhance resilience (Sobha et al., 2023; Anjum and Chauhan, 2024).

11.3 Governance innovation and policy learning

There is substantial scope for research on governance innovations that can enhance environmental policy implementation and accountability. This includes comparative analysis of state-level environmental performance, evaluation of policy instruments such as green finance, carbon pricing, and EPR, and examination of polycentric governance arrangements that involve multiple actors and scales (Payal et al., 2023; Khanday et al., 2023). Studies of social movements, litigation, and media in shaping environmental agendas could shed light on pathways for strengthening public engagement and environmental democracy. In addition, research on climate and environmental communication including the roles of journalists and knowledge brokers can support the more effective translation of scientific evidence into policy and practice (Wadud, 2022; Scott et al., 2024).

11.4 Knowledge co-production and local perspectives

Future research should prioritize knowledge co-production with local communities, indigenous groups, and marginalized constituencies, recognizing their experiential knowledge and their rights in environmental decision-making. This involves participatory monitoring of environmental indicators, community-based adaptation and conservation initiatives, and collaborative evaluation of policy impacts (Sengupta et al., 2024; Bishwakarma and Roongtawanreongsri, 2024). Such approaches can reveal context-specific pathways to sustainability that may not be apparent from top-down indicators alone, and they can help address the procedural and distributive justice concerns that are central to climate-resilient development, as emphasized in IPCC AR6 (Scott et al., 2024; Jan et al., 2023).

12. Conclusion

Environmental sustainability in India stands at a critical juncture, where modest progress on selected indicators and policy fronts is overshadowed by persistent and in some cases worsening pressures on air, water, land, and ecosystems. Forest cover has remained relatively stable or increased slightly at the national level, yet many forested landscapes show signs of degradation, and restoration potential is constrained by existing land uses and socioeconomic drivers. Greenhouse gas emissions have risen sharply, and India accounts for the bulk of South Asia's GHG emissions, even as the country has made significant strides in deploying renewable energy and articulating long-term net-zero aspirations.

Climate change impacts including heat extremes, altered precipitation patterns, droughts, floods, and Himalayan glacier retreat pose escalating risks to agriculture, water security, health, and ecosystems, and they fall disproportionately on vulnerable communities. Urbanization and industrialization continue to drive severe air and water pollution, waste generation, and environmental injustices, despite national programmes such as the NCAP and the SBM. Waste management systems, particularly for plastics and biomedical waste, remain inadequate but are increasingly targeted by circular economy policies and local innovations. India's environmental governance framework combines a sophisticated legal architecture, emerging climate and biodiversity commitments, and expanding policy experimentation in areas such as renewable energy and waste management. Yet chronic implementation gaps, fragmented institutions, data limitations, and contested development priorities hinder the effective translation of policy into sustainability outcomes. The literature reviewed here underscores the need for integrated, justice-oriented, and participatory approaches that simultaneously advance environmental integrity, social inclusion, and economic transformation.

Future research can contribute to this agenda by advancing interdisciplinary assessments of nexus trade-offs, evaluating technological and governance innovations from a just transition perspective, and co-producing knowledge with affected communities. Aligning India's development trajectory with planetary boundaries and climate-resilient development pathways will require concerted effort from researchers, policymakers, civil society, and international partners informed by robust evidence and grounded in the realities of India's diverse socio-ecological systems.

References

Abdul Jabbar, S., Tul Qadar, L., Ghafoor, S., Rasheed, L., Sarfraz, Z., Sarfraz, A., … & Cherrez-Ojeda, I. (2022). Air quality, pollution and sustainability trends in South Asia: a population-based study. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 19(12), 7534. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph19127534

Abedin, I., Mukherjee, T., Abedin, J., Kim, H. W., & Kundu, S. (2024). Habitat loss in the IUCN extent: climate change-induced threat on the red goral (Naemorhedus baileyi) in the temperate mountains of South Asia. Biology, 13(9), 667. https://doi.org/10.3390/biology13090667

Anjum, A., & Chauhan, J. (2024). Role of electricity generation technology in the long-term energy sustainability of India. The Holistic Approach to Environment, 14(2), 71–77. https://doi.org/10.33765/thate.14.2.4

Bhasin, N., & Arora, N. (2019). India's evolving role in addressing climate change concerns. Management and Economics Research Journal, 5(2019). https://doi.org/10.18639/MERJ.2019.735009

Bishwakarma, K. L., & Roongtawanreongsri, S. (2024). Emerging themes and qualitative evidence of the role of the caste system in climate change vulnerability in South Asia. Human Ecology, 52(6), 1251–1267. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10745-024-00556-8

Chaudhry, D., Mukhopadhyay, I., & Guin, P. (2025). A mixed-method evaluation of climate change–health action plans and health expenditures for four Indian states. Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change, 30(1), 7. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11027-025-10198-w

Clark, B., DeFries, R., & Krishnaswamy, J. (2021). India's commitments to increase tree and forest cover: consequences for water supply and agriculture production within the Central Indian Highlands. Water, 13(7), 959. https://doi.org/10.3390/w13070959

Conlon, K. (2023). Emerging transformations in material use and waste practices in the Global South: Plastic-Free and Zero Waste in India. Urban Science, 7(2), 47. https://doi.org/10.3390/urbansci7020047

Das, G. K. (2020). Forest covers of West Bengal: a district-wise review. Reason – A Technical Journal, 19, 26–63. https://doi.org/10.21843/reas/2020/26-63/209272

Delap, E., Mann, G., Ahmed, I., Barry, A., Blagbrough, J., Ghimire, R., … & Sharmin, S. (2025). Why climate change requires a new approach to family strengthening in South Asia. Institutionalised Children Explorations and Beyond, 12(2), 181–188. https://doi.org/10.1177/23493003251356836

Deshpande, T., Mukherji, R., & Sastry, M. (2025). Policy styles and India's National Action Plan on Climate Change (NAPCC). Policy Studies, 46(1), 46–63. https://doi.org/10.1080/01442872.2023.2261388

Dixit, A. (2017). Trans-boundary water governance in South Asia: the beginning of a new journey. In I. Ahmed (Ed.), South Asian Rivers (The Anthropocene: Politik—Economics—Society—Science, Vol. 21, pp. 81–101). Cham: Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-67374-5_5

Eren, B. M., Taspinar, N., & Gokmenoglu, K. K. (2019). The impact of financial development and economic growth on renewable energy consumption: empirical analysis of India. Science of the Total Environment, 663, 189–197. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2019.01.323

Falak, F., Ayub, F., Zahid, Z., Sarfraz, Z., Sarfraz, A., Robles-Velasco, K., & Cherrez-Ojeda, I. (2022). Indicators of climate change, geospatial and analytical mapping of trends in India, Pakistan and Bangladesh: an observational study. International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 19(24), 17039. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph192417039

Gadakh, A., Shah, P., & Patel, C. (2022). Characterising the pollution concentration in a highly urbanized area: an application of remote sensing. The International Archives of the Photogrammetry, Remote Sensing and Spatial Information Sciences, 48, 45–52. https://doi.org/10.5194/isprs-archives-XLVIII-4-W5-2022-45-2022

Gopalakrishna, T., Lomax, G., Aguirre-Gutiérrez, J., Bauman, D., Roy, P. S., Joshi, P. K., & Malhi, Y. (2022). Existing land uses constrain climate change mitigation potential of forest restoration in India. Conservation Letters, 15(2), e12867. https://doi.org/10.1111/conl.12867

Gupta, S., Fügenschuh, A., & Ali, I. (2018). A multi-criteria goal programming model to analyze the sustainable goals of India. Sustainability, 10(3), 778. https://doi.org/10.3390/su10030778

Hossain, R., Islam, M. T., Shanker, R., Khan, D., Locock, K. E. S., Ghose, A., … & Sahajwalla, V. (2022). Plastic waste management in India: challenges, opportunities, and roadmap for circular economy. Sustainability, 14(8), 4425. https://doi.org/10.3390/su14084425

Hunt, K. M., & Bloomfield, H. C. (2024). Quantifying renewable energy potential and realized capacity in India: opportunities and challenges. Meteorological Applications, 31(3), e2196. https://doi.org/10.1002/met.2196

Indrajayanthan, V., & Mohanty, N. K. (2022). Assessment of clean energy transition potential in major power-producing states of India using multi-criteria decision analysis. Sustainability, 14(3), 1166. https://doi.org/10.3390/su14031166

Jackson, R. B., Friedlingstein, P., Le Quéré, C., Abernethy, S., Andrew, R. M., Canadell, J. G., … & Peters, G. P. (2022). Global fossil carbon emissions rebound near pre-COVID-19 levels.

Environmental Research Letters, 17(3), 031001. https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-9326/ac55b6

Jain, A. K., Seshadri, S., Anand, J., Chandra, N., Patra, P. K., Canadell, J. G., … & Tiwari, Y. K. (2025). South Asia's ecosystems are a net carbon sink, but the region is a major net GHG source to the atmosphere. Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 39(4), e2024GB008261. https://doi.org/10.1029/2024GB008261

Jan, K. A., Rather, A. A., & Balaji, R. (2023). The path to climate sustainability: a review of IPCC 2022. Global Sustainability Research, 2(1), 38–45. https://doi.org/10.56556/gssr.v2i1.429

Jana, S. K., & Lise, W. (2023). Carbon emissions from energy use in India: decomposition analysis. https://mpra.ub.uni-muenchen.de/id/eprint/117245

Jayaram, D. (2024). Shifting discourses of climate security in India: domestic and international dimensions. Third World Quarterly, 45(14), 2108–2126. https://doi.org/10.1080/01436597.2024.2314003

Kathe, P., Tripathi, G., Diwate, P., Kanga, S., Singh, S. K., Chand, K., … & Meraj, G. (2024). An integrated geospatial and analytical hierarchy process approach for sustainable water management in the Amravati District, India. Water Supply, 24(3), 673–691. https://doi.org/10.2166/ws.2024.031

Kathiravan, K., Vidyasakar, A., Pradeep, C., Natesan, U., Kumar, K. A., Bharathi, V. A., … & Prakash, S. A. (2023). Chorographic assessment on the overburden of single-use plastics bio-medical wastes risks and management during the COVID-19 pandemic in India. Total Environment Research Themes, 7, 100062. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.totert.2023.100062

Kaur, H., Tyagi, S., Mehta, M., & Singh, D. (2023). Time series (2001/2002–2021) analysis of Earth observation data using Google Earth Engine (GEE) for detecting changes in land use land cover (LULC) with specific reference to forest cover in the East Godavari region, Andhra Pradesh, India. Journal of Earth System Science, 132(2), 86. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-023-02099-w

Kaur, K., Sandhu, D., & Sra, M. K. (2025). Navigating the complex synthesis of environmental laws in India in the context of deteriorating forest cover in India. Lex Localis: Journal of Local Self-Government, 23(11). https://doi.org/10.52152/ht9br885

Khanday, I. N., Wani, I. U., & Tarique, M. (2023). Do financial development and institutional quality matter for ecological sustainability in the long run? Evidence from India. Management of Environmental Quality: An International Journal, 34(6), 1668–1689. https://doi.org/10.1108/MEQ-01-2023-0002

Kiesecker, J., Baruch-Mordo, S., Heiner, M., Negandhi, D., Oakleaf, J., Kennedy, C., & Chauhan, P. (2019). Renewable energy and land use in India: a vision to facilitate sustainable development. Sustainability, 12(1), 281. https://doi.org/10.3390/su12010281

Kumar, N., & George, J. (2021). Leveraging regional cooperation for achieving the SDGs in South Asia. SSWA Development Papers, 2102. https://doi.org/10.14741/ijmcr/v.9.3.6

Kumar, S., Bhardwaj, S., Singh, A., Singh, H. K., Singh, P., & Sharma, U. K. (2020). Environmental impact of coronavirus (COVID-19) and nationwide lockdown in India: an alarm to future lockdown strategies. https://doi.org/10.20944/preprints202005.0403.v1

Kumar, S., Singh, P., Verma, K., Kumar, P., & Yadav, A. (2022). Environmental issues and their possible solutions for sustainable development, India: a review. Current World Environment, 17(3), 531. http://dx.doi.org/10.12944/CWE.17.3.3

Liu, F., Ouedraogo, A., Manghee, S., & Danilenko, A. (2012). A primer on energy efficiency for municipal water and wastewater utilities. Washington, DC: World Bank. https://doi.org/10.1596/18060

Mahato, A., & Sharma, D. (2024). Quantitative evaluation of the water provisioning services of reservoirs in Chhattisgarh, India. In Modern River Science for Watershed Management: GIS and Hydrogeological Application (pp. 261–279). Cham: Springer Nature Switzerland. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-54704-1_14

Mahato, A., Upadhyay, S., & Sharma, D. (2022). Global water scarcity due to climate change and its conservation strategies with special reference to India: a review. Plant Archives, 22(1). https://doi.org/10.51470/PLANTARCHIVES.2022.v22.no1.009

Maitlo, G., Ali, I., Maitlo, H. A., Ali, S., Unar, I. N., Ahmad, M. B., … & Afridi, M. N. (2022). Plastic waste recycling, applications, and future prospects for a sustainable environment. Sustainability, 14(18), 11637. https://doi.org/10.3390/su141811637

Maitry, A., Dubey, P., Sharma, D., & Patil, G. (2024a). Restoring urban forest ecosystem: a case study from Wetland Biodiversity Park, Talpuri of Chhattisgarh. In Dynamics of Urban Forestry (pp. 91–103). White Falcon Publishing. ISBN 979-8-89222-182-5.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025a). Evaluating phytoremediation approaches for the restoration of degraded ecosystems in India. Nature Environment & Pollution Technology, 24(2). https://doi.org/10.46488/NEPT.2025.v24i02.B4262

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025b). Quantitative assessment of vegetation dynamics through species composition and diversity indices in restoring Nandini limestone mines, Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Bio-resource and Stress Management, 16(4), 1–11. https://doi.org/10.23910/1.2025.6035

Maitry, A., Patil, G., Dubey, P., & Ramesh. (2024b). Heavy metal stress management through phytoremediation to mitigate climate change impacts: an overview. International Journal of Environment and Climate Change, 14(4), 708–718. https://doi.org/10.9734/IJECC/2024/v14i44152

Maitry, A., Sharma, D., Shah, P., Baretha, G., Ramesh, & Patil, G. (2023). Assessment of wetland ecosystem services (RAWES approach) in an urban settlement area: a case study of Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. Indian Journal of Ecology, 50(4), 954–962. https://doi.org/10.55362/IJE/2023/3995

Mehta, A., Shukla, S., & Rakholia, S. (2022). Assessment of forest fragmentation in the greater Gir landscape area, Gujarat, using geospatial techniques. Journal of Geomatics, 16(2), 146–152. https://doi.org/10.58825/jog.2022.16.2.43

Milbank, C. (2023). Associating dietary quality and forest cover in India. Forest Policy and Economics, 156, 103055. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.forpol.2023.103055

Mishra, B. K., Roy, A., Veeranjaneyulu, V., Maity, A., Kumar, S., Sheet, A., & Dutta, D. (2024, August). A review of India's renewable energy transition: policies, achievements, and integration challenges. In 2024 10th International Conference on Electrical Energy Systems (ICEES) (pp. 1–7). IEEE. https://doi.org/10.1109/ICEES61253.2024.10776919

Mohanty, B. C. (2024). Opportunities of renewable energy financing in India. The Management Accountant, 26–30. https://doi.org/10.33516/maj.v59i6.26-30p

Mondal, B., Bauddh, K., Kumar, A., & Bordoloi, N. (2022). India's contribution to greenhouse gas emission from freshwater ecosystems: a comprehensive review. Water, 14(19), 2965. https://doi.org/10.3390/w14192965

Mondal, S. K., Su, B., Huang, J., Zhai, J., Wang, G., Kundzewicz, Z. W., … & Jiang, T. (2024). Climate change will aggravate South Asian cropland exposure to drought by the middle of the 21st century. Earth's Future, 12(5), e2023EF003872. https://doi.org/10.1029/2023EF003872

Murthy, I. K., & Kumar, P. (2019). Forest policies and programmes in India: implications for climate change adaptation. Open Journal of Forestry, 9(3), 226–240. https://doi.org/10.4236/ojf.2019.93012

Nomani, M. Z. M., Al-Farhad, M. M., & Mustafa, F. (2022). Extended producer responsibility and enforcement of single-use plastic ban in Pune city of India. https://doi.org/10.21203/rs.3.rs-2320976/v1

Parihar, D. S., Narang, M. K., Dogra, B., Prakash, A., & Mahadik, A. (2023). Rice residue burning in northern India: an assessment of environmental concerns and potential solutions — a review. Environmental Research Communications, 5(6), 062001. https://doi.org/10.1088/2515-7620/acb6d4

Patel, K. N., Patel, Y. B., & Nagababu, G. (2024, May). Exploring the potential of renewable energy to enable green hydrogen production for a sustainable future. In CONECT: International Scientific Conference of Environmental and Climate Technologies (pp. 75–75). https://doi.org/10.7250/CONECT.2024.052

Payal, S., Chun, C., & Pant, K. (2023). Examining the impact of green finance on carbon emissions in India through energy consumption optimization. Qeios, 4, 21929.

Phanisankar, B. S. S., Rao, N. V., & Manikanta, J. E. (2020). Conversion of waste plastic to fuel products. Materials Today: Proceedings, 33, 5190–5195. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.matpr.2020.02.880

Philip, A. (2024). Three decades of green: a comprehensive analysis of India's forest cover dynamics from 1990 to 2021 based on World Bank data. Ecology, Environment & Conservation, 30. https://doi.org/10.53550/EEC.2024.v30i06s.062

Quijandria, M. Á. M. (2023). Municipal waste management: challenges and perspectives from an environmental sustainability perspective. Environmental Research and Ecotoxicity, (2), 9. https://doi.org/10.56294/ere202360

Ramachandran, A., Radhapriya, P., Jayakumar, S., Dhanya, P., & Geetha, R. (2016). Critical analysis of forest degradation in the Southern Eastern Ghats of India: comparison of satellite imagery and soil quality index. PLoS ONE, 11(1), e0147541. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0147541

Rao, T. L. N., & Tandan, P. (2025). Effectiveness of carbon taxes on emission reduction and economic growth. International Journal of Science, Architecture, Technology, and Environment, 2(5), 1204–1228. https://doi.org/10.63680/ijsate052591.100

Rathore, H. S., Pati, J., Das, A., & Pandav, B. (2021). Population status and distribution of mugger crocodile Crocodylus palustris in the Similipal Tiger Reserve, Odisha, India. The Herpetological Bulletin, (156), 28–30. https://doi.org/10.33256/hb156.2830

Ritu, R. K., & Kaur, A. (2024). Towards environmental sustainability: nexus of ecological footprint, human capital, economic growth and energy consumption in India. Management of Environmental Quality: An International Journal, 35(1), 179–200. https://doi.org/10.1108/MEQ-06-2023-0172

Sanjay, J., Ramarao, M. V. S., Mahesh, R., Ingle, S., Singh, B. B., & Krishnan, R. (2020). Regional climate change datasets for South Asia. arXiv preprint arXiv:2012.10387. https://doi.org/10.48550/arXiv.2012.10387

Scafetta, N. (2024). Impacts and risks of "realistic" global warming projections for the 21st century. Geoscience Frontiers, 15(2), 101774. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gsf.2023.101774

Scott, D., Hall, C. M., Rushton, B., & Gössling, S. (2024). A review of the IPCC Sixth Assessment and implications for tourism development and sectoral climate action. Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 32(9), 1725–1742. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2023.2195597

Sengupta, A., Bhan, M., Bhatia, S., Joshi, A., Kuriakose, S., & Seshadri, K. S. (2024). Realizing "30 × 30" in India: the potential, the challenges, and the way forward. Conservation Letters, 17(2), e13004. https://doi.org/10.1111/conl.13004

Sharma, D., Patil, G., & Shah, P. (2022a). Impact of COVID-19 on domestic wastes after lockdown. Indian Journal of Ecology, 49(2), 353–357. https://doi.org/10.55362/IJE/2022/3528

Sharma, D., Patil, G., & Shah, P. (2022b). Provisioning services of forest ecosystem: a case study of southern Achanakmar Tiger Reserve, Central India. International Journal of Biosciences, 21(4), 1–10. http://dx.doi.org/10.12692/ijb/21.4.1-10

Shruti, S., Singh, P. K., & Ohri, A. (2020). Evaluating the environmental sustainability of smart cities in India: the design and application of the Indian Smart City Environmental Sustainability Index. Sustainability, 13(1), 327. https://doi.org/10.3390/su13010327

Singh, A., Winchester, N., & Karplus, V. J. (2019). Evaluating India's climate targets: the implications of economy-wide and sector-specific policies. Climate Change Economics, 10(3), 1950009. https://doi.org/10.1142/S201000781950009X

Singh, N., Tang, Y., & Ogunseitan, O. A. (2020). Environmentally sustainable management of used personal protective equipment. Environmental Science & Technology, 54(14), 8500–8502. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.est.0c03022

Sobha, P. (2022, January). Decarbonizing the Indian electricity grid. In International Conference on Electrical and Electronics Engineering (pp. 312–322). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-1742-4_26

Sobha, P., Muthusamypillai, A., & Xavier, M. (2023). Green transport and renewable power: an integrated analysis for India's future. International Journal of Sustainable Energy, 42(1), 1517–1537. https://doi.org/10.1080/14786451.2023.2285170

Talukder, A., Shahid, S., Rahman, S. H., Hwang, S., Thorp, K. R., Eshita, N. R., … & Kamruzzaman, M. (2025). Extreme precipitation risks in South Asia: future climate change impacts on population and cropland. International Journal of Climatology, 45(13), e70057. https://doi.org/10.1002/joc.70057

Unni, H., Rathi, R., Gupta, S. D., & Chakraborti, A. (2025). Analyzing the progress of Indian states chasing sustainable development goals using a complex network framework. Evolutionary and Institutional Economics Review, 1–14. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40844-025-00308-3

Usah, E. O., Ozuomba, S., Oduobuk, E. J., & Ekott, E. E. (2020). PVsyst software-based comparative techno-economic analysis of PV power plant for two installation sites with different climatic conditions. International Multilingual Journal of Science and Technology (IMJST), 5(7).

Vanapalli, K. R., Sharma, H. B., Ranjan, V. P., Samal, B., Bhattacharya, J., Dubey, B. K., & Goel, S. (2021). Challenges and strategies for effective plastic waste management during and post COVID-19 pandemic. Science of the Total Environment, 750, 141514. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2020.141514

VerKuilen, A., Sprouse, L., Beardsley, R., Lebu, S., Salzberg, A., & Manga, M. (2023). Effectiveness of the Swachh Bharat Mission and barriers to ending open defecation in India: a systematic review. Frontiers in Environmental Science, 11, 1141825. https://doi.org/10.3389/fenvs.2023.1141825

Vyas, R., & Vaghashiya, P. (2020). Death of mugger crocodiles Crocodylus palustris falling from small dams in Gujarat, India. The Herpetological Bulletin, 154, 20–22. https://doi.org/10.33256/hb154.2022

Wadud, M. (2022). Precariously employed climate journalists: the challenges of freelance climate journalists in South Asia. Journalism Practice, 16(2–3), 262–280. https://doi.org/10.1080/17512786.2021.1982402

Wang, Z., Meng, J., & Guan, D. (2020). Dynamic driving forces of India's emissions from production and consumption perspectives. Earth's Future, 8(8), e2020EF001485. https://doi.org/10.1029/2020EF001485

Yan, X., & Wang, J. (2022). The forest change footprint of the upper Indus valley, from 1990 to 2020. Remote Sensing, 14(3), 744. https://doi.org/10.3390/rs14030744

CHAPTER 5

Carbon Stock Assessment Methods in Forest and Plantation Ecosystems of India

Shishir Chandrakar[1*], Krishna K. Chandra[1], Bhavana Dixit[2], Animesh Shukla[1], Aishwarya Chandra[1]

[1]Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India – 495009

[2]Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India – 492001

*Corresponding Email: ccrforestry@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry
ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4
Suggested Citation: Chandrakar, S., Chandra, K. K., Dixit, B., Shukla, A., & Chandra, A. (2026). Carbon Stock Assessment Methods in Forest and Plantation Ecosystems of India. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 63-99). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Forest ecosystems function as vital carbon sinks, sequestering around 289 gigatons of carbon worldwide in their aboveground biomass. Precise measurement of carbon reserves in various biomass reservoirs is crucial for climate change mitigation approaches, carbon auditing, and forestry management methods. This thorough analysis consolidates existing methods for assessing total carbon reserves in forest and plantation ecosystems, encompassing both destructive and non-destructive approaches. The research includes five primary carbon reservoirs: aboveground biomass (AGB), belowground biomass (BGB), deceased wood, litter, and soil organic carbon (SOC). We provide an in-depth examination of allometric equations, biomass expansion factors (BEF), and xylometric calculation methodologies, focusing specifically on approaches utilised in Indian forest ecosystems (tropical, subtropical, and temperate forests) and bamboo plantations. Prominent estimating techniques encompass destructive sampling by tree felling and component-specific measurement, alongside non-destructive methods employing allometric models predicated on diameter at breast height (DBH) and tree height. Sophisticated methodologies such as airborne LiDAR, the integration of remote sensing, and machine learning algorithms are explored. Particular emphasis is placed on the work of Indian scientists, notably the investigations conducted by Sharma et al. (2010-2016) in the Garhwal Himalayan forests, Chaturvedi et al.'s research on dry deciduous forests, and studies on bamboo carbon. A comparison structure is introduced via an extensive table that consolidates estimating methodologies, mathematical equations, foundational concepts, and essential scientific citations. This assessment reveals that precise carbon stock estimation necessitates species-specific allometric equations that include DBH and wood density, together with meticulous stratification based on forest type and site quality. In Indian forests, total carbon stocks vary between 20.48 and 93.27 t ha^{-1}, while bamboo plantations capture 1-2.3 Mg ha^{-1} yr^{-1} in aboveground biomass. The amalgamation of field measurements with remote sensing data and machine learning epitomises the cutting-edge methodology for carbon quantification at the landscape scale. This synthesis offers a thorough reference framework for carbon stock evaluation in various forest types and plantation systems for practitioners, researchers, and policymakers.

Keywords: Aboveground biomass; Allometric equations; Below-ground biomass; Carbon pools; Forest carbon stocks; India; Non-destructive methods; Soil organic carbon; Xylometric methods.

1. Introduction

Forests represent one of the most substantial terrestrial carbon reserves on the planet, sequestering some 289 gigatonnes (Gt) of carbon worldwide (Malhi et al. 2002) in their biomass, along with nearly 44% found in soil organic matter. This significant carbon sequestration ability renders forest ecosystems essential elements in global climate change mitigation approaches. Their function has been extensively acknowledged within global structures like the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and the evaluation standards of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). In India, forest ecosystems are predicted to sequester between 6,663 million tonnes and 7,204 million tonnes of total forest carbon, with almost 56% contained in soil organic carbon reservoirs (Singh et al. 2025). These statistics highlight forests as not merely precious natural resources but also as crucial tools for attaining both national and international climate objectives.

The precise assessment of forest carbon reserves has thus emerged as a crucial scientific and policy necessity (Xu et al. 2025). Accurate carbon accounting is crucial for national greenhouse gas inventory submissions under the UNFCCC, engagement in international carbon trading frameworks like the Clean Development Mechanism (CDM) and REDD+ initiatives, development of sustainable forest management strategies, and enhancement of scientific knowledge regarding terrestrial carbon dynamics. The growing global focus on nature-based solutions has heightened the demand for standardised, transparent, and reproducible methods to measure carbon stocks in various forest ecosystems (Keith et al. 2021).

The IPCC methodological guidelines indicate that forest carbon is allocated among five primary pools: aboveground biomass, belowground biomass, dead wood, litter, and soil organic carbon. Aboveground biomass, encompassing all living woody and herbaceous plants, constitutes roughly 42% of total forest carbon, but belowground biomass—mainly root systems—typically represents 20–30% of aboveground biomass, contingent on species and environmental conditions (Ma et al. 2021). Decomposing wood and debris account for approximately 8% and 5% of overall forest carbon, respectively, indicating different levels of decomposition and organic matter cycling (Wijas et al. 2024). Soil organic carbon constitutes the predominant and most stable reservoir, comprising around 44% of the overall forest carbon and significantly influencing long-term carbon sequestration (Lal 2018; Maitry et al. 2025b).

India offers a notably significant geographical and ecological framework for forest carbon study owing to its diverse array of forest species and plantation systems. Tropical forests found in the Western Ghats, coastal areas, and northeastern India often sequester carbon amounts between 130 and 175 Mg C ha^{-1}, but subtropical forests in the sub-Himalayan region display moderate carbon reserves of 90 to 150 Mg C ha^{-1} (Kothandaraman et al. 2020). Temperate forests in the Himalayan area, situated at elevations beyond 1,500 m, exhibit significant fluctuations in carbon densities ranging from 59 to 245 Mg C ha^{-1}, contingent upon forest mix and site quality (Gangopadhyay 2023). Furthermore, the proliferation of plantation systems—such as teak, sal (Shorea robusta), and bamboo plantations—constitutes increasingly significant land-use classifications with substantial carbon sequestration capabilities. This review consolidates current methodologies for assessing total forest carbon stocks across five pools, including both destructive and non-destructive methods, allometric and xylometric models, sophisticated remote sensing and machine-learning techniques, as well as significant scientific contributions from India, to create a thorough reference framework for researchers and practitioners.

2. Methodology

2.1 Literature Search Strategy

This systematic review was performed according to the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses (PRISMA) standards to ensure transparency, reproducibility, and thorough coverage of the literature. A systematic search was carried out in several worldwide scientific databases, including Scopus, Web of Science, Google Scholar and selected institutional repositories (Maitry et al. 2025a). The search strategy employed a combination of keywords and Boolean operators to capture a wide spectrum of studies related to forest carbon estimation. Core search terms included "carbon stock estimation forest," "allometric equations biomass," "xylometric methods," "forest carbon India," "bamboo carbon sequestration," "destructive and non-destructive sampling methods," and "deadwood carbon measurement," along with relevant synonyms and variations. Reference lists of key publications were also manually screened to identify additional relevant studies not captured during the initial database search.

2.2 Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria

Research was chosen according to established inclusion and exclusion parameters to uphold methodological integrity and thematic significance. The included papers consisted of peer-reviewed journal articles from esteemed international publishers like Springer, Elsevier, and acknowledged scientific libraries. Studies that qualify specifically focused on approaches for estimating carbon stocks and provided primary data from fieldwork or laboratory analyses regarding biomass or carbon metrics in forest and plantation ecosystems. Particular focus was directed towards research undertaken in Indian forests, plantations, and bamboo-centric systems, with publication dates limited to 2007 and later to conform to the methodological framework established by the post-IPCC 2006 Guidelines. Furthermore, research that incorporates several forest carbon reservoirs or outlines comprehensive methodological strategies was given precedence. In contrast, the review excluded grey literature, non-peer-reviewed documents, studies that exclusively examine non-carbon ecosystem services, publications that discuss carbon fluxes without quantitative stock assessments, articles that do not provide adequate methodological detail, and duplicate or redundant datasets.

2.3 Data Extraction and Synthesis

Essential details from each chosen study were methodically gathered and arranged into uniform data matrices to enable comparison examination. The extracted variables encompassed the carbon estimation technique utilised, mathematical formulas and computational methods, foundational scientific concepts, relevance across various forest types and ecological contexts, reported accuracy measures, and noted methodological constraints. Supplementary details including significant scientific contributions, geographical coordinates, forest classification, and publication metadata were likewise documented. The compiled data were further categorised to discern methodological commonalities, differences, strengths, and deficiencies across various estimating techniques. This organised synthesis facilitated an extensive comparison of both destructive and non-destructive methodologies and aided in the formulation of a cohesive comprehension of forest carbon evaluation strategies.

2.4 Classification Framework

To guarantee systematic analysis, all examined approaches were structured inside a hierarchical classification system. At the foundational level, methodologies were divided into destructive approaches, which entail direct biomass assessment via tree felling, and non-destructive approaches, which infer biomass indirectly through allometric correlations and biometric metrics. Secondary classification distinguished methodologies according to the scale of implementation and the origin of data, encompassing field-based techniques that depend on ground inventory and sampling, remote sensing methods that leverage optical and radar imagery, and sophisticated computational strategies that integrate machine learning and deep learning algorithms. At the tertiary stage, techniques were additionally categorised based on the particular forest carbon pools involved, specifically aboveground biomass, belowground biomass, dead wood, litter biomass, and soil organic carbon. This hierarchical approach established a systematic foundation for assessing methodological relevance, precision, and appropriateness across various forest categories and plantation models.

3. Carbon Stock Estimation Techniques

3.1 Destructive Sampling Methods

Destructive sampling is considered the simplest yet precise way for measuring forest biomass and is commonly viewed as the standard strategy for producing ground-truth data essential for calibrating and validating indirect biomass estimation methods (Seidel et al. 2011). This methodology entails the thorough collection of designated sample trees, succeeded by meticulous assessment of both fresh and oven-dry weights of all biomass constituents (Huynh, et al. 2021). Sample trees are often chosen from different diameter categories using systematic or stratified random sampling, with standard guidelines suggesting 5–10 trees for each 10-cm diameter at breast height (DBH) category and a minimum overall sample size of 30–50 trees. Arboricultural practices dictate that trees are cut at a uniform height of around 50 cm above the soil surface to maintain uniformity in research (Picard et al. 2012; Chave et al. 2009). Subsequent to the logging process, each tree is divided into several elements such as trunk wood, bark, limbs, leaves, sawdust, and root structures. The fresh weights of all elements are promptly recorded in the field utilising calibrated weighing devices. Representative subsamples are gathered from various stem elevations, crown locations, foliage strata, and dug-up root systems, and then conveyed to the laboratory for examination. Oven-drying occurs at 105°C until a stable weight is reached, generally within 48–72 hours, whereas leaf samples are dried at 70°C to avert the deterioration of nitrogenous substances. Oven-dry weights are measured with great accuracy, and the dry matter content is determined. Wood density is ascertained through the water displacement technique, adhering to Archimedes' principle, where basic density is derived from the ratio of oven-dry mass to water-saturated volume; species-specific wood density typically varies from 0.40 to 0.85 g cm^{-3}, influenced by species properties and environmental conditions (Yang et al. 2022).

Despite its higher precision, destructive sampling has both methodological benefits and significant drawbacks. The chief advantage of this technique is its straightforward assessment of biomass, which depends little on assumptions, resulting in accuracy rates generally within ±5–10% when conducted correctly (Seidel et al. 2011). It facilitates comprehensive biomass estimation at the component level, accurately reflects the variability in wood density and biomass distribution, and supplies crucial baseline information for the formulation and verification of allometric equations. Destructive sampling entails significant limitations, such as elevated labour and operational expenses, which can vary from ₹2,000 to 5,000 per tree in Indian agricultural contexts, along with prolonged time demands of roughly two to three weeks for each research location. Its intrinsically harmful characteristics constrain sample size and spatial extent, hinder repeated assessments for prolonged observation, and provide logistical challenges in isolated or rough landscapes. Moreover, acquiring harvesting permissions in protected or conservation forests frequently proves difficult, rendering extensive implementation unfeasible. As a result, although destructive sampling is the most dependable reference technique for estimating forest biomass, its application is typically limited to calibration research and methodological validation instead of regular carbon stock assessment.

3.1.1 Mathematical Framework for Destructive Method Calculations

Total tree aboveground biomass (AGB_tree): $AGB_{tree} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i$

where Wi represents oven-dry weight of component i (stem, bark, branches, foliage)

Root biomass (BGB_tree): $BGB_{tree} = W_{coarse\_roots} + W_{fine\_roots} + W_{rootball}$

typically measured up to 1.0 m soil depth or by excavation

Total tree biomass (TB_tree): $TB_{tree} = AGB_{tree} + BGB_{tree}$

Plot-level biomass: $Biomass_{plot} = \sum_{j=1}^{m} T\,B_j$

where m = number of trees per plot

Plot-level carbon stock: $C_{plot} = Biomass_{plot} \times CF_{wood}$

where CFwood = 0.46-0.49 depending on tree DBH class and species

3.2 Non-Destructive Methods: Allometric Equation Approaches

3.2.1 Principles of Allometric Relationships

Allometric equations are mathematical models that estimate tree biomass based on readily quantifiable dendrometric characteristics like diameter at breast height (DBH) and overall height. The theoretical foundation is grounded in essential scaling correlations between tree dimensions and biomass distribution, adhering to power-law patterns across many species and environmental contexts (table-1).

The most widely used allometric equation form is: $AGB = a \times DBH^b$

or in log-transformed form: $\ln(AGB) = \ln(a) + b \times \ln(DBH)$

where:

- AGB = aboveground biomass (kg)
- DBH = diameter at breast height (cm)
- a, b = species-specific or generic parameters estimated through regression analysis
- ln = natural logarithm

3.2.2 Equation Forms and Predictive Variables

Contemporary research demonstrates that equation accuracy improves substantially when incorporating additional predictive variables beyond DBH alone (Baker et al. 2004; Feldpausch et al. 2012).

Model 1: DBH-only model (Tier 1)

$$AGB = a \times DBH^b$$

- Accuracy: R^2 = 0.85-0.92
- RMSE: typically 20-40% of mean values
- Advantages: Simplicity, requires only one measurement
- Disadvantages: Highest errors, ignores height heterogeneity

Model 2: DBH and height model (Tier 2)

$$AGB = a \times (DBH^2 \times H)^b$$

where H = total tree height (m)

- Accuracy: R^2 = 0.92-0.97
- RMSE: typically 12-25% of mean values
- Advantages: Improved accuracy, captures allometric variation
- Disadvantages: Requires height measurement (difficult in dense forests)

Model 3: DBH, height, and wood density model (Tier 3)

$$AGB = a \times (\rho \times DBH^2 \times H)^b$$

where ρ = wood specific gravity (g cm^{-3})

- Accuracy: R^2 = 0.96-0.99
- RMSE: typically 5-15% of mean values
- Advantages: Highest accuracy, captures species-specific variation
- Disadvantages: Requires species identification and wood density data

Model 4: Component-specific additive system

$$AGB_{stem} = a_1 \times (DBH^2 \times H)^{b_1}$$
$$AGB_{branches} = a_2 \times (DBH^2 \times H)^{b_2}$$
$$AGB_{foliage} = a_3 \times (DBH^2 \times H)^{b_3}$$
$$AGB_{total} = AGB_{stem} + AGB_{branches} + AGB_{foliage}$$

3.2.3 Biomass Expansion Factor (BEF) Methodology

The Biomass Expansion Factor (BEF) approach, recommended by IPCC for Tier 1 methodologies, converts commercial stem volume into total aboveground biomass by accounting for branches, foliage, and stumps not typically included in commercial inventory data.

BEF calculation sequence:

Step 1: Convert volume to stem biomass

$$Stem\_Biomass = V_{stem} \times WD_{basic}$$

where:

- Vstem = stem volume (m^3) from commercial volume tables
- WDbasic = basic wood density (t m^{-3})

Step 2: Apply Biomass Expansion Factor

$$AGB = Stem\_Biomass \times BEF$$

Step 3: Expand to total biomass using root-to-shoot ratio

$$Total\_Biomass = AGB \times (1 + R/S)$$

where R/S = root-to-shoot ratio (typically 0.20-0.25 for tropical forests)

Standard IPCC BEF values:

- Tropical evergreen: BEF = 1.43-1.68
- Tropical deciduous: BEF = 1.35-1.50
- Subtropical forests: BEF = 1.30-1.45

- Temperate coniferous: BEF = 1.25-1.40
- Temperate broadleaf: BEF = 1.20-1.30

3.2.4 Estimation Error and Uncertainty

All allometric equation-based estimates carry inherent uncertainty arising from multiple sources:

Total uncertainty = √(εequation + εmeasurement + εmodel + εconversion)

where:

- εequation = residual error of regression model
- εmeasurement = field measurement error (typically ±5% for DBH, ±10% for height)
- εmodel = structural uncertainty from model form selection
- εconversion = carbon fraction and BGB expansion errors

3.3 Belowground Biomass (BGB) Estimation

3.3.1 Approaches to Root Biomass Quantification

Accurate belowground carbon estimation presents particular challenges due to the difficulty of directly measuring root systems. Three primary approaches are employed (Hui et al. 2004; Cairns et al. 1997):

Approach 1: Allometric equations from DBH

$$BGB = c \times DBH^d$$

Example: BGB = 0.26 × DBH^0.97 (Chave et al. for tropical forests)

- Advantages: Direct estimation, accounts for site-specific variations
- Disadvantages: Requires calibration data from destructive sampling

Approach 2: Root-to-shoot ratio method

$$BGB = AGB \times (R/S)$$

Recommended values:

- Tropical forests: 0.15-0.25
- Subtropical forests: 0.20-0.30
- Temperate forests: 0.25-0.35
- Plantations: 0.10-0.22

- Advantages: Simple calculation, widely applicable
- Disadvantages: High variability, ignores site-specific growth patterns, may overestimate in water-limited environments

Approach 3: IPCC allometric equation for root expansion

where a, b are species and climate-specific parameters

3.3.2 Destructive Root Sampling Protocol

For studies requiring precise BGB quantification:

3.3.2.1 Root system excavation: Entire rootball excavated to 1.0-1.5 m depth using mechanical excavator

3.3.2.2 Root categorization:

- Coarse roots (>2 mm diameter): sorted and weighed
- Fine roots (2 mm to 0.1 mm): collected through fine sieving

3.3.2.3 Root subdivision:

- Rootball excavation: lateral area extending 1.5 m from stump
- Medium roots (>2 mm): individually processed
- Fine roots: subsample collection and compositing

3.3.2.4 Weight measurement: Fresh weight immediately recorded, subsamples oven-dried at 105°C.

3.3.2.5 Verification: Root-to-shoot ratio validated against published values for species and site type

3.4 Dead Wood Carbon Estimation

3.4.1 Standing Dead Wood Assessment

Standing dead wood indicates trees that are deceased yet still vertical, maintaining enough structural soundness to for the assessment of their dimensional characteristics. The assessment of standing dead wood biomass adheres to standardised procedures that include the level of decomposition and the structural integrity of the tree. Initially, deceased trees are recognised and categorised into stages of decay, often encompassing trees that maintain large branches (decay class 1), trees that have shed smaller branches under 10 cm in diameter (decay class 2), and those that are significantly degraded. For trees classified as decay class 1, a biomass reduction coefficient of 0.975 is utilised, whereas decay class 2 trees are modified with a reduction coefficient of 0.802. For significantly disintegrated standing trees, biomass is assessed via direct volumetric measurement instead of reduction factors. Biomass estimation for decay classes 1 and 2 is calculated by multiplying the original aboveground biomass of the tree by the respective reduction factor (Woodall et al. 2011; Palace et al. 2008), expressed as

$$DW_{standing} = AGB_{original} \times RF$$

where RF represents the decay-class-specific biomass reduction factor. For heavily decomposed wood, biomass is derived using the relationship

$$DW = V_{measured} \times WD_{adjusted}$$

in which Vmeasured denotes the volume calculated from actual tree dimensions and WDadjusted represents wood density corrected for decay status, typically ranging from 30% to 70% of the original species-specific density (Orozco-Aguilar et al. 2018). The per-hectare standing dead wood carbon stock is subsequently computed by summing individual tree biomass values and applying the wood carbon fraction, expressed as

$$DWC_{standing} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (AGB_i \times RF_i \times CF_{wood})$$

where AGB_i is the aboveground biomass of the ith tree, RF_i is the corresponding reduction factor, and CFwood represents the carbon fraction of woody biomass.

3.4.2 Lying Dead Wood Assessment

The evaluation of lying dead wood biomass was conducted utilising the line intercept sampling technique, as endorsed by established Clean Development Mechanism (CDM) and Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) guidelines. In this methodology, linear transects of predetermined lengths, generally between 100 and 200 m, are systematically or randomly set within the research region to guarantee representative sampling. At specified intervals along each transect, typically every 10 meters, perpendicular measuring tapes of around 20 to 30 meters are positioned across the transect line (Rondeux & Sanchez 2010). Any falling woody material that crosses the measuring tape and possesses a minimum diameter exceeding 10 cm is noted and documented. Measurements for each intersecting log encompass the diameter at the intersection site, categorisation into decay classes from 1 (fresh wood) to 5 (fully degraded material), and species identification when feasible. These field measurements yield the essential data necessary for calculating the volume of lying dead wood, biomass, and related carbon reserves under standardised forest carbon accounting systems.

Calculation of lying dead wood biomass:

$$DWC_{lying} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{(\pi/4) \times d_i^2 \times \rho_{decay\_class_i} \times L_{transect}}{L_{sampled}}$$

where:

- di = diameter of log i at intersection
- ρdecay class = wood density for respective decay class
- Ltransect = total transect length sampled
- Lsampled = length of measuring tapes deployed

- Decay class-specific wood density adjustments:
- Decay class 1 (fresh): 90-100% of original density
- Decay class 2 (intermediate): 60-90% of original density

- Decay class 3 (advanced): 30-60% of original density
- Decay class 4-5 (highly decomposed): 5-30% of original density

3.4.3 Stumps and Coarse Woody Debris

Stump measurement:

$$DW_{stump} = V_{stump} \times WD_{basic} \times CF_{wood}$$

where Vstump calculated using frustum formula for remaining stump volume

Coarse branches on living trees:

- Measured for trees with DBH <10 cm separately
- Branch carbon typically 20-30% of stem carbon
- Estimated using component ratio methods or destructive sampling

3.5 Litter Biomass Assessment

3.5.1 Litter Layer Definition and Sampling

Forest litter consists of distinct organic horizons that reflect progressive stages of decomposition. The surface OL horizon comprises freshly fallen leaves, twigs, and reproductive structures, while the underlying OF horizon contains partially decomposed organic material with recognizable plant tissues. The deepest OH horizon represents highly humified organic matter with advanced decomposition (O'Donnell et al. 2016). Litter sampling was conducted following a systematic spatial design, with four to five litter collection points established within each sample plot. A standard plot size of 100 m² (10 m × 10 m) was used, within which litter was collected using square quadrats measuring 0.25 m² (0.5 m × 0.5 m) (Scott 1976). At each sampling location, all litter material was carefully collected down to the mineral soil layer using a standardized depth guide to ensure consistency. Fresh litter, partially decomposed material, and humus layers were separated in the field, and all organic debris including fine branches with diameters less than 2 cm was included. In the laboratory, fresh weights were recorded prior to oven-drying at 70°C for 48–72 hours, a temperature selected to prevent excessive moisture loss and degradation of organic compounds (Isaac & Nair 2005). After drying, litter samples were sorted into major components including leaf litter, twig and small branch litter (2–10 cm diameter), fruits and seeds, animal faecal material, and fungal structures, and component-wise dry weights were measured for subsequent analysis.

3.5.2 Litter Carbon Stock Calculation

Plot-level litter carbon:

$$LC_{plot} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} LW_i}{A_{quadrat}} \times A_{plot} \times CF_{litter}$$

where:

- LWi = litter dry weight from quadrat i
- Aquadrat = area of collection quadrat (typically 0.25 m²)
- Aplot = total plot area (typically 1,000 m² = 0.1 ha)
- CF_litter = carbon fraction (typically 0.45-0.50 for temperate, 0.48-0.52 for tropical litter)

Based on reported literature values, litter carbon stocks exhibit substantial variation across forest types, with tropical evergreen forests typically storing 8–15 t C ha^{-1}, tropical deciduous forests 3–8 t C ha^{-1}, subtropical forests 4–10 t C ha^{-1}, temperate coniferous forests 5–12 t C ha^{-1}, and temperate broadleaf forests 6–14 t C ha^{-1} (Ameray et al. 2021; Chen et al. 2005). These estimates highlight the important contribution of litter biomass to total forest carbon pools and its role in nutrient cycling and soil organic carbon formation.

3.6 Soil Organic Carbon (SOC) Assessment

3.6.1 Soil Sampling and Laboratory Analysis Methodology

Soil sampling was conducted following the National Forest Inventory (NFI) India standard protocol to ensure consistency and national-level comparability (Tewari 2016). Within each sample plot, four soil pits were established at the cardinal directions approximately 21 m from the plot centre. Soil pits were excavated to a standard depth of 60 cm, with deeper sampling extended up to 100 cm in selected locations to support comprehensive soil carbon assessments. In addition to pit excavation, soil cores were collected using coring tubes of 100 mm length and 37–40 mm internal diameter to enable accurate volume-based measurements (Vadeboncoeur et al. 2012). Soil samples were stratified by depth into four distinct layers, namely 0–10 cm representing the organic-rich A horizon, 10–20 cm as a transitional zone, 20–30 cm corresponding to mineral soil with declining organic matter, and 30–60 cm representing subsoil layers. For each depth interval, subsamples from the four cardinal directions were composited on a volume basis to obtain representative samples. Visible roots and coarse organic fragments were removed prior to laboratory processing to avoid overestimation of soil organic carbon.

In the laboratory, soil samples were oven-dried at 105°C until constant weight was achieved and subsequently sieved through a 2 mm mesh to separate fine earth fractions from coarse materials such as stones and gravel (Wilke 2005). Soil bulk density was calculated as the ratio of oven-dry soil mass to the known sample volume (Blake 1965). Organic carbon concentration was determined using standard analytical techniques depending on the required precision and available instrumentation. The wet combustion method (Walkley–Black) involved digestion of soil samples with potassium dichromate and sulfuric acid followed by back-titration with ferrous sulfate (Walkley & Black 1934), with applicability in the organic carbon range of 0.4–10% and the use of a correction factor of 1.33 to compensate for incomplete oxidation (Benbi 2018). High-precision analysis was performed using CHNS elemental analyzers, which quantify carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen, and sulfur simultaneously through direct combustion at approximately 950°C and provide accuracy up to ±0.05% carbon (Chaoyi et al. 2025). For rapid screening purposes, the loss-on-ignition method was also employed, wherein samples were heated at 400–500°C for four hours and mass loss was used as a proxy for organic carbon content, although this method offers comparatively lower accuracy.

3.6.2 SOC Stock Calculation

SOC per soil layer:

$$SOC_{layer} = BD \times OC\% \times Depth$$

where:

- BD = bulk density of soil (g cm^{-3})
- OC% = organic carbon percentage
- Depth = thickness of soil layer (cm)

Total SOC stock to 30 cm:

$$SOC_{total(0-30cm)} = \sum_{i=1}^{3} (B\,D_i \times OC\%_i \times 10)$$

Stoniness adjustment:

$$SOC_{adjusted} = SOC_{total} \times (1 - \frac{Stone\%}{100})$$

Plot-level SOC stocks within the 0–30 cm soil profile exhibited considerable variation among forest ecosystems, typically ranging from 40 to 107 Mg C ha^{-1} across Indian forests (Ahirwal et al. 2021). Higher values of 50–177 Mg C ha^{-1} have been reported for temperate Himalayan forests, while tropical evergreen forests generally contain 45–95 Mg C ha^{-1} and tropical deciduous forests exhibit comparatively lower SOC stocks ranging from 25 to 60 Mg C ha^{-1} (Gangopadhyay 2023). These variations reflect differences in climate, vegetation type, litter input, soil texture, and long-term land-use history, emphasizing the importance of soil carbon as the dominant and most stable forest carbon pool.

3.7 Herbaceous Vegetation and Shrub Carbon

Herbaceous vegetation and shrubs generally contribute less than 5% of total forest carbon; however, their assessment remains essential for complete and accurate forest carbon accounting, particularly in degraded forests, open woodlands, and early successional ecosystems where understory biomass can be relatively substantial. Herbaceous vegetation, defined as non-woody plants with height less than 2 m excluding tree seedlings, was sampled using a systematic subplot-based approach. Within each main plot, two to four subplots measuring either 2 m × 2 m or 4 m × 4 m were established and positioned to represent spatial heterogeneity (Walker et al. 2012). The total herbaceous sampling area typically ranged from 8 to 16 m^2 within a standard 1,000 m^2 forest plot (Higgins et al. 1996). All herbaceous material within each subplot was destructively harvested by clipping at ground level and immediately weighed to determine fresh biomass. Representative subsamples were then oven-dried at 70°C until constant weight was achieved to estimate dry matter content. Herbaceous carbon stock at the plot level was calculated using the expression

$$HC_{plot} = \frac{\sum HB_i}{A_{subplot}} \times A_{plot} \times CF$$

where HB_i represents herbaceous biomass obtained from the ith subplot, Asubplot is the total sampled subplot area, Aplot denotes the main plot area, and CF is the biomass carbon fraction, typically ranging between 0.45 and 0.48.

Shrub vegetation, generally defined as woody plants with heights between 2 and 5 m and stem diameters below 10 cm DBH, was assessed using non-destructive measurement techniques (Louhaichi et al. 2018). Shrubs were inventoried within four to eight subplots per plot, where species identity, stem diameter, and total height were recorded following protocols similar to those used for tree measurements (Montes et al. 2000). Species-specific or functional-group-based wood density values were assigned where available. Shrub biomass was estimated using established allometric equations expressed as

$$SB = a \times DBH^b + c \times Height$$

where a, b, and c represent shrub-specific coefficients, typically characterized by lower exponent values than those used for tree allometric models. Estimated shrub biomass was subsequently converted to carbon stock using appropriate carbon fractions. Reported shrub carbon stocks generally range from 0.5 to 3.5 Mg C ha^{-1}, with higher values commonly observed in degraded forests and open-canopy systems due to increased light availability, and comparatively lower values in dense, closed-canopy forests where understory growth is suppressed (Ensslin et al. 2015).

3.8 Remote Sensing and Advanced Technology Integration

3.8.1 Optical Remote Sensing Approaches

Optical remote sensing techniques are widely applied for large-scale forest biomass estimation due to their extensive spatial coverage and long-term data availability (Abbas et al. 2020). Vegetation indices derived from multispectral satellite imagery exhibit strong relationships with canopy structure, greenness, and photosynthetic activity, which serve as indirect indicators of aboveground biomass (Gamon et al. 1995). Among these indices, the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) is the most commonly used and is expressed as

$$NDVI = (NIR - RED) / (NIR + RED),$$

where NIR and RED represent near-infrared and red reflectance, respectively. Aboveground biomass is often estimated using linear regression models of the form AGB = a + b × NDVI, with reported coefficients of determination (R^2) ranging from 0.30 to 0.70 depending on forest type, canopy density, and phenological conditions. NDVI performs well in open and moderately dense forests but shows reduced sensitivity in closed-canopy forests due to spectral saturation at high biomass levels (Ahmad et al. 2021).

To overcome these limitations, the Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI) has been developed and is calculated as

$$EVI = 2.5 \times \frac{(NIR - RED)}{(NIR + 6 \times RED - 7.5 \times BLUE) + 1}$$

EVI provides improved performance in high-biomass forests by minimizing atmospheric interference and soil background effects, with reported R^2 values between 0.40 and 0.75 (Cao et al. 2025). The Soil-Adjusted Vegetation Index (SAVI), defined as SAVI = (1.5 × (NIR − RED)) / (NIR + RED + 0.5), further reduces soil reflectance influence and is particularly effective in sparsely vegetated landscapes, degraded forests, and open woodlands (Zhen et al. 2021). Commonly used satellite platforms for optical-based biomass estimation include Sentinel-2 with 10 m spatial resolution and 5–10 day revisit frequency, Landsat-8/9 with 30 m resolution and 16-day revisit cycles, SPOT-7 with 6 m resolution, and the Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer (MODIS) for regional to national-scale assessments (Kim et al. 2024).

3.8.2 LiDAR Technology

Light Detection and Ranging (LiDAR) technology has emerged as one of the most accurate tools for forest biomass estimation due to its ability to directly capture three-dimensional forest structure. Both airborne laser scanning (ALS) and ground-based or backpack LiDAR systems operate as active sensors emitting laser pulses, typically at a wavelength of 1,064 nm, and recording the return time from multiple canopy layers (Panda et al. 2024). This process generates dense point clouds comprising millions of points per hectare, enabling detailed representation of vertical vegetation structure. Canopy Height Models (CHMs) are derived by subtracting ground elevation obtained from last-return signals from first-return canopy elevations. LiDAR data facilitate estimation of key forest attributes such as canopy height, stem density, and diameter at breast height (DBH) using voxel-based and structural modeling approaches (Parent 2014). Reported accuracies for DBH estimation range from 0.53 to 0.79 cm root mean square error (RMSE) for backpack LiDAR systems and approximately 1–3 cm RMSE for airborne platforms (Xie et al. 2020). Aboveground biomass is commonly modeled using multivariate regression equations expressed as

$$AGB = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 \times CHMmean + \alpha_2 \times CHMsd + \alpha_3 \times DBHLiDAR,$$

where *CHMmean* represents mean canopy height, *CHMsd* denotes height variability, and *DBHLiDAR* is LiDAR-derived stem diameter. LiDAR offers several advantages including non-destructive measurement, rapid data acquisition, direct quantification of forest structure, and reduced dependency on extensive ground sampling. However, its application is constrained by high acquisition and processing costs, typically ranging from ₹50,000 to ₹200,000 per 100 km², requirements for skilled technical expertise, weather dependency during data collection, and computationally intensive data processing workflows.

3.8.3 Machine Learning Integration

Recent developments in forest carbon evaluation are progressively incorporating field inventory information alongside remotely sensed data via machine learning techniques to facilitate spatially explicit, landscape-scale carbon mapping. Random Forest regression is one of the most commonly employed methodologies, using collections of decision trees trained on terrestrial biomass data. Input variables generally encompass vegetation indices like NDVI, EVI, and SAVI, in addition to topographic factors such as elevation, slope, and aspect, along with climate elements (Vali et al. 2020). Random Forest models provide robust predictive capabilities, with plot-level coefficients of determination often falling between 0.70 and 0.85. Gradient boosting methodologies like Extreme Gradient Boosting (XG Boost) and Light Gradient Boosting Machine (Light GBM) have significantly improved the precision of biomass predictions through the integration of regularisation methods and adept management of imbalanced datasets, yielding R^2 values ranging from 0.77 to 0.80 (Li et al. 2025). Deep learning techniques, especially convolutional neural networks (CNNs) like Residual Neural Networks (Res Net), have demonstrated exceptional proficiency in identifying intricate non-linear associations between spectral signals and forest architecture. Research utilising deep learning on high-resolution satellite images has indicated R^2 values ranging from 0.80 to 0.85 for estimating aboveground biomass; yet, these methodologies necessitate extensive training datasets, generally surpassing 100 field plots, and entail significant processing requirements. The amalgamation of remote sensing, LiDAR, and machine learning constitutes a formidable next-generation paradigm for precise, scalable, and economical evaluation of forest carbon reserves.

4. Comparative Framework: Carbon Stock Estimation Techniques

4.1 Comprehensive Comparison Table

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
DESTRUCTIVE METHODS									
Tree felling & direct weighing (Gold Standard)	AGB_tree = ∑W_i; BGB = W_roots; TB = AGB + BGB; C = TB × CF_wood	Fresh weight, Oven-dry weight, Component-wise measurement	Direct measurement of all biomass components through mechanical analysis	0.98-0.99	2,500-5,000	2-3 weeks per site	Labor-intensive; destructive; limited spatial coverage; logistical constraints in protected areas	Allometric equation calibration; validation studies; plantation management	Chaturvedi et al. (2015, 2017); Kaushal et al. (2016)
Component ratio method (CRM)	AGB_component = AGB_stem × ratio_component; ∑all ratios to estimate total	Stem biomass, Component ratios, Tree dimensions	Establishes proportional relationships between stem biomass and branch/foliage biomass	0.94-0.97	1,500-3,000	10-14 days	Requires calibration data; variable component ratios across species	Inventory validation; growth model parameterization	Huang et al. 2018
Smalian's formula (volume estimation)	$V = (\pi/4) \times [(D_1+D_2)/2]^2 \times L$; Biomass = V × WD × (1 + BEF)	Diameter measurements at section ends, Section length, Wood density	Mathematical approximation of truncated cone volume from diameter and length measurements	0.92-0.96	800-1,500	5-8 days	Underestimates taper; requires multiple diameter measurements; accuracy varies with cone shape	Commercial volume estimation; large tree assessment	Miguel et al. 2018

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Root excavation method	BGB = W_coarse_roots + W_fine_roots + W_rootball; typically to 1.0 m depth	Fresh and dry weight of root components, Rootball volume, Root categorization by size	Complete removal and weighing of root system to standardized depth	0.95-0.98	3,000-6,000	14-21 days	Highly destructive to soil; expensive machinery required; incomplete extraction of fine roots; depth standardization variable	Belowground biomass studies; tropical plantation research; Eucalyptus productivity studies	Ray et al. (2024) Sunderban; standard protocol in plantation research
NON-DESTRUCTIVE ALLOMETRIC APPROACHES									
Tier 1 DBH-only model	AGB = a × DBH^b (Pan-tropical generic: a=0.0673, b=2.46 for DBH<10cm)	Diameter at breast height (DBH)	Allometric scaling based on universal power-law relationships between tree size and biomass	0.85-0.92	100-300	1-2 days	Highest estimation error; ignores height variation; inappropriate for mixed-age forests	Rapid forest inventories; large-scale regional assessments; REDD+ baseline mapping	Chave et al. (2005); generic equations widely used in India
Tier 2 DBH + Height model	AGB = a × (DBH² × H)^b; species-specific: varies by forest type	Diameter at breast height, Total tree height, Species	Integration of height as proxy for environmental stress and site quality; better captures allometric variation	0.92-0.97	300-600	2-4 days	Height measurement difficult in dense forests; requires hypsometer; standardization of height measurement challenging	Indian forest inventory; plantation management; carbon accounting (IPCC Tier 2)	Sharma et al. (2010) Garhwal; National Forest Inventory India
Tier 3 DBH + Height + Wood Density	AGB = a × (ρ × DBH² × H)^b; ρ varies 0.30-0.90 g/cm³ by species	DBH, Height, Wood specific gravity (ρ), Species	Incorporation of wood density captures species-specific variation in biomass allocation; highest information content	0.96-0.99	800-1,500	3-5 days	Requires species identification; wood density data collection needed; regional variation in ρ	High-precision carbon accounting; research studies; IPCC Tier 3 applications	Djomo et al. (2010); species-specific studies in Western Ghats

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Biomass Expansion Factor (BEF) Method	AGB = V_stem × WD × BEF; BEF_tropical=1.43-1.68, temperate=1.25-1.40	Commercial stem volume, Wood density, BEF species/climate-specific	Conversion factor approach linking commercial inventory data to total aboveground biomass; accounts for non-merchantable components	0.88-0.94	200-500	1-2 days	BEF variability; less accurate for small trees; limited applicability to non-inventory-based assessments	National forest inventories; CDM project baseline; IPCC Tier 1 methodology	IPCC (2006, 2019); FSI India reports
Generalized Allometric Equations	Regional equation: AGB = 0.0821 × $(DBH^2H)^{0.8713}$ for tropical forests; varies by region	Regional DBH × H data, Climatic classification, Forest type	Empirically derived equations from large datasets across geographic regions; captures regional variation	0.89-0.95	150-400	1-3 days	Regional variability; potentially inappropriate outside calibration range; climate-dependent performance	Regional carbon assessments; REDD+ standardized approaches; state-level inventories	Russell et al. Validated across Asian tropics, Africa, Americas
Species-specific equations	Forest-type-specific: Sal forest (Shorea robusta): AGB = $0.0843(DBH^2H)^{0.8506}$; varies for each species	Species, DBH, Height	Species-specific parameterization captures variation in wood properties, growth patterns, biomass allocation	0.93-0.98	400-1,000	2-4 days	Equation not available for all species; requires complete species identification; equations transferability questionable	Plantation management; commercial timber species; biodiversity-carbon studies	Ramachandra& Bharath 2019; Chaturvedi on sal; regional plantation studies
BIOMASS POOL-SPECIFIC APPROACHES									
Below-ground Biomass (BGB) from allometric equations	BGB = c × DBH^d; tropical: c=0.0643, d=0.8798 (alternative: BGB = AGB × R/S ratio of 0.15-0.30)	DBH, AGB, Root-to-shoot ratio (R/S)	Empirical root-to-shoot ratios or direct allometric relationships; variable depending on site quality and water stress	0.70-0.85	50-200	0.5-1 day	High variability in R/S ratios; site-quality dependence; limited species-specific data; climate interaction poorly understood	National carbon inventories; IPCC Tier 2 calculations; plantation management	Hui et al. (2014); IPCC guidelines; India plantation research

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Standing Dead Wood (Decay class-specific)	DW_standing = AGB_original × RF; RF(decay class 1)=0.975, RC(class 2)=0.802	DBH and height of dead trees, Decay class, Original biomass estimate	Application of decay-class-specific reduction factors to previously living tree biomass; captures structural degradation	0.70-0.85	100-300	1-2 days	Difficult decay class assignment; overestimation of sound-wood biomass; uncertainty in original tree size	CDM A/R projects; forest carbon accounting; protected forest assessments	Harmon et al. 2011; CDM Methodology Tools (AR-AM-Tool-12); UNFCCC
Lying Dead Wood (Line intercept method)	DWC = Σ[(π/4)×d²×ρ× Ltransect /Lsampled]; d=diameter at intersection	Log diameter at intersection point, Log decay class, Wood density by decay class, Transect length	Statistical sampling of log intersections along transect; conversion to biomass through volume-density calculations	0.65-0.85	150-400	2-4 days	Sampling bias for small logs; decay class subjectivity; variable species identification; labor-intensive field work	Forest carbon audits; deadwood management; IPCC carbon pool assessments	IPCC. (2019); IPCC-CDM protocols; standard forestry inventory methods
Litter Biomass	L_C = Σ(LWi) / Aquadrat × Aplot × CF; typical quadrats 0.25 m² per 0.1 ha plot	Litter fresh weight, Oven-dry weight, Carbon fraction (0.45-0.52), Litter composition	Destructive quadrat sampling with component separation; oven-drying at 70°C; carbon fraction applied post-measurement	0.80-0.92	200-500	3-5 days	Highly variable in space and time; seasonal variation significant; component separation labor-intensive; decomposition rate uncertainty	Ecosystem carbon accounting; long-term forest monitoring; soil-vegetation interactions	Ray et al. (2024); IPCC guidelines; tropical forest studies
Soil Organic Carbon (SOC) - Laboratory analysis	SOC_total = Σ(BD_i × OC%_i × Depth_i) for each 10 cm layer; typically 0-30 cm assessed	Bulk density, Organic carbon percentage, Soil depth, Stoniness correction	Soil pit excavation with stratified core sampling; elemental analysis or wet combustion of organic carbon; bulk density from oven-dried soil weight	0.75-0.90	500-1,200	7-14 days	Highly spatial variability; depth-dependent uncertainty; lab analysis methodology variation; stoniness measurement error	Ecosystem carbon inventories; climate change impact studies; soil restoration monitoring	Sharma et al. (2010); IPCC Tier 2; Nepal NFI (Khanal et al. 2023)

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
REMOTE SENSING & ADVANCED METHODS									
NDVI-based regression (Optical Remote Sensing)	AGB = α + β×NDVI; NDVI = (NIR-RED)/(NIR+RED); typical R^2 at plot level: 0.30-0.70	NDVI from satellite data, Field calibration plots	Vegetation index correlation with canopy structure; linear regression model development	0.30-0.70	50-150	1-3 days	Signal saturation in dense forests; weather/atmospheric effects; limited to moderate biomass; requires ground calibration	Large-scale carbon mapping; deforestation monitoring; rapid regional assessments	Singh et al. 2020; Widely applied with Landsat, Sentinel-2; India remote sensing studies
EVI-based estimation (Enhanced Vegetation Index)	EVI = 2.5×[(NIR-RED)/(NIR+6×RED-7.5×BLUE+1)]; performance better than NDVI in high biomass	EVI from satellite, Site calibration, Forest type stratification	Improved index accounting for canopy background and atmospheric aerosols	0.40-0.75	60-180	1-3 days	Computationally more complex; requires blue band; similar limitations to NDVI for saturation	Forest monitoring in tropics; high-biomass ecosystem mapping; REDD+ applications	Swain et al. 2017; MODIS-based regional assessments
LiDAR (Airborne Laser Scanning - ALS)	AGB = α_0 + α_1×CHM_mean + α_2×CHM_sd + α_3×DBH_LiDAR; CHM from first-last return differencing	Canopy Height Model, LiDAR-derived structural metrics, Field validation plots	3D point cloud analysis generating detailed vertical structure; direct measurement of canopy architecture	0.85-0.95	3,000-8,000	2-4 weeks	High equipment/processing costs; weather-dependent; narrow operational window; requires specialized software; limited availability in India	Large-scale forest inventory; protected area monitoring; research-grade assessments	Yadav 2019; Backpack LiDAR: RMSE 0.53 cm for DBH; growing adoption in India

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Machine Learning - Random Forest	AGB_predicted = f_RF(NDVI, EVI, Elevation, Aspect, Slope, Temperature, Rainfall...); 100-500 trees ensemble	Satellite indices, Terrain variables, Climatic data, Ground inventory plots (70% training, 30% validation)	Ensemble of decision trees; captures non-linear relationships; feature importance ranking	0.70-0.85	200-600	5-10 days	Requires 100+ calibration plots; "black-box" nature; overfitting risk; transferability across regions limited	Regional carbon mapping; REDD+ monitoring; multi-temporal change detection	Cai et al. 2025; Application in Yunnan Province (R^2=0.76); Sentinel-2 based assessments
Deep Learning - Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN/ResNet)	AGB = CNN(satellite_imagery); ResNet architecture with skip connections addressing vanishing gradient	High-resolution satellite imagery, Convolutional filters, Ground-truth training data	Automated feature extraction from imagery; learning hierarchical representations; minimal hand-crafted features	0.80-0.90	400-1,000	7-14 days (training)	Requires large training datasets (500+ plots); high computational resources; difficult interpretation; regional transferability uncertain	High-precision carbon mapping; operational forest monitoring; landscape-scale assessments	Ali et al. 2025; ResNet application in Tibet (R^2=0.80, RMSE=15.8 MgC/ha)
PLANTATION-SPECIFIC APPROACHES									
Dendrocalamus strictus (Bamboo) - Age-based model	Total Biomass_6yr = 18.91 Mg/ha; Carbon_6yr = 8.39 Mg/ha; Mature_20yr = 109.30 Mg/ha; C = 54.65 Mg/ha	Age of plantation, Culm diameter, Culm height, Clump density	Component-wise measurement (culms, branches, leaves, roots) with age-specific allometric relationships	0.90-0.96	1,000-2,500	3-7 days	Age records often unreliable; clump merging/fragmentation; periodic harvesting affects measurement; regeneration estimation challenging	National Bamboo Mission carbon assessment; carbon credit calculation; plantation productivity	Kaushal et al. (2016) Dehradun; bamboo plantation management protocols

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Eucalyptus plantation model	AGB = 0.0905×(DBH²×H)^0.8507 [Corymbia variant]; component fractionation: stems 70%, branches 15%, leaves 15%	Plantation age, DBH, Height, Stand density	Rapid growth species with high biomass accumulation; allometric relationships derived from destructive sampling of plantation trees	0.94-0.98	500-1,500	2-4 days	High growth variability with site quality; harvest residue carbon often excluded; pulpwood vs. solid wood density differences	Plantation carbon accounting; productivity monitoring; forest carbon stock assessment (India: plantations ~25% of forest area)	Stanturf et al. 2018; Eucalyptus research common in Australia; India plantation data from RFRI
Teak (Tectona grandis) plantation	AGB_plantation = 0.0726×(DBH²×H)^0.8634; Annual increment = 2-4 Mg/ha/yr depending on site	Plantation age, DBH, Height, Site quality (slope, aspect, soil)	Slow-growing valuable timber species; higher wood density (0.65-0.75) than Eucalyptus; site-quality-dependent allometric relationships	0.92-0.96	800-2,000	3-5 days	Age-dependent growth rates; competition-dependent morphology; site-quality variation substantial; timber vs. biomass partitioning issues	Commercial plantation management; carbon credit assessment for UNFCCC projects; REDD+ landscape planning	Sharma & Purkait (2011); plantation research RFRI
Sal (Shorea robusta) mixed plantations	AGB = 0.0843×(DBH²×H)^0.8506 [species-specific]; SOC = 0.05-0.12 Mg C/ha/yr in natural stands	DBH, Height, Age, Stand density, Site index	Mixed-species plantation establishment; faster biomass accumulation than monoculture; higher biodiversity co-benefits	0.92-0.95	1,200-2,500	4-7 days	Mixed-species allometric equations less available; species composition changes with age; regeneration/succession prediction difficult	Forest restoration; biodiversity-carbon co-optimization; landslide control in Himalayan regions	Bhatta 2016; Common in Sub-Himalayan plantations; Central India conservation programs

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
INDIAN FOREST-TYPE-SPECIFIC FRAMEWORKS									
Tropical Evergreen Forest (Western Ghats - standardized protocol)	AGB = 0.0821×(DBH²×H)^0.8713; Total carbon: 155-195 Mg C/ha; Range observed: 146-219 Mg C/ha	DBH (all trees ≥10 cm), Height (every 5th tree), Litter collection, Soil sampling	Multi-pool approach assessing trees (70-75% of carbon), shrubs (2-3%), litter (1-2%), soil (20-25% typically); Western Ghats-specific calibration	0.89-0.96	2,000-3,500	5-7 days	High within-forest variability; slope/aspect effects substantial; regeneration of smaller trees undersampling issue; remoteness of many sites	Biodiversity-carbon studies; REDD+ baseline; protected area management (Western Ghats endemism hotspot)	Ecosystem-level carbon storage studies (Nair et al., 2022); biodiversity conservation priority areas
Tropical Dry Deciduous Forest (Central India - Madhya Pradesh, UP, Chhattisgarh)	AGB = 0.0698×(DBH²×H)^0.8876; Total carbon: 45-95 Mg C/ha; Seasonal leaf fall variation	DBH ≥5 cm, Height measurements, Litter quantified separately by season (pre-monsoon, monsoon, post-monsoon), SOC to 30 cm	High litter input post-leaf fall (5-8 Mg/ha/yr); SOC typically 25-50 Mg C/ha; degradation state significantly affects carbon; fire impact assessment critical	0.85-0.93	1,200-2,000	4-6 days	Fire-induced carbon loss; timber extraction and grazing reduce carbon; temporal sampling important for litter; soil variability substantial	REDD+ initiatives; deforestation monitoring; forest restoration carbon sequestration potential	Chaturvedi et al. (2015 & 2017) dry forest carbon; fire impact studies
Subtropical Pine Forest (Pinus roxburghii - Himalayas 900-2200 m)	AGB = 0.0654×(DBH²×H)^0.8542; Total carbon: 80-150 Mg C/ha; Pine needle litter: 6-12 Mg/ha with C%=0.48-0.52	DBH ≥10 cm, Height, Needle litter by season, Root-to-shoot ratio 0.22-0.28, SOC to 60 cm (layered analysis 0-10, 10-20, 20-60 cm)	Coniferous forest with persistent needle litter; high SOC accumulation (50-100 Mg C/ha typical); fire disturbance regime affects carbon dynamics; aspect variations substantial	0.88-0.95	1,500-2,500	5-8 days	Fire/wildfire carbon loss; limited species diversity; degradation status highly variable; needle litter decomposition rate uncertainty; aspect/elevation effects	Fire management planning; carbon-climate interaction research; carbon sequestration in reforestation; landslide mitigation	Sharma et al. (2010) Garhwal aspect studies; fire impact in northwestern Himalaya

Estimation Technique	Formula/Calculation Method	Primary Variables	Underlying Principle	Accuracy (R^2)	Cost (₹/ha)	Time Requirement	Key Limitations	Primary Applications	Key Indian Scientists/References
Temperate Coniferous Forest - Himalayan Fir (Abies pindrow; 2400-3400 m)	AGB = 0.0642×(DBH²×H)^0.8731; Total carbon: 150-245 Mg C/ha; Highest carbon among Indian forest types	DBH ≥10 cm (some include ≥5 cm), Height, Litter (Ol, Of, Oh horizons separate), Fine/coarse roots excavated in 10-15% of plots, SOC to 60 cm (5-10, 10-20, 20-30, 30-60 cm layers)	Highest carbon density in India; deep soils (>100 cm); high SOC: 100-180 Mg C/ha; low decomposition rates; nutrient-rich vegetation; regeneration dependent on microhabitat	0.91-0.97	2,500-4,000	6-10 days	Extreme high altitude access difficulty; steep slopes (>30°); deep snow cover limiting measurement windows; landslide risk in construction; research logistically challenging	Climate change vulnerability assessment; endemic species conservation; Himalayan biodiversity hotspot protection; carbon resilience	Sharma et al. (2010) seven-forest-type comparison, Cedrus and Abies data; USFD/HNB Garhwal University research network
Bamboo Plantation (Dendrocalamus strictus - Doon Valley baseline reference)	Plant biomass: Culms (53.05 t/ha), Branches (5.81 t/ha), Leaves (2.19 t/ha); Litter: 2.40 t/ha; Soil (0-30 cm): 57.3 t C/ha; Total: 120.75 t C/ha	Age of plantation, Culm spacing, Culm height >5m, Culm diameter (>5 cm counted), Clump density, Leaf litter fall, Soil organic carbon	Very rapid carbon sequestration (1-2.3 Mg/ha/yr aboveground); regeneration after harvest maintains carbon stocks; high root carbon (57.3 t/ha in Barak Valley example); cultural/livelihood co-benefits substantial	0.88-0.94	800-1,500	3-5 days	Lack of historical baseline data; harvesting frequency and intensity varies; regeneration failure in degraded sites; clonal variation in growth rates not captured; intercropping carbon not addressed	National Bamboo Mission carbon crediting; rural livelihood-climate mitigation integration; degraded land restoration	Kaushal et al. (2016); Ray et al. (2024) Sunderban comparison; Northeast India bamboo village systems

5. DISCUSSION

5.1 Integration of Multiple Carbon Pools

Comprehensive assessment of forest carbon stocks requires the simultaneous quantification of all five carbon pools defined under IPCC guidelines, as their relative contributions vary substantially across forest types, climatic zones, and management histories (Newell & Vos 2012). The present synthesis demonstrates that aboveground tree biomass typically dominates total ecosystem carbon in intact old-growth forests, contributing approximately 40–60% of total carbon storage. However, the proportional importance of other pools increases markedly under specific ecological and disturbance conditions. In degraded and disturbed forests, root-to-shoot ratios commonly increase from 0.20–0.25 in undisturbed stands to 0.30–0.40 in heavily logged areas (Daba et al. 2022), reflecting the persistence of root systems following canopy loss. In plantation ecosystems, soil organic carbon often contributes a higher proportion of total carbon due to continuous organic inputs and reduced soil disturbance (Turner et al. 2000, Satyam et al. 2026). Wetland and peatland forests exhibit the most extreme variation, where soil carbon may exceed 80% of total ecosystem carbon (Mitsch et al. 2013). This variability is clearly illustrated within the Indian forest context, where temperate Himalayan forests contain average aboveground tree carbon stocks of 150–200 Mg C ha^{-1}, while soil organic carbon contributes an additional 80–180 Mg C ha^{-1}. Consequently, soil carbon frequently represents 30–45% of total ecosystem carbon despite accounting for less than 1% of total plant biomass volume.

5.2 Destructive vs. Non-Destructive Methods: Optimal Integration

The traditional distinction between destructive and non-destructive biomass estimation methods is increasingly recognized as an artificial dichotomy within modern carbon accounting frameworks. Contemporary best practice emphasizes strategic integration of both approaches rather than exclusive reliance on either method. Destructive sampling serves primarily as a calibration and validation framework, with approximately 2–5% of inventory plots subjected to complete harvesting to develop species- and site-specific allometric equations (Roxburgh et al. 2015). The remaining 95–98% of plots are subsequently assessed using non-destructive allometric techniques. This integrated approach enables quantification of systematic bias in allometric estimates while achieving substantial cost efficiencies. Empirical evidence indicates that reducing destructive sampling intensity from 20% to approximately 5% of plots lowers operational costs by 65–75%, while maintaining estimation accuracy within acceptable uncertainty limits of ±15–20% (Magnussen & Reed 2004). In India, this hybrid methodology has been operationalized through the National Forest Inventory conducted by the Forest Survey of India, where approximately 5% of the nearly 12,000 biennial sampling plots are destructively assessed to support the non-destructive evaluation of the remaining plots across diverse forest types.

5.3 Allometric Equation Selection and Transferability

The selection of suitable allometric equations is a crucial methodological decision that significantly impacts the precision of biomass and carbon estimation (Sileshi 2014). The analysis demonstrates significant fluctuations in model efficacy based on equation configuration, predictor variables, and geographical context. Equations based only on DBH typically provide coefficients of determination (R^2) ranging from 0.85 to 0.92, making them appropriate for swift reconnaissance assessments. Incorporating tree height (Tier 2 models) enhances predictive accuracy, resulting in R^2 values between 0.92 and 0.97, thus rendering them suitable for regular forest assessments. The utmost accuracy is attained by Tier 3 equations that integrate DBH, height, and wood density (Miller et al. 2015), yielding R^2 values between 0.96 and 0.99, crucial for carbon trading and scientific inquiry. Comparative evaluations frequently reveal that equations tailored to specific regions and species diminish root mean square error by 20–35% compared to generic pan-tropical models. In India, collaborative research initiatives—especially extensive studies in the Garhwal Himalaya and tropical dry forests—have markedly enhanced estimation precision by the formulation of allometric equations tailored to specific forest types and species (Mansingh et al. 2025).

5.4 Bamboo Plantations: Emerging Carbon Sink Opportunity

Bamboo cultivation has a significantly overlooked potential for climate change alleviation in India's land-use strategy (Ghosh et al. 2025). The assessment reveals that bamboo systems demonstrate aboveground carbon sequestration rates of about 1–2.3 Mg C ha^{-1} yr^{-1}, whereas overall ecosystem sequestration, encompassing soil carbon, varies from 1.5 to 3.0 Mg C ha^{-1} yr^{-1}. These figures surpass those documented for numerous traditional tree plantings, like teak (Devi & Singh 2021), which often sequester 0.8–1.2 Mg C ha^{-1} yr^{-1} (Jha 2015). A key benefit of bamboo is its swift growth rate, enabling significant carbon sequestration within 3–5 years, in contrast to the 10–15 years needed for the majority of timber species (Tripathi, et al. 2024). India presently encompasses around 15.69 million hectares of bamboo-centric ecosystems, primarily in wild or semi-managed states, alongside an estimated 25–30 million hectares of degraded terrain recognised as viable for growth. Projected carbon credit capacity attains 10–12 t CO_2e ha^{-1} yr^{-1}, closely corresponding with India's pledge to establish an extra 2.5 billion tonnes of CO_2e carbon sink by 2030 (Garg 2022). Nonetheless, methodological obstacles remain, such as a scarcity of species-specific allometric equations, inadequate comprehension of clonal growth variability, ambiguities related to harvesting frequency, and the necessity to amalgamate carbon optimisation with livelihood-focused bamboo utilisation frameworks.

5.5 Remote Sensing and Machine Learning Integration: Emerging Frontier

The utilisation of satellite remote sensing, terrestrial inventory data, and machine learning techniques signifies a swiftly evolving domain in forest carbon evaluation, especially for vast and logistically intricate areas like India (Rajput et al. 2025). Research utilising Random Forest regression on Sentinel-2 multispectral imagery indicates aboveground biomass prediction accuracies with R^2 values around 0.76–0.78, whereas deep learning methodologies like Residual Neural Networks (ResNet) demonstrate enhanced efficacy with R^2 values between 0.80 and 0.85 when high-resolution imagery is accessible. Innovative backpack LiDAR technologies augment this framework by facilitating DBH estimate with root mean square errors as little as 0.53 cm, nearing the precision of conventional field measurements (Prasetyo et al. 2024). Notwithstanding these advancements, operational limitations continue to be considerable. The 10 m spatial resolution of Sentinel-2 is suitable for extensive forest surveillance but inadequate for distinguishing individual plantations. Continuous cloud cover throughout the monsoon season limits usable images to around 40–50% of the year (Niyogi et al. 2018). Furthermore, machine learning models developed in particular ecological regions frequently exhibit diminished transferability when utilised in different contexts. Empirical data indicates that the inclusion of 3–5 field calibration plots for every 1,000 hectares enhances forecast precision by 15–25%, underscoring the ongoing significance of integrating ground-based information (Ahmad et al. 2022).

5.6 Uncertainty Quantification and Error Propagation

Uncertainty quantification represents a critical yet frequently underemphasized component of forest carbon assessments. The present review indicates that total uncertainty in carbon stock estimation typically ranges between ±15% and ±35%, arising from multiple interacting error sources. The dominant contributor is allometric equation residual error, accounting for approximately ±10–20% uncertainty, followed by field measurement errors of ±5–10%, primarily associated with DBH and height measurements. Additional uncertainty arises from variation in biomass carbon fractions (±3–5%), spatial heterogeneity among plots (±8–12%), and model structural uncertainty related to equation selection (±5–8%). Advanced probabilistic approaches offer improved uncertainty characterization compared to deterministic methods (Faes & Moens 2020). Bayesian inference frameworks incorporating prior parameter distributions enhance robustness, while bootstrap resampling provides non-parametric confidence intervals suitable for non-normally distributed residuals (Bongiorno et al. 2023). Monte Carlo simulation approaches, particularly those accounting for correlated errors across carbon pools, generate more realistic uncertainty bounds for total ecosystem carbon estimates.

5.7 Policy and Implementation Implications for India

The methodological synthesis presented in this review carries important implications for India's forest governance and climate policy frameworks. Under REDD+ implementation, baseline carbon stock assessments currently permitting ±20% uncertainty require Tier 2–3 methodologies across approximately 30% of forest areas to achieve IPCC-recommended precision thresholds. Monitoring, Reporting, and Verification (MRV) systems necessitate standardized protocols and repeated plot measurements to quantify carbon stock changes with ±15–20% confidence. In carbon markets, voluntary credit transactions increasingly demand Tier 3 methodologies supported by independent third-party verification, while Clean Development Mechanism afforestation and reforestation projects require component-wise carbon accounting under approved methodological tools (Simula 2010). India's emerging domestic carbon market, including the Green Credit Scheme, further highlights the need for harmonized methodologies across states (Mittal et al. 2025). From an inventory perspective, the current biennial National Forest Inventory samples approximately 6,000 plots; transitioning to annual monitoring with degradation detection would require expansion to 8,000–10,000 plots, implying an additional annual investment of ₹40–50 crores (Smith et al. 2002; Rani et al. 2023). Strategic integration of satellite data with field inventories provides a cost-effective pathway to enhance spatial resolution, enabling a transition from district-level estimates to high-resolution 10 km^2 grid-based carbon mapping.

6. CONCLUSION

This analysis demonstrates that a comprehensive scientific framework is essential for accurately estimating total forest carbon stocks, rather than depending on a solitary method. A tactical integration of restricted destructive sampling for calibration, non-invasive allometric assessments for spatial representation, and geospatial technology for landscape-wide extrapolation provides the most dependable method for precise carbon accounting. The integration of satellite remote sensing and machine learning methodologies markedly improves predicted precision, temporal observation, and identification of carbon stock variations in diverse forest, plantation, and bamboo ecosystems. A thorough evaluation must clearly encompass all five carbon reservoirs as specified by the IPCC—aboveground biomass, belowground biomass, deadwood, litter, and soil organic carbon. Soil organic carbon represents a significant but largely overlooked element in Indian forest ecosystems, typically comprising approximately one-third to almost half of total carbon reserves, highlighting the necessity for systematic and standardised assessment. Despite litter and deadwood pools comprising lesser fractions, their significance escalates in mature and unmanaged forests, and neglecting these pools may result in a persistent underappraisal of ecosystem carbon sequestration.

The assessment highlights that carbon estimation methods need to be tailored to the various forest types and management practices in India. Tropical evergreen, deciduous, temperate, plantation, and bamboo-centric ecosystems necessitate customised approaches, stratification frameworks, and observation periods to accurately reflect their distinct carbon behaviours. Bamboo plantations, although they exhibit swift growth and considerable carbon sequestration capabilities, are insufficiently incorporated into national carbon accounting because of deficiencies in species-specific allometric equations and the lack of long-term monitoring data. Ongoing research deficiencies encompass the scarcity of biomass equations for many indigenous species, ambiguity in estimating belowground biomass, and the constrained applicability of sophisticated modelling techniques across different ecological regions. Mitigating these constraints via standardised Tier-2 protocols in the immediate future and the gradual incorporation of high-resolution remote sensing, LiDAR, and machine-learning monitoring in the medium term can significantly enhance India's national carbon accounting system. The review concludes that attaining carbon estimation precision within ±15% is both feasible and crucial for sustainable forest management, efficient climate mitigation approaches, and the reliability of national monitoring, reporting, and verification frameworks.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Thank to Dr. Vivekanand Mandal, Associate Professor, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya for extracting research papers from different sources and publications.

REFERENCES

Abbas, S., Wong, M. S., Wu, J., Shahzad, N., & Muhammad Irteza, S. (2020). Approaches of satellite remote sensing for the assessment of above-ground biomass across tropical forests: Pan-tropical to national scales. Remote Sensing, 12(20), 3351.

Ahirwal, J., Nath, A., Brahma, B., Deb, S., Sahoo, U. K., & Nath, A. J. (2021). Patterns and driving factors of biomass carbon and soil organic carbon stock in the Indian Himalayan region. Science of the Total Environment, 770, 145292.

Ahmad, A., Gilani, H., & Ahmad, S. R. (2021). Forest aboveground biomass estimation and mapping through high-resolution optical satellite imagery—A literature review. Forests, 12(7), 914.

Ahmad, U., Nasirahmadi, A., Hensel, O., & Marino, S. (2022). Technology and data fusion methods to enhance site-specific crop monitoring. Agronomy, 12(3), 555.

Ali, G., Mijwil, M. M., Adamopoulos, I., & Ayad, J. (2025). Leveraging the internet of things, remote sensing, and artificial intelligence for sustainable forest management. Babylonian Journal of Internet of Things, 2025, 1-65.

Ameray, A., Bergeron, Y., Valeria, O., Montoro Girona, M., & Cavard, X. (2021). Forest carbon management: A review of silvicultural practices and management strategies across boreal, temperate and tropical forests. Current Forestry Reports, 7(4), 245-266.

Baker, T.R., Phillips, O.L., Malhi, Y., Almeida, S., Arroyo, L., Di Fiore, A., et al. (2004). Variation in wood density determines spatial patterns in Amazonian forest biomass. Global Change Biology, 10(5), 545-562. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2486.2004.00751.x

Benbi, D. K. (2018). Evaluation of a rapid microwave digestion method for determination of total organic carbon in soil. Communications in Soil Science and Plant Analysis, 49(17), 2103-2112.

Bhatta, S. P. (2016). Carbon Stock and Regeneration Status of Community Managed Sal (Shorea robusta Gaertn.) Forests in Dadeldhura District, Western Nepal (Doctoral dissertation, Department of Botany).

Blake, G. R. (1965). Bulk density. Methods of soil analysis: Part 1 physical and mineralogical properties, including statistics of measurement and sampling, 9, 374-390.

Bongiorno, E., Chan, K. L., & Goia, A. (2023). Non-parametric dimensionality detection for functional data. In Books of Abstract COMPSTAT2023 (pp. 33-33). IASC.

Cai, F., Tang, B. H., Ji, X., Chen, J., Fu, Z., & Ge, Z. (2025). Predicting soil organic carbon stock in plateau swamp wetlands using multi-source remote sensing and spectral measurements: a case study of the Dianchi Basin. IEEE Transactions on Geoscience and Remote Sensing.

Cairns, M.A., Brown, S., Helmer, E.H., & Baumgardner, G.A. (1997). Root biomass allocation in the world's upland forests. Oecologia, 111(1), 1-11. https://doi.org/10.1007/s004420050201

Cao, D., Huang, X., Liu, G., Tian, L., Xin, Q., & Yang, Y. (2025). Evaluating the Performance of Satellite-Derived Vegetation Indices in Gross Primary Productivity (GPP) Estimation at 30 m and 500 m Spatial Resolution. Remote Sensing, 17(19), 3291.

Chaoyi, Z., Mengying, C., & Quanguo, C. (2025). Detection of organic carbon sequestration in typical brown soil by different microbial functional groups based on electrochemical detection. Carbon Management, 16(1), 2589995.

Chaturvedi, R. K. C. R. K. (2010). Doctor of Philosophy Doctor of Philosophy (Doctoral dissertation, Banaras Hindu University Varanasi-221005, India).

Chaturvedi, R. K., & Raghubanshi, A. S. (2015). Allometric models for accurate estimation of aboveground biomass of teak in tropical dry forests of India. Forest Science, 61(5), 938-949.

Chaturvedi, R. K., Singh, S., Singh, H., & Raghubanshi, A. S. (2017). Assessment of allometric models for leaf area index estimation of Tectona grandis. Tropical Plant Research, 4(2), 274-285.

Chave, J., Andalo, C., Brown, S., Cairns, M. A., Chambers, J. Q., Eamus, D., ... & Yamakura, T. (2005). Tree allometry and improved estimation of carbon stocks and balance in tropical forests. Oecologia, 145(1), 87-99.

Chave, J., Coomes, D., Jansen, S., Lewis, S. L., Swenson, N. G., & Zanne, A. E. (2009). Towards a worldwide wood economics spectrum. Ecology letters, 12(4), 351-366.

Chen, G. S., Yang, Y. S., Xie, J. S., Guo, J. F., Gao, R., & Qian, W. (2005). Conversion of a natural broad-leafed evergreen forest into pure plantation forests in a subtropical area: effects on carbon storage. Annals of forest science, 62(7), 659-668.

Daba, D. E., Dullo, B. W., & Soromessa, T. (2022). Effect of forest management on carbon stock of tropical moist Afromontane Forest. International Journal of Forestry Research, 2022(1), 3691638.

Devi, A. S., & Singh, K. S. (2021). Carbon storage and sequestration potential in aboveground biomass of bamboos in North East India. Scientific Reports, 11(1), 837.

Djomo, A.N., Ibrahima, A., Saborowski, J., Gravenhorst, G. (2010): Allometric equations for biomass estimations in Cameroon and pan moist tropical equations including biomass data from Africa. -Forest Ecology and Management 260: 1873-1885.

Ensslin, A., Rutten, G., Pommer, U., Zimmermann, R., Hemp, A., & Fischer, M. (2015). Effects of elevation and land use on the biomass of trees, shrubs and herbs at Mount Kilimanjaro. Ecosphere, 6(3), 1-15.

Faes, M., & Moens, D. (2020). Recent trends in the modeling and quantification of non-probabilistic uncertainty. Archives of computational methods in engineering, 27(3), 1-39.

Feldpausch, T.R., Lloyd, J., Lewis, S.L., Brienen, R.J.W., Gloor, M., Monteagudo Mendoza, A., et al. (2012). Tree height integrated into pantropical forest biomass estimates. Biogeosciences, 9(8), 3381-3403. https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-9-3381-2012

Forest Survey of India. (2017). Carbon Stock in India's Forests. FSI Publication, Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, India.

Gamon, J. A., Field, C. B., Goulden, M. L., Griffin, K. L., Hartley, A. E., Joel, G., ... & Valentini, R. (1995). Relationships between NDVI, canopy structure, and photosynthesis in three Californian vegetation types. Ecological applications, 5(1), 28-41.

Gangopadhyay, S. K. (2023). Temperate Soils of India with Special Reference to Soil Carbon and their Management. Indian Journal of Fertilisers, 19(5), 436-455.

Gangopadhyay, S. K. (2023). Temperate Soils of India with Special Reference to Soil Carbon and their Management. Indian Journal of Fertilisers, 19(5), 436-455.

Garg, A. (2022). Accelerating Finance to Help India Achieve Its Renewable Energy Goal. Available at SSRN 4020221.

Ghosh, S., Patidar, V., Saha, A., Mina, H. K., & Kumar, S. (2025). Measurement, Reporting, and Verification Methodologies for Carbon Credit Towards the Carbon-Negative Agriculture. In Carbon-Negative Agriculture (pp. 171-201). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.

Harmon, M. E., Woodall, C. W., Fasth, B., Sexton, J., & Yatkov, M. (2011). Differences between standing and downed dead tree wood density reduction factors: a comparison across decay classes and tree species. Res. Pap. NRS-15. Newtown Square, PA: US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Research Station. 40 p., 15, 1-40.

Higgins, K. F., Oldemeyer, J. L., Jenkins, K. J., Clambey, G. K., & Harlow, R. F. (1996). Vegetation sampling and measurement. Research and management techniques for wildlife and habitats, 5, 567-591.

Huang, S., Ramirez, C., McElhaney, M., & Evans, K. (2018). F3: Simulating spatiotemporal forest change from field inventory, remote sensing, growth modeling, and management actions. Forest Ecology and Management, 415, 26-37.

Hui, F., Zhu, L., Lefsky, M., Wulder, M.A., Ma, L., Racine, P., et al. (2014). Estimating forest aboveground biomass by combining airborne LiDAR and Landsat 8 data. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 37(15), 3368-3380.

Huynh, T., Lee, D. J., Applegate, G., & Lewis, T. (2021). Field methods for above and belowground biomass estimation in plantation forests. MethodsX, 8, 101192.

IPCC. (2006). 2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories: Prepared by the National Greenhouse Gas Inventories Programme. Technical Support Unit, Cambridge University Press.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025a). Evaluating Phytoremediation Approaches for the Restoration of Degraded Ecosystems in India. Nature Environment & Pollution Technology, 24(2), 1.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025b). Seasonal analysis of Physico-chemical parameters of mine soil under various forest tree species in Nandini limestone mines, Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Advanced Chemistry Research, 7(2), 6-14.

IPCC. (2019). Climate Change and Land: An IPCC special report on climate change, desertification, land degradation, sustainable land management, food security, and greenhouse gas fluxes in terrestrial ecosystems. In: Shukla, P.R., et al. (Eds.). Cambridge University Press.

Isaac, S. R., & Nair, M. A. (2005). Biodegradation of leaf litter in the warm humid tropics of Kerala, India. Soil Biology and Biochemistry, 37(9), 1656-1664.

Jha, K. K. (2015). Carbon storage and sequestration rate assessment and allometric model development in young teak plantations of tropical moist deciduous forest, India. Journal of Forestry Research, 26(3), 589-604.

Kaushal, R., Subbulakshmi, V., Tomar, J. M. S., Alam, N. M., Jayaparkash, J., Mehta, H., & Chaturvedi, O. P. (2016). Predictive models for biomass and carbon stock estimation in male bamboo (Dendrocalamus strictus L.) in Doon valley, India. Acta Ecologica Sinica, 36(6), 469-476.

Keith, H., Vardon, M., Obst, C., Young, V., Houghton, R. A., & Mackey, B. (2021). Evaluating nature-based solutions for climate mitigation and conservation requires comprehensive carbon accounting. Science of the Total Environment, 769, 144341.

Khanal, R., Kandel, S., Chaudhary, R., Neupane, U., & Gyawali, A. (2025). Adoption and Utilization of Information Technology in Agriculture: Evidence from Rupendehi, Nepal. Quest Journal of Management and Social Sciences, 7(2), 426-445.

Kim, Y. I., Park, W. H., Shin, Y., Park, J. W., Engel, B., Yun, Y. J., & Jang, W. S. (2024). Applications of machine learning and remote sensing in soil and water conservation. Hydrology, 11(11), 183.

Kothandaraman, S., Dar, J. A., Sundarapandian, S., Dayanandan, S., & Khan, M. L. (2020). Ecosystem-level carbon storage and its links to diversity, structural and environmental drivers in tropical forests of Western Ghats, India. Scientific Reports, 10(1), 13444.

Lal, R. (2018). Digging deeper: A holistic perspective of factors affecting soil organic carbon sequestration in agroecosystems. Global change biology, 24(8), 3285-3301.

Li, B., Cheng, G., Shang, C., Si, R., Shao, Z., Zhang, P., ... & Kong, L. (2025). Inversion of Aerosol Chemical Composition in the Beijing–Tianjin–Hebei Region Using a Machine Learning Algorithm. Atmosphere, 16(2), 114.

Louhaichi, M., Hassan, S., Clifton, K., & Johnson, D. E. (2018). A reliable and non-destructive method for estimating forage shrub cover and biomass in arid environments using digital vegetation charting technique. Agroforestry Systems, 92(5), 1341-1352.

Ma, H., Mo, L., Crowther, T. W., Maynard, D. S., van den Hoogen, J., Stocker, B. D., ... & Zohner, C. M. (2021). The global distribution and environmental drivers of aboveground versus belowground plant biomass. Nature Ecology & Evolution, 5(8), 1110-1122.

Magnussen, S., & Reed, D. (2004). Modeling for estimation and monitoring. Knowledge reference for national forest assessments, 111.

Malhi, Y., Meir, P., & Brown, S. (2002). Forests, carbon and global climate. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences, 360(1797), 1567-1591.

Mansingh, A., Pradhan, A., Sahoo, S. R., Cherwa, S. S., Mishra, B. P., Rath, L. P., ... & Panda, B. P. (2025). Tree diversity, population structure, biomass accumulation, and carbon stock dynamics in tropical dry deciduous forests of Eastern India. BMC Ecology and Evolution, 25(1), 48.

Miguel, E. P., Péllico Netto, S., Azevedo, G. D., Azevedo, G. D. O., Rezende, A. V., & Pereira, R. S. (2018). Alternative methods of scaling Eucalyptus urophylla trees in forest stands: Compatibility and accuracy of volume equations. iForest-Biogeosciences and Forestry, 11(2), 275.

Miller, J., Morgenroth, J., & Gomez, C. (2015). 3D modelling of individual trees using a handheld camera: Accuracy of height, diameter and volume estimates. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 14(4), 932-940.

Mitsch, W. J., Bernal, B., Nahlik, A. M., Mander, Ü., Zhang, L., Anderson, C. J., ... & Brix, H. (2013). Wetlands, carbon, and climate change. Landscape ecology, 28(4), 583-597.

Mittal, A., Thukral, S., Mittal, A., & Shah, P. (2025). Carbon Credits and Environmental Sustainability in India: Opportunities, Challenges, and Policy Implications. International Journal of Environmental Sciences, 11(1), 152-164.

Montes, N., Gauquelin, T., Badri, W., Bertaudiere, V., & Zaoui, E. H. (2000). A non-destructive method for estimating above-ground forest biomass in threatened woodlands. Forest Ecology and Management, 130(1-3), 37-46.

Nair, P. R., Kumar, B. M., & Nair, V. D. (2022). Carbon sequestration and climate change mitigation. In An Introduction to Agroforestry: Four Decades of Scientific Developments (pp. 487-537). Cham: Springer International Publishing.

Newell, J. P., & Vos, R. O. (2012). Accounting for forest carbon pool dynamics in product carbon footprints: Challenges and opportunities. Environmental Impact Assessment Review, 37, 23-36.

Niyogi, D., Subramanian, S., Mohanty, U. C., Kishtawal, C. M., Ghosh, S., Nair, U. S., ... & Rajeevan, M. (2018). The impact of land cover and land use change on the Indian monsoon region hydroclimate. Land-atmospheric research applications in South and Southeast Asia, 553-575.

O'Donnell, J. A., Aiken, G. R., Butler, K. D., Guillemette, F., Podgorski, D. C., & Spencer, R. G. (2016). DOM composition and transformation in boreal forest soils: The effects of temperature and organic-horizon decomposition state. Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences, 121(10), 2727-2744.

Orozco-Aguilar, L., Johnstone, D., Livesley, S. J., & Brack, C. (2018). The overlooked carbon loss due to decayed wood in urban trees. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 29, 142-153.

Palace, M., Keller, M., Asner, G.P., Hagen, S., & Braswell, B. (2008). Amazon forest structure from IKONOS satellite imagery and the automated characterization of forest canopy properties. Biotropica, 40(2), 141-150.

Panda, S. S., Rao, M. N., Thenkabail, P. S., Misra, D., & Fitzgerald, J. P. (2024). Remote sensing systems—Platforms and sensors: Aerial, satellite, UAV, optical, radar, and LiDAR. In Remote Sensing Handbook, Volume I (pp. 3-86). CRC Press.

Parent, J. (2014). Using Leaf-off LiDAR in Modeling Forest Canopy Structure and Assessing the Effect of Spatial Resolution in Landscape Analyses.

Picard, N., Saint-André, L., & Henry, M. (2012). Manual for building tree volume and biomass allometric equations: from field measurement to prediction (pp. 215-pp).

Prasetyo, W. E., Handayani, H. H., Raharjo, A. B., & Saptarini, D. (2024, October). Advancing Carbon Stock Estimation and 3D Tree Modeling: Harnessing the Potential of Low-Cost Backpack LiDAR Technology. In IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science (Vol. 1406, No. 1, p. 012013). IOP Publishing.

Rajput, S., Mohanta, A., Banerjee, B., Das, J., Mishra, S., & Shankar Kumar, H. (2025). Harnessing GIS, remote sensing, and machine learning for sustainable management and carbon sequestration of non-timber forest products in Gujarat, India. Agroforestry Systems, 99(5), 92.

Ramachandra, T. V., & Bharath, S. (2019). Global warming mitigation through carbon sequestrations in the Central Western Ghats. Remote Sensing in Earth Systems Sciences, 2(1), 39-63.

Rani, A., Kumari, A., & Kumar, M. (2023). Aspects of forest degradation and inventory approaches for forest management. In Water, Land, and Forest Susceptibility and Sustainability (pp. 363-387). Academic Press.

Ray, K., Basak, S. K., Giri, C. K., Kotal, H. N., Mandal, A., Chatterjee, K., ... & Joshi, R. (2024). Ecological restoration at pilot-scale employing site-specific rationales for small-patch degraded mangroves in Indian Sundarbans. Scientific Reports, 14(1), 12952.

Rondeux, J., & Sanchez, C. (2010). Review of indicators and field methods for monitoring biodiversity within national forest inventories. Core variable: Deadwood. Environmental monitoring and assessment, 164(1), 617-630.

Roxburgh, S. H., Paul, K. I., Clifford, D., England, J. R., & Raison, R. J. (2015). Guidelines for constructing allometric models for the prediction of woody biomass: how many individuals to harvest?. Ecosphere, 6(3), 1-27.

Russell, M. B., Domke, G. M., Woodall, C. W., & D'Amato, A. W. (2015). Comparisons of allometric and climate-derived estimates of tree coarse root carbon stocks in forests of the United States. Carbon Balance and Management, 10(1), 20.

Satyam, K., Patil, G., & Maitry, A. (2026). Soil Health Dynamics in Urban Forests versus Wasteland Soils: A Physico-Chemical Perspective from Subtropical Region of Chhattisgarh, India. Journal of the Indian Society of Soil Science, 73(4), 378-390.

Scott Jr, N. J. (1976). The abundance and diversity of the herpetofaunas of tropical forest litter. Biotropica, 41-58.

Seidel, D., Fleck, S., Leuschner, C., & Hammett, T. (2011). Review of ground-based methods to measure the distribution of biomass in forest canopies. Annals of Forest Science, 68(2), 225-244.

Sharma, C. M., Baduni, N. P., Gairola, S., Ghildiyal, S. K., & Suyal, S. (2010). Tree diversity and carbon stocks of some major forest types of Garhwal Himalaya, India. Forest Ecology and Management, 260(12), 2170-2179.

Sileshi, G. W. (2014). A critical review of forest biomass estimation models, common mistakes and corrective measures. Forest Ecology and Management, 329, 237-254.

Simula, M. (2010). Analysis of REDD+ financing gaps and overlaps. REDD+ Partnership, 1-99.

Singh, B. M., Komal, C., & Victorovich, K. A. (2020). Crop growth monitoring through Sentinel and Landsat data based NDVI time-series. Компьютерная оптика, 44(3), 409-419.

Singh, S., Tripathi, D. M., & Tripathi, S. (2025). The role of forest ecosystems for carbon capture and storage in India. International Journal of Agriculture and Environmental Research, 11(5), 1719-1749.

Smith, W. B. (2002). Forest inventory and analysis: a national inventory and monitoring program. Environmental pollution, 116, S233-S242.

Stanturf, J. A., Young, T. M., Perdue, J. H., Dougherty, D., Pigott, M., Guo, Z., & Huang, X. (2018). Productivity and profitability potential for non-native Eucalyptus plantings in the southern USA. Forest Policy and Economics, 97, 210-222.

Swain, S., Abeysundara, S., Hayhoe, K., & Stoner, A. M. (2017). Future changes in summer MODIS-based enhanced vegetation index for the South-Central United States. Ecological informatics, 41, 64-73.

Tewari, V. P. (2016). Forest inventory, assessment, and monitoring, and long-term forest observational studies, with special reference to India. Forest Science and Technology, 12(1), 24-32.

Tripathi, A., Yadav, S., Nishtha, Nkengnamai, M., & Thakur, A. (2024). Bamboo: A Fast-Growing Species to Mitigate Carbon Footprint. In Forests and Climate Change: Biological Perspectives on Impact, Adaptation, and Mitigation Strategies (pp. 469-487). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.

Turner, J., & Lambert, M. (2000). Change in organic carbon in forest plantation soils in eastern Australia. Forest Ecology and Management, 133(3), 231-247.

Vadeboncoeur, M. A., Hamburg, S. P., Blum, J. D., Pennino, M. J., Yanai, R. D., & Johnson, C. E. (2012). The quantitative soil pit method for measuring belowground carbon and nitrogen stocks. Soil Science Society of America Journal, 76(6), 2241-2255.

Vali, A., Ranjbar, A., Mokarram, M., & Taripanah, F. (2020). Investigating the topographic and climatic effects on vegetation using remote sensing and GIS: a case study of Kharestan region, Fars Province, Iran. Theoretical & Applied Climatology, 140.

Walker, S. M., Pearson, T. R. H., Casarim, F. M., Harris, N., Petrova, S., Grais, A., ... & Brown, S. (2012). Standard Operating Procedures for Terrestrial Carbon Measurement: Version 2012. Winrock International.

Walkley, A., & Black, I. A. (1934). An examination of the Degtjareff method for determining soil organic matter, and a proposed modification of the chromic acid titration method. Soil science, 37(1), 29-38.

Wijas, B. J., Allison, S. D., Austin, A. T., Cornwell, W. K., Cornelissen, J. H. C., Eggleton, P., ... & Zanne, A. E. (2024). The role of deadwood in the carbon cycle: Implications for models, forest management, and future climates. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics, 55.

Wilke, B. M. (2005). Determination of chemical and physical soil properties. In Monitoring and assessing soil bioremediation (pp. 47-95). Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.

Woodall, C. W., Heath, L. S., Domke, G. M., & Nichols, M. C. (2011). Methods and equations for estimating aboveground volume, biomass, and carbon for trees in the US forest inventory, 2010. Gen. Tech. Rep. NRS-88. Newtown Square, PA: US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Research Station. 30 p., 88, 1-30.

Xie, Y., Zhang, J., Chen, X., Pang, S., Zeng, H., & Shen, Z. (2020). Accuracy assessment and error analysis for diameter at breast height measurement of trees obtained using a novel backpack LiDAR system. Forest Ecosystems, 7(1), 33.

Xu, W., Cheng, Y., Luo, M., Mai, X., Wang, W., Zhang, W., & Wang, Y. (2025). Progress and Limitations in Forest Carbon Stock Estimation Using Remote Sensing Technologies: A Comprehensive Review. Forests, 16(3), 449.

Yadav, B. (2019). Mapping species composition and structure in wet eucalypt forest using multi-source remote sensing data (Doctoral dissertation, University of Tasmania).

Yang, M., Zhou, X., Liu, Z., Li, P., Tang, J., Xie, B., & Peng, C. (2022). A review of general methods for quantifying and estimating urban trees and biomass. Forests, 13(4), 616.

Zhen, Z., Chen, S., Yin, T., Chavanon, E., Lauret, N., Guilleux, J., ... & Gastellu-Etchegorry, J. P. (2021). Using the negative soil adjustment factor of soil adjusted vegetation index (SAVI) to resist saturation effects and estimate leaf area index (LAI) in dense vegetation areas. Sensors, 21(6), 2115.

CHAPTER 6

Social Forestry and Livelihood Security in Chhattisgarh: A Forest-Dominated State of India

Rushali Mishra, Janhvi Gupta* and Aradhana Lakra

Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur-495009, Chhattisgarh, India.

*Corresponding E-mail: janhvigupta7974@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry
ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4
Suggested Citation: Mishra, R., Gupta, J., & Lakra, A. (2026). Social Forestry and Livelihood Security in Chhattisgarh: A Forest-Dominated State of India. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 100-120). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Social forestry has emerged as a central strategy for reconciling sustainable forest management with the livelihood security of forest-dependent populations. This chapter examines the concept, typology and impact of social forestry in Chhattisgarh, a mineral- and forest-rich state of central India where nearly a third of the population belongs to Scheduled Tribes and where rural households depend heavily on non-timber forest products (NTFPs). Drawing on comparative international evidence alongside Indian and state-level studies, the chapter traces how farm forestry, community forestry, extension forestry and agroforestry convert degraded, community and private lands into streams of economic, social and environmental value. It synthesises the empirical literature on the contribution of forest and environmental income to rural livelihoods, which typically ranges between one-fifth and two-fifths of total household income, and situates Chhattisgarh's tendu, mahua, sal and bamboo economies within this global pattern. The analysis gives particular attention to the governance architecture of social forestry, from the National Forest Policy of 1988 and the 1990 Joint Forest Management resolution to the Forest Rights Act of 2006 and the National Mission for a Green India, and to the persistent barriers of insecure tenure, weak market access, limited technical support and institutional inefficiency that constrain outcomes. The chapter argues that social forestry offers a genuinely integrative model of sustainable development, coupling ecological restoration and carbon sequestration with poverty reduction, employment generation and the empowerment of women and tribal communities. Its full potential, however, will be realised only through secure land tenure, fair and transparent markets, sustained capacity building and community-centred governance.

Keywords: social forestry; livelihood security; non-timber forest products; Joint Forest Management; Forest Rights Act; agroforestry; Chhattisgarh; sustainable rural development.

1. Introduction

1.1 Background and Conceptual Origins

Forests occupy roughly 21.76 per cent of India's geographical area, yet rapid urbanisation, agricultural expansion and sustained demographic pressure continue to degrade tens of millions of hectares of forest and wasteland, eroding the natural capital on which the rural poor depend (Forest Survey of India, 2024). Against this backdrop, social forestry emerged as a deliberate policy response that shifted the locus of tree cultivation away from state-controlled reserved forests towards community, private and public wastelands. The term was crystallised in the 1976 report of the National Commission on Agriculture, which advocated afforestation outside conventional forests to supply fuelwood, fodder, small timber and other daily necessities while simultaneously restoring degraded landscapes. Conceptually, social forestry belongs to a broader global movement away from centralised, custodial forestry towards participatory and devolved models of resource governance, a transition that international scholarship has documented across South Asia, Southeast Asia, Africa and Latin America (Berkes, 2010; Wong et al., 2020).

The intellectual foundations of social forestry rest on two complementary insights. The first, articulated most influentially by Ostrom (1990), is that common-pool resources such as forests need not succumb to the so-called tragedy of the commons; where users can craft durable, self-governing institutions with clear boundaries, graduated sanctions and credible monitoring, collective management can be both efficient and sustainable. The second is the recognition that rural livelihoods are constructed from a portfolio of natural, human, financial, physical and social capitals, and that access to trees and forest products is a decisive determinant of household resilience (Scoones, 1998; Natarajan et al., 2022). Social forestry operationalises both insights by vesting communities with a stake in nearby tree resources and by diversifying the asset base of the rural poor.

1.2 The Global and Indian Trajectory of Social Forestry

In India, social forestry evolved through a sequence of policy milestones. The National Wastelands Development Programme of the 1980s targeted vast tracts of barren land for afforestation; the 1988 National Forest Policy reoriented forestry towards meeting local needs and securing people's participation; and the 1990 Joint Forest Management (JFM) resolution formally empowered village committees to co-manage the fringes of degraded forests in partnership with state forest departments (Majhi, 2016; Maitry et al., 2025). More recent initiatives, notably the National Mission for a Green India launched under the National Action Plan on Climate Change, have emphasised agroforestry linkages, ecosystem services and forest-based livelihoods (Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, 2014). The Indian experience mirrors wider regional trends: community and social forestry programmes in Nepal, Indonesia and elsewhere have similarly sought to marry forest conservation with rural development, with outcomes that are encouraging but uneven (Bijaya et al., 2016; Rakatama & Pandit, 2020).

Chhattisgarh occupies a distinctive place in this landscape. Forests cover approximately 44 per cent of the state's geographical area, the third-largest forest cover among Indian states, and in 2021-2023 the state recorded the country's single largest increase in forest and tree cover, some 684 square kilometres (Forest Survey of India, 2024). The state's forestry programmes prioritise multipurpose and commercially valuable species, including teak, sal, bamboo, palash, babul, Indian siris and several Terminalia species, planted along roadsides, canal banks, farm boundaries and reclaimed mining areas. By channelling benefits through a dense network of forest produce cooperatives that collect tendu leaves, mahua and other NTFPs, the state has sought to reduce pressure on natural sal forests while building climate resilience and supplementing tribal incomes (Tekam et al., 2025).

The stakes are considerable. More than 300 million rural Indians depend on forests and trees for a meaningful share of their income, and this dependence is greatest among landless labourers, tribal communities and women-headed households (Nerfa et al., 2019; Jagger et al., 2022). Livelihood insecurity manifests in seasonal income gaps, volatile markets for products such as mahua flowers, tendu leaves, lac and honey, and climate risks such as erratic monsoons that disrupt regeneration and harvest. In Chhattisgarh, degraded commons can entrench a self-reinforcing cycle in which fuelwood collection meets a large share of household energy needs but simultaneously accelerates soil erosion and biodiversity decline. Social forestry is designed to interrupt this cycle by creating accessible, community-owned tree resources close to settlements.

Women and young people bear amplified vulnerabilities. Women, who commonly spend several hours each day collecting fuelwood, fodder and water, forgo education and remunerative work in the process, while youth increasingly migrate to towns as farm incomes stagnate. Without secure access to tree resources, households also lose the fodder, fruits and wild foods that buffer nutrition. By generating year-round employment in nursery raising, planting, protection, harvesting and processing, and by supplying raw material to cottage and forest-based industries, social forestry can lift incomes appreciably and slow distress migration to the cities (Wang et al., 2023). Figure 1 summarises the socio-economic and forest profile within which these dynamics unfold.

1.3 Socio-Economic Profile of Chhattisgarh

Chhattisgarh is a predominantly rural, tribal and forest-dependent state. Approximately 77 per cent of its people live in rural areas and about 30.6 per cent belong to Scheduled Tribes, one of the highest such proportions among major Indian states (Census of India, 2011). The economy rests heavily on agriculture and forest-based activities, and although the state is richly endowed with minerals and industrial potential, growth has been spatially concentrated in the Raipur-Durg-Bhilai corridor, leaving large tribal belts low-income and agriculture-dependent. Table 1 consolidates the principal indicators, and Figure 1 renders the sharp rural-urban divide in multidimensional poverty that characterises the state.

Table 1. Socio-economic and forest profile of Chhattisgarh.

Indicator	Value	Source
Total geographical area	135,192 km²	Census of India (2011)
Forest cover (2023)	~55,812 km² (~44% of area)	Forest Survey of India (2024)
Rank in forest cover among states	3rd largest in India	Forest Survey of India (2024)
Increase in forest & tree cover (2021-23)	+684 km² (highest in India)	Forest Survey of India (2024)
Rural population	~77%	Census of India (2011)
Scheduled Tribe population	30.6%	Census of India (2011)
Rural multidimensional poverty	~44% (urban ~12%)	Jagger et al. (2022)
Share of national tendu-leaf output	~20% (16.72 lakh std bags)	Tekam et al. (2025)
Principal NTFPs	Tendu, mahua, sal seed, chironji, lac, honey, bamboo	Gour (2026)
Key livelihoods	Agriculture, forestry & NTFP collection	Census of India (2011)

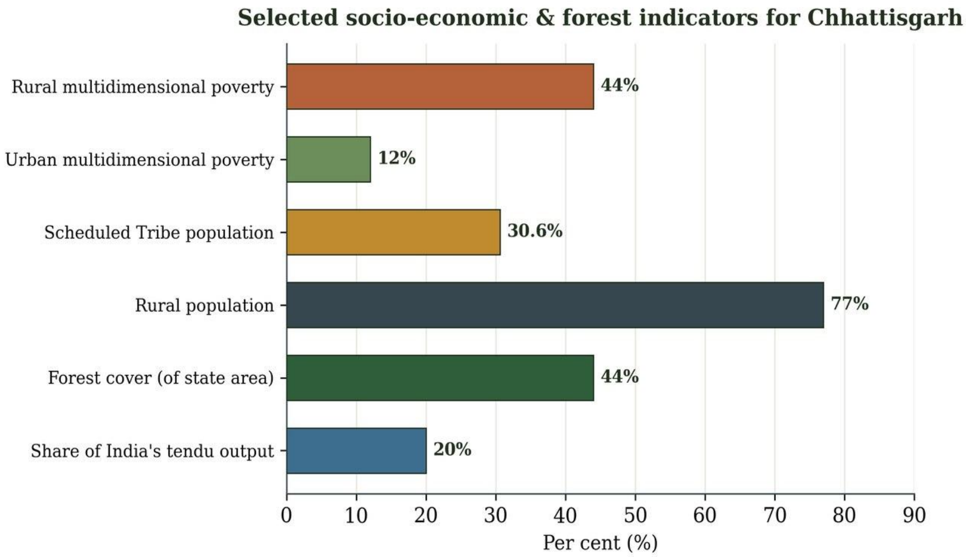


Figure 1. Selected socio-economic and forest indicators for Chhattisgarh, highlighting the pronounced rural-urban gap in multidimensional poverty and the state's heavy reliance on forests, tribal populations and NTFPs such as tendu leaves (compiled from Census of India, 2011; Forest Survey of India, 2024; and Tekam et al., 2025).

1.4 Livelihood-Security Challenges in Rural Communities

Livelihood-security challenges in rural Chhattisgarh are rooted in a combination of structural deprivation, agrarian distress and infrastructural deficit, and they fall disproportionately on tribal communities. Multiple assessments indicate that a large share of the state's population lives below the poverty line, with rural areas faring markedly worse than urban ones. Multidimensional poverty analyses suggest that roughly 44 per cent of rural residents are multidimensionally poor, compared with about 12 per cent of urban residents, meaning that poor village households experience simultaneous deprivation in health, education and basic services (Jagger et al., 2022). Indigenous and forest-dependent communities in districts such as Bastar, Bijapur and Dantewada record the highest poverty headcounts and intensity.

Low per-capita income compounds this picture. The state's nominal per-capita income sits appreciably below the national average, and rural poverty is reinforced by low-productivity agriculture, limited off-farm employment and weak connectivity. Social protection schemes such as subsidised food distribution and guaranteed wage employment reduce extreme hunger but do not fully close the income gap, leaving rural households exposed to shocks from crop failure, health crises or the loss of forest-based income (Wang et al., 2023). Three interlocking challenges deserve emphasis. First, agricultural vulnerability: tribal and smallholder farmers face constrained access to quality seed, fertiliser, irrigation and credit, and frequent crop losses to pests, disease and climate variability (Abera et al., 2025). Second, poor infrastructure and market access: many villages lack all-weather roads, storage and transport, depressing farm-gate prices and restricting non-farm opportunity. Third, dependence on forests and NTFPs coupled with insecure access: Adivasi communities rely heavily on forest produce, yet access restrictions and commercial encroachment undermine their traditional livelihoods (Vedeld et al., 2007; Angelsen et al., 2014). It is precisely at this intersection of poverty, forest dependence and insecure tenure that social forestry is expected to intervene.

2. Concept, Objectives and Typology of Social Forestry

2.1 Conceptual Foundations

Social forestry refers to the planned management, conservation and development of tree and forest resources with the active participation of local communities, particularly in rural and tribal areas. Its defining feature is the deliberate cultivation of trees on non-forest and degraded lands to meet everyday requirements, chiefly fuelwood, fodder and small timber, while advancing environmental sustainability. The concept arose to reduce excessive dependence on natural forests and to enlist communities as partners in, rather than adversaries of, resource management (Rajesh, 2024). Social forestry therefore serves ecological and socio-economic purposes simultaneously, which is the source of both its appeal and its complexity. As Figure 2 illustrates, it functions as an integrating pathway that converts land, institutions and planting material into economic, social and environmental benefits that ultimately converge on livelihood security.

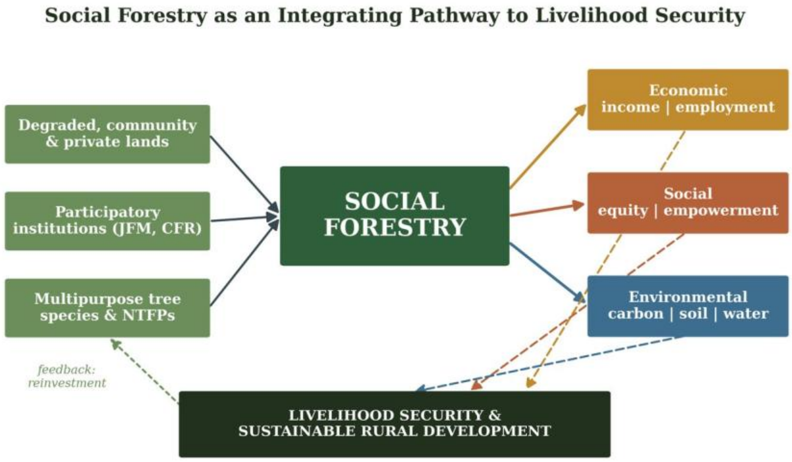


Figure 2. Social forestry as an integrating pathway to livelihood security: degraded, community and private lands, participatory institutions and multipurpose species are converted into economic, social and environmental benefits that converge on sustainable rural development, with reinvested returns feeding back into the system.

2.2 Objectives of Social Forestry

The objectives of social forestry can be grouped under five headings. The first is the provision of basic resources: a sustainable and decentralised supply of fuelwood, fodder and small timber that reduces the time and effort, borne largely by women and children, of collecting these materials from distant forests. By relocating production to community lands, farm boundaries, roadsides and degraded plots, social forestry lessens overexploitation of natural stands (Suleiman et al., 2017). The second objective is employment generation. Nursery establishment, seed collection, planting, maintenance, protection and harvesting are labour-intensive, offering both seasonal and longer-term work to landless and marginalised households, and stimulating small forest-based enterprises in bamboo craft, fuelwood and NTFP processing (Dwivedi et al., 2019).

The third objective is the reduction of pressure on natural forests. By supplying fuel, fodder and timber from trees grown outside reserved forests, social forestry creates accessible substitutes that allow natural stands to regenerate and to continue delivering habitat and carbon-storage functions (Chazdon, 2008). The fourth objective is the enhancement of ecological stability: plantations stabilise soils, curb erosion, add organic matter, moderate microclimate and provide habitat, and they are especially valuable in reclaiming degraded and mining-affected landscapes (Crouzeilles et al., 2016; Shimamoto et al., 2018). The fifth objective is the promotion of participatory management, in which communities help plan, implement and monitor forestry activities. Participation fosters ownership and accountability, blends traditional ecological knowledge with scientific practice, and, where genuinely inclusive, improves both equity and ecological outcomes (Ostrom, 1990; Agarwal, 2009).

2.3 Types of Social Forestry

Social forestry is conventionally classified by land tenure and management arrangement into four principal types, compared in Table 2 and depicted in Figure 3. Farm forestry denotes the cultivation of trees on privately owned agricultural land, along field boundaries, as shelterbelts or interspersed within crops. It meets farmers' own needs for fuelwood, fodder and timber, generates supplementary income from surplus produce, improves soil structure and microclimate, and diversifies risk against crop failure. Community forestry involves the collective management of tree resources on village commons, panchayat lands and other community-owned areas, with benefits shared among members; by empowering communities to steward nearby forests, it can curb illegal extraction and regenerate degraded land, although its success hinges on inclusive governance that guards against elite capture (Thoms, 2008; Persson & Prowse, 2017).

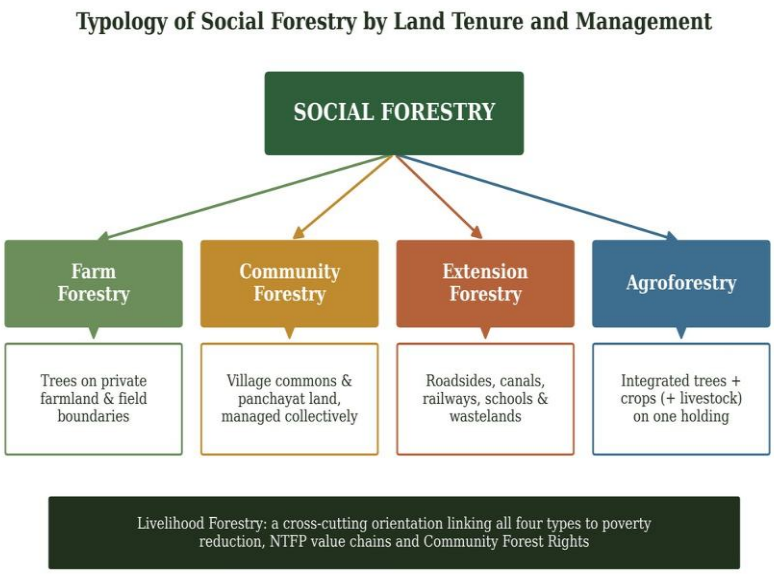


Figure 3. The four principal types of social forestry classified by land tenure and management arrangement, with livelihood forestry shown as a cross-cutting orientation that links all four to poverty reduction, NTFP value chains and Community Forest Rights.

Extension forestry comprises plantations on public and institutional lands outside traditional forests, along roadsides, railway lines, canal banks, school premises and wastelands, expanding tree cover, improving amenity and utilising otherwise unproductive land. Agroforestry is an integrated land-use system that combines trees, crops and sometimes livestock on the same holding, creating complementary interactions: leguminous trees fix nitrogen and improve fertility, canopies moderate temperature and conserve moisture, and the mix of products diversifies income while raising resilience to climatic variability (Abera et al., 2025; Duffy et al., 2021). Cutting across these categories is what may be termed livelihood forestry, a poverty- and rights-oriented approach that links forestry explicitly to household well-being. In Chhattisgarh this orientation is expressed through the strengthening of NTFP collection and marketing, often via cooperatives and producer federations, and through the recognition of community forest rights so that Gram Sabhas can manage nearby forests and reinvest returns in village development (Gour, 2026).

Table 2. Comparison of the four principal types of social forestry.

Type	Land base / tenure	Primary objective	Typical components	Main beneficiaries
Farm forestry	Private farmland; field boundaries	Household needs plus surplus income; risk diversification	Teak, eucalyptus, poplar, fruit and fodder trees	Individual farmers
Community forestry	Village commons, panchayat land	Collective supply of fuelwood, fodder, MFP; regeneration	Mixed native species; sal, bamboo	Whole village community
Extension forestry	Roadsides, canals, railways, wastelands	Expand tree cover; amenity; use idle public land	Avenue and shelterbelt species; babul, siris	General public; institutions
Agroforestry	Cropland (integrated with crops/livestock)	Diversified output; fertility; resilience	Leguminous trees, fruit trees, crops, fodder	Farming households

3. Social Forestry and the Structure of Livelihood Security

Livelihood security derived from social forestry improves rural well-being along three interdependent dimensions: economic stability, social development and environmental sustainability. Rather than acting as isolated benefits, these dimensions reinforce one another, producing a multi-layered impact that extends well beyond cash income. The sections below examine each in turn before considering their integrated effect.

3.1 Economic Benefits

The clearest economic contribution of social forestry is income diversification. Rural households in Chhattisgarh combine agriculture with forest-based activities, and minor forest produce such as tendu leaves, mahua flowers, sal seed, chironji, amla and bamboo supplies vital supplementary income during agricultural lean seasons (Vedeld et al., 2007; Maitry et al., 2022; Priyadarshi et al., 2025). The magnitude of this contribution is well established in the comparative literature. A meta-analysis of fifty-one case studies across seventeen countries found that forest environmental income accounts for about 22 per cent of total household income on average (Vedeld et al., 2007), while the Poverty Environment Network's analysis of roughly 8,000 households in twenty-four countries put environmental income at around 28 per cent, most of it from natural forests (Angelsen et al., 2014). Studies in Nigeria, Ethiopia and the Horn of Africa report shares ranging from the low teens to well over a third (Suleiman et al., 2017; Abate et al., 2025; Derebe et al., 2023), and Indian evidence from Jharkhand and Chhattisgarh falls squarely within this band (Priyadarshi et al., 2025; Tekam et al., 2025). Figure 4 places these estimates side by side and highlights the widely observed 20-40 per cent contribution range.

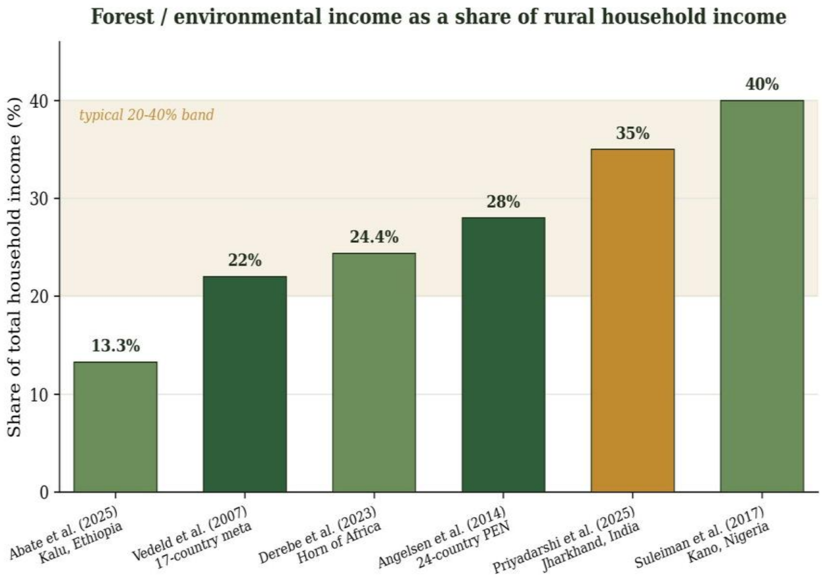


Figure 4. Forest and environmental income as a share of total rural household income across selected empirical studies, illustrating the widely observed 20-40 per cent contribution band into which Indian NTFP economies also fall (values drawn from the cited studies).

Employment generation is the second economic benefit. Social forestry sustains both seasonal and longer-term work through nursery raising, planting, and the harvesting and processing of forest produce, and such opportunities are especially significant in tribal regions where alternatives are scarce (Bijaya et al., 2016). Third, forest income makes a substantial contribution to the household economy: forest resources can account for one-fifth to two-fifths of total household income in forest-dependent communities, helping families meet food, health and education needs (Vedeld et al., 2007; Nerfa et al., 2019). Fourth, value addition and rural enterprise multiply these gains. Processing forest products into mahua-based foods, bamboo handicrafts and herbal preparations raises market value, builds skills and nurtures cottage industry; bamboo alone can yield attractive returns from otherwise marginal land while generating tradable carbon credits (Dwivedi et al., 2019; Lee et al., 2021; Alamerew et al., 2024). Value chains organised through Gram Sabhas, as in the community forest rights villages of Gadchiroli, have eliminated exploitative intermediaries and returned fairer prices to collectors (Gour, 2026). Fifth, forest resources provide financial resilience, functioning as a safety net during crop failure, drought or market shocks and thereby reducing distress migration (Jagger et al., 2022; Wang et al., 2023).

3.2 Social Outcomes

Beyond income, social forestry generates significant social value. It contributes to poverty reduction by providing both subsistence support and regular earnings, and it is particularly effective in uplifting marginalised and tribal populations (Wang et al., 2023). Its effect on women's empowerment is especially notable. Women are central to the collection, processing and marketing of forest produce, and their active participation strengthens both household income and their own decision-making authority. Organising women into self-help groups fosters financial independence, skill development and collective action, echoing wider Indian evidence that self-help group membership and microfinance advance women's socio-economic standing and progress towards the Sustainable Development Goals (Pandhare et al., 2024; Kandpal, 2022; Basak et al., 2024). These findings align with the seminal argument of Agarwal (2001, 2009) that gender-inclusive forest governance is not merely equitable but efficient: groups with a higher proportion of women on their executive committees achieve significantly better forest protection and regeneration, an effect echoed in analyses of Joint Forest Management across central India (Agrawal et al., 2019) and in studies of co-management elsewhere in South Asia (Begum et al., 2024).

Social forestry also strengthens community institutions. It encourages the formation and functioning of JFM committees and community forest groups that involve local people in decisions about protection and use, fostering cooperation, resolving resource conflicts and improving transparency and accountability in grassroots governance (Majhi, 2016; Thoker et al., 2024). Where such institutions embody the design principles associated with durable commons governance, clear boundaries, congruent rules, participatory decision-making and effective monitoring, they sustain both resource condition and collective benefit (Ostrom, 1990; Berkes, 2010). Finally, forest-based livelihoods help preserve the cultural fabric of tribal communities. Indigenous knowledge of plant use, sacred groves, seasonal calendars and sustainable harvesting continues to structure resource management, and its integration with scientific practice strengthens both conservation and cultural continuity (Sinthumule, 2023; Osie, 2026; Silva et al., 2024).

3.3 Environmental Outcomes

The environmental contribution of social forestry is equally substantial. By encouraging protection, regeneration and the restoration of degraded lands with diverse species, it supports biodiversity conservation; communities that depend directly on these resources are more likely to adopt conservation-oriented practices, improving habitat quality and ecosystem resilience (Chazdon, 2008; Shimamoto et al., 2018). Tree cover also delivers important soil and water conservation services. Roots bind the soil and reduce wind and water erosion, litter enriches organic matter, and improved infiltration enhances groundwater recharge; global syntheses confirm that afforestation and other biological soil-conservation techniques markedly reduce soil loss and runoff and, over time, restore infiltration and sediment regulation towards the levels of native forest (Xiong et al., 2018; Bonnesoeur et al., 2019; Francois et al., 2024).

Climate-change mitigation is a further benefit of growing prominence. Forests act as carbon sinks, and by expanding tree cover outside reserved forests, social forestry, and agroforestry in particular, sequesters carbon in biomass and soil while reducing pressure on natural stands (Baretha et al., 2022; Maitry et al., 2023). Reported sequestration rates for agroforestry span a wide range, from below 0.3 to more than 15 Mg C per hectare per year, with multistrata home-gardens and silvopastoral systems storing the most (Ghale et al., 2022; Chauhan et al., 2025; Yasin et al., 2023). Figure 5 summarises this variation across system types. These carbon services are increasingly monetisable: results-based payments and voluntary carbon markets can, in principle, reward community-controlled forests, although realising such benefits depends on secure tenure, robust measurement and equitable finance (Bluffstone et al., 2013; Morita et al., 2023). More broadly, the provisioning, regulating and cultural services that social forests supply can be valued explicitly, and doing so strengthens the economic case for community-based management (Zandebasiri et al., 2025; Ali et al., 2025; Nepal et al., 2025).

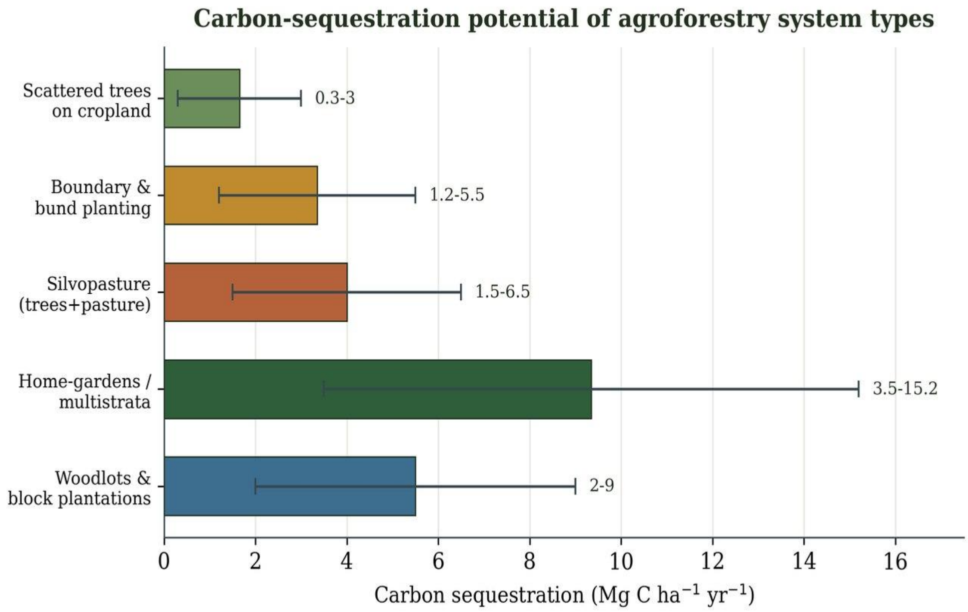


Figure 5. Indicative carbon-sequestration potential of the major agroforestry system types (Mg C ha^{-1} yr^{-1}); multistrata home-gardens store the most, consistent with global syntheses. Bars show representative midpoints and whiskers the reported ranges (after Ghale et al., 2022, and Chauhan et al., 2025).

A final environmental outcome is the institutionalisation of sustainable resource use. Community involvement encourages regulated harvesting, replanting and conservation measures that prevent overexploitation and secure long-term availability, striking a workable balance between utilisation and conservation (Rakatama & Pandit, 2020).

3.4 Integrated Impact

Taken together, these economic, social and environmental effects constitute an integrated model of sustainable development. In a state such as Chhattisgarh, where a large population depends directly on natural resources, social forestry reduces household vulnerability through diversified income and improved access to essential goods, enhances resilience to climatic and economic shocks, and strengthens the community institutions that underpin collective action. By actively involving marginalised and tribal populations, and by explicitly incorporating women, it fosters inclusive growth and a more equitable distribution of benefits, aligning local development with several of the Sustainable Development Goals (Wang et al., 2023; Basak et al., 2024).

4. Governance, Policy Architecture and Institutional Challenges

The performance of social forestry ultimately depends on the governance architecture within which it operates. This section outlines that architecture, examines the principal implementation barriers, assesses the flagship Green India Mission and allied interventions, and draws lessons from comparative international experience.

4.1 Policy Evolution and Institutional Architecture

Social forestry in India is delivered through a multi-tier institutional structure resting on a substantial legal and policy backbone, summarised in Table 3 and depicted in Figure 6. At the national level, the Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change sets policy, the Forest Survey of India monitors forest cover, and the National Mission for a Green India channels restoration finance (Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, 2014; Forest Survey of India, 2024).

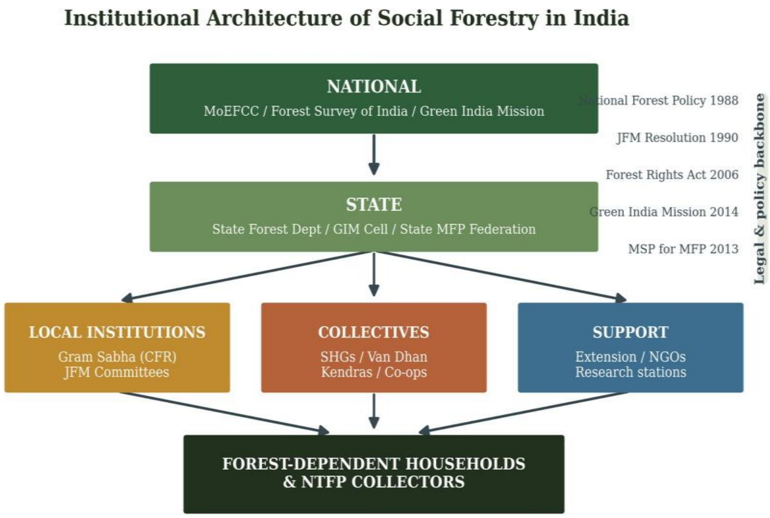


Figure 6. The multi-tier institutional architecture through which social forestry is delivered in India, from national agencies through state departments to local institutions, collectives and support organisations, all underpinned by a legal and policy backbone spanning the National Forest Policy of 1988 to the Green India Mission.

State forest departments, their Green India Mission cells and state minor-forest-produce federations translate policy into programmes. At the local level, Gram Sabhas exercising community forest rights, JFM committees, self-help groups, Van Dhan Vikas Kendras and cooperatives organise collection, protection and value addition, delivering benefits to forest-dependent households and NTFP collectors. The legal backbone spans the National Forest Policy of 1988, the 1990 JFM resolution, the Panchayats (Extension to Scheduled Areas) Act of 1996, the Forest Rights Act of 2006, the 2013 scheme of minimum support prices for minor forest produce and the Green India Mission (Niranjan Raj et al., 2024; Roshni, 2025).

Table 3. Key policy and institutional instruments shaping social forestry in India.

Instrument / programme	Year	Focus	Relevance to livelihoods
National Forest Policy	1988	People's participation; meeting local needs	Reoriented forestry towards communities
Joint Forest Management resolution	1990	Co-management of degraded forests	Usufruct sharing with village committees
PESA Act (Scheduled Areas)	1996	Gram Sabha authority in Scheduled Areas	Local control over minor forest produce
Forest Rights Act (FRA)	2006	Individual & community forest rights	Tenure security; Community Forest Rights
MSP for Minor Forest Produce	2013	Minimum support prices for MFP	Price stability for collectors
National Mission for a Green India	2014	Forest/tree cover + ecosystem services	Restoration linked to household income
Van Dhan Vikas Yojana	2018	Value addition of MFP via SHGs	Enterprise and women's employment

4.2 Implementation Barriers

Three implementation barriers recur across the evidence. The first concerns land and tenure rights. In many forested and rural areas, communities lack clearly defined legal entitlements over land and forest resources. Although the Forest Rights Act of 2006 was enacted to recognise and secure the rights of forest-dwelling communities, its implementation has been slow, inconsistent and uneven, with high rates of claim rejection in some districts (Mathew, 2019; Roshni, 2025). Insecure tenure discourages households from investing time and resources in tree planting, whose benefits accrue only over years, and it can precipitate conflict between communities and forest authorities. The comparative literature is unambiguous that tenure security is a precondition for both sustained investment and equitable benefit (Bluffstone et al., 2013; Wong et al., 2020; Shah et al., 2021). Where the Act has been implemented well, as in parts of Gadchiroli, community forest rights have transformed the local forest economy (Gour, 2026).

The second barrier is limited market access. Many forest-dependent communities depend on intermediaries to sell minor forest produce, and in the absence of organised markets, storage and transport they receive only a fraction of final value. Fluctuating prices and the absence of price stability further discourage sustained engagement (Priyadarshi et al., 2025). Value-chain analyses of bamboo and other NTFPs show that local producers often capture a small share of final value unless processing and marketing are reorganised in their favour (Lee et al., 2021). The third barrier is a deficit of awareness and technical support. Communities are frequently under-informed about sustainable management practices, modern plantation techniques and the provisions of relevant schemes, and they lack training in value addition, processing and marketing. Strengthening extension, capacity building and technical support is therefore essential to translate resource access into durable livelihood gains (Abera et al., 2025; Thoker et al., 2024).

4.3 The Green India Mission and Allied Interventions

The National Mission for a Green India is the principal contemporary vehicle for social and restoration forestry. It aims to increase forest and tree cover on some five million hectares and to improve the quality of forest cover on a further five million hectares, while enhancing ecosystem services, including carbon sequestration, biodiversity and hydrological regulation, and raising forest-based household incomes (Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, 2014). Its emphasis on community participation in the restoration of degraded forests reflects the now-settled understanding that local involvement is indispensable for durable outcomes (Chazdon, 2008; Crouzeilles et al., 2016).

Implementation has yielded real gains, including expanded plantation and afforestation activity, employment generation in rural and tribal areas, and greater awareness of forest conservation. Yet several constraints persist. Delays in the allocation and disbursement of funds slow implementation and disrupt the continuity of planting and maintenance; the involvement of communities in planning and decision-making often remains limited, weakening ownership; and monitoring and evaluation mechanisms are frequently too weak to assess impact or ensure accountability. Allied interventions, spanning afforestation, wage employment and the procurement of minor forest produce at minimum support prices, aim to strengthen the economic and ecological dimensions of social forestry, but their effectiveness is diluted by poor inter-departmental coordination, limited transparency, inadequate storage, transport and processing infrastructure, and weak grassroots capacity. Comparative studies of social forestry schemes in Indonesia reach strikingly similar conclusions, identifying economic opportunity as the principal benefit and institutional and environmental weaknesses as the principal constraints (Rakatama & Pandit, 2020; Wong et al., 2020).

4.4 Lessons from Comparative Experience

International experience offers instructive parallels and cautions. Nepal's community forestry programme is widely regarded as a success in participatory governance and forest regeneration, yet critical assessments show that elite capture, inequitable benefit-sharing and the exclusion of the poorest can blunt its livelihood impact, so that improved forest condition does not automatically translate into improved welfare for the most marginalised (Thoms, 2008; Bijaya et al., 2016; Shahi et al., 2022). Studies of collective action in Cambodia and Central America underline that devolution succeeds only when local institutions are adequately supported and protected from excessive bureaucratic and political pressure (Persson & Prowse, 2017; Butler et al., 2021). The historical controversy over eucalyptus in South Asian social forestry is a further cautionary tale: monocultures introduced without regard for community needs provoked social protest and delivered benefits mainly to industrial users rather than the rural poor (Casson, 1997). For Chhattisgarh, the lesson is that participatory structures must be genuinely inclusive, benefit-sharing genuinely equitable and species choice genuinely responsive to local needs if social forestry is to fulfil its livelihood promise.

5. Strategies and Recommendations

Strengthening social forestry in Chhattisgarh requires an integrated combination of community-based capacity building, institutional support and policy reform. Table 4 maps the principal challenges onto corresponding strategic responses; the discussion below elaborates the two most important clusters.

Table 4. Key challenges in social forestry and corresponding strategic responses.

Challenge	Manifestation	Strategic response
Insecure land tenure	Slow, uneven FRA implementation; claim rejections; conflict	Time-bound FRA titling; recognition of Community Forest Rights
Weak market access	Dependence on middlemen; price volatility; low value capture	Organised markets; MSP for MFP; producer federations; e-marketing
Low awareness & technical capacity	Limited knowledge of schemes, techniques and value addition	Extension services; training; Van Dhan value-addition centres
Institutional inefficiency	Fund delays; weak monitoring; poor coordination	Timely finance; robust monitoring & evaluation; inter-departmental convergence
Gender & equity gaps	Under-representation of women and the poorest; elite capture	Mandated women's representation; SHGs; inclusive benefit-sharing
Climate & ecological risk	Erratic monsoons; monoculture vulnerability	Diverse native species; agroforestry; climate-resilient planning

5.1 Capacity Building and Community Participation

Capacity building is fundamental to empowering communities to manage forest resources sustainably. Targeted skill development, in sustainable harvesting, nursery raising, scientific plantation and the value addition and processing of minor forest produce, raises both productivity and returns while conserving the resource base (Abera et al., 2025; Alamerew et al., 2024). Awareness and education programmes are equally important, informing communities of their rights under the Forest Rights Act, the provisions of relevant schemes and the principles of sustainable management; better-informed communities participate more fully and use resources more responsibly (Mathew, 2019). Strengthening local institutions such as JFM committees and self-help groups promotes collective decision-making and equitable benefit-sharing, and improves transparency and accountability (Ostrom, 1990; Majhi, 2016). Special emphasis should be placed on women's participation, since women are the primary collectors and users of forest resources and their involvement improves both equity and effectiveness (Agarwal, 2009; Pandhare et al., 2024). Finally, promoting community-based enterprises in bamboo craft, mahua processing and herbal products adds value locally, reduces dependence on the sale of raw produce and anchors income within the village economy (Dwivedi et al., 2019; Gour, 2026).

5.2 Policy Reforms for Enhanced Livelihood Security

Policy reform must address the structural barriers identified above. Securing land tenure through the effective, time-bound implementation of the Forest Rights Act is the foundation, since it underwrites long-term investment and reduces conflict (Niranjan Raj et al., 2024; Roshni, 2025). Improving market access, by developing organised and transparent markets, ensuring minimum support prices for minor forest produce and reducing the role of intermediaries, would stabilise incomes and reward sustained participation (Priyadarshi et al., 2025). Investment in value addition and infrastructure, including processing units, storage, transport and training centres, would raise the economic value of forest produce, cut post-harvest losses and create rural employment (Lee et al., 2021). Existing programmes such as the Green India Mission should be strengthened through the timely release of funds, greater transparency and deeper community participation (Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, 2014). Above all, social forestry should be integrated with allied rural-development programmes in employment, agriculture, agroforestry and climate adaptation, so that convergence avoids duplication and generates synergies across the sustainable-livelihoods portfolio (Scoones, 1998; Natarajan et al., 2022).

6. Linkage between Social Forestry and Sustainable Livelihoods

Social forestry links directly to sustainable livelihoods by combining ecological restoration with rural income generation. When communities manage trees on village commons, forest fringes and degraded lands, they gain access to fuelwood, fodder, timber and non-timber forest products that diversify income and reduce dependence on fragile natural forests. Participation in schemes such as Joint Forest Management and community-forest-rights-based interventions also creates local employment, strengthens community institutions and builds long-term resilience, especially for tribal and forest-dependent households (Angelsen et al., 2014; Shahi et al., 2022). Four mechanisms make this linkage concrete. First, diversification of income reduces reliance on low-yield rainfed agriculture by adding NTFP collection and off-farm forestry work to the household portfolio, enhancing financial stability (Vedeld et al., 2007). Second, social forestry delivers an ecological-economic double benefit, simultaneously improving forest cover, soil fertility and water retention and producing marketable goods (Bonnesoeur et al., 2019; Ghale et al., 2022).

Third, social forestry provides seasonal livelihood security. Activities such as tendu-leaf collection and NTFP gathering bridge the hungry gap between crop cycles, which is critical in the tribal-dominated regions of Chhattisgarh where forests serve as a subsistence safety net during lean seasons (Priyadarshi et al., 2025; Tekam et al., 2025). Fourth, social forestry advances empowerment and rights by reinforcing community control over resources and promoting participatory governance; the recognition of community forest rights reduces exploitation by intermediaries, ensures fairer distribution of benefits and channels forest income into village development (Agarwal, 2001; Gour, 2026). In each of these ways, social forestry embodies the sustainable-livelihoods principle that durable rural welfare arises from secure access to a diversified asset base governed by robust local institutions (Scoones, 1998; Ostrom, 1990).

7. Conclusion

Social forestry has proven to be an effective approach to the intertwined challenges of livelihood insecurity, environmental degradation and rural poverty in Chhattisgarh. By promoting participatory forest management and extending tree cover beyond reserved forests, it delivers income diversification, employment generation and greater household resilience, while its NTFP-based and value-added enterprises have measurably improved the socio-economic conditions of tribal and marginalised communities. At the same time, it strengthens ecological sustainability by conserving biodiversity, improving soil and water resources and contributing to climate-change mitigation through carbon sequestration. The participatory character of these programmes has empowered communities, reinforced local institutions and, where women have been genuinely included, improved both equity and conservation outcomes. Yet persistent challenges, insecure land rights, weak market linkages, inadequate infrastructure and gaps in policy implementation, continue to constrain its effectiveness.

Realising the full potential of social forestry will require comprehensive reform: secure land tenure through the effective implementation of the Forest Rights Act, transparent and remunerative markets for forest produce, sustained investment in capacity building and value-addition infrastructure, and the genuine integration of social forestry with the wider rural-development and climate agenda. The comparative evidence cautions that devolution succeeds only when local institutions are inclusive, adequately supported and equitable in benefit-sharing. On these conditions, social forestry stands as a sustainable and inclusive pathway for rural development, capable of achieving economic growth, social equity and environmental conservation simultaneously when it is underpinned by strong governance and active community participation.

References

Abate, H. Y., et al. (2025). Non-timber forest products and their income contributions to rural households in Kalu District, Northeast Ethiopia. Journal of Landscape Ecology, 18(1).

Abera, A., et al. (2025). Agroforestry practices, adoption factors, and livelihood contributions among smallholder farmers in Didu District, Southwestern Ethiopia. Journal of Agriculture and Food Research, 19.

Agarwal, B. (2001). Participatory exclusions, community forestry, and gender: An analysis for South Asia and a conceptual framework. World Development, 29(10), 1623-1648.

Agarwal, B. (2009). Gender and forest conservation: The impact of women's participation in community forest governance. Ecological Economics, 68(11), 2785-2799.

Agrawal, A., et al. (2019). Decentralization and environmental conservation: Gender effects from participation in Joint Forest Management. International Food Policy Research Institute (CAPRi Working Paper).

Alamerew, A., et al. (2024). A way for livelihood improvement: Systematic review on bamboo forest research. Trees, Forests and People, 15.

Ali, F. S. M., et al. (2025). Valuing ecosystem services in Sudan: A participatory study of the Okalma Reserved Forest. Trees, Forests and People, 19.

Angelsen, A., Jagger, P., Babigumira, R., Belcher, B., Hogarth, N. J., Bauch, S., Borner, J., Smith-Hall, C., & Wunder, S. (2014). Environmental income and rural livelihoods: A global-comparative analysis. World Development, 64(S1), S12-S28.

Baretha, G., Maitry, A., & Shah, P. (2022). Assisted natural regeneration: a tool for ecosystem service benefits to achieve sustainable development goals. Patil G. Ecosystem services with sustainable development. New Delhi: International Research Academic Publication, 91-99.

Basak, D., et al. (2024). Role of self-help groups on socioeconomic development and the achievement of Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) among rural women in Cooch Behar District, India. Regional Sustainability, 5(2).

Begum, F., et al. (2024). What factors influence women's participation in co-management? A case study of Sundarban mangrove forest management in Bangladesh. Journal of Environmental Planning and Management, 67(6).

Berkes, F. (2010). Devolution of environment and resources governance: Trends and future. Environmental Conservation, 37(4), 489-500.

Bijaya, G. C. D., et al. (2016). Community forestry and livelihood in Nepal: A review. Journal of Animal and Plant Sciences, 26(1), 1-12.

Bluffstone, R., et al. (2013). REDD+ and community-controlled forests in low-income countries: Any hope for a linkage? Ecological Economics, 87, 43-52.

Bonnesoeur, V., et al. (2019). Impacts of forests and forestation on hydrological services in the Andes: A systematic review. Forest Ecology and Management, 433, 569-584.

Butler, M., et al. (2021). Relationship between community capitals and governance: The perspective of local actors in the Maya Biosphere Reserve. World Development Perspectives, 22.

Casson, A. (1997). The controversy surrounding eucalypts in social forestry programs of Asia. National Centre for Development Studies, Australian National University.

Census of India. (2011). Primary census abstract: Chhattisgarh. Office of the Registrar General & Census Commissioner, Government of India.

Chauhan, S., et al. (2025). Carbon dynamics in agroforestry systems: Implications for climate change mitigation and adaptation. International Journal of Environment and Climate Change, 15(2).

Chazdon, R. L. (2008). Beyond deforestation: Restoring forests and ecosystem services on degraded lands. Science, 320(5882), 1458-1460.

Crouzeilles, R., Curran, M., Ferreira, M. S., Lindenmayer, D. B., Grelle, C. E. V., & Rey Benayas, J. M. (2016). A global meta-analysis on the ecological drivers of forest restoration success. Nature Communications, 7, 11666.

Derebe, B., et al. (2023). Non-timber forest product types and its income contribution to rural households in the Horn of Africa: A systematic review. Forest Science and Technology, 19(3).

Duffy, C., et al. (2021). Agroforestry contributions to smallholder farmer food security in Indonesia. Agroforestry Systems, 95, 1109-1124.

Dwivedi, A. K., et al. (2019). Bamboo as a complementary crop to address climate change and livelihoods - Insights from India. Forest Policy and Economics, 102, 66-74.

Forest Survey of India. (2024). India state of forest report 2023. Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, Government of India.

Francois, M., et al. (2024). Interactions between forest cover and watershed hydrology: A conceptual meta-analysis. Water, 16(9).

Ghale, B., et al. (2022). Carbon sequestration potential of agroforestry systems and its potential in climate change mitigation. Water, Air, & Soil Pollution, 233.

Gour, R. (2026). Impact of minor forest produce collection and trade on the livelihoods of tribal communities in Gadchiroli District, Maharashtra. International Journal for Multidisciplinary Research, 8(1).

Jagger, P., et al. (2022). The role of forests and trees in poverty dynamics. Forest Policy and Economics, 140.

Kandpal, V. (2022). Socio-economic development through self-help groups in rural India - A qualitative study. Qualitative Research in Financial Markets, 14(5).

Lee, B.-H., et al. (2021). Assessing sustainable bamboo-based income generation using a value chain approach: Case study of Nongboua Village in Lao PDR. Forests, 12(2).

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025). Evaluating Phytoremediation Approaches for the Restoration of Degraded Ecosystems in India. Nature Environment & Pollution Technology, 24(2), 1.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., Shah, P., Baretha, G., Sharma, D., & Ramesh. (2022). Ecological and economic potential of amla (Phyllanthus emblica L.): A horticulture crop for degraded land restoration, food security and sustainable livelihood in Chhattisgarh. Chhattisgarh Journal of Science and Technology, 19(3), 123–127.

Maitry, A., Sharma, D., Shah, P., Baretha, G., & Patil, G. (2023). Assessment of wetland ecosystem services (RAWES approach) in urban settlement area: A case study of Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. Indian Journal of Ecology, 50(4), 954-962.

Majhi, B. (2016). Joint Forest Management programme in India and community participation. International Journal of Research in Economics and Social Sciences, 6(9).

Mathew, M. (2019). Tracking the status of Forest Rights Act, 2006 and its impact on the livelihood of tribal communities in Wayanad District of Kerala, India. Economic Affairs, 64(3).

Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change. (2014). National mission for a green India (GIM): Mission document. Government of India.

Morita, K., et al. (2023). Challenges and lessons learned for REDD+ finance and its governance. Carbon Balance and Management, 18(1).

Natarajan, N., Newsham, A., Rigg, J., & Suhardiman, D. (2022). A sustainable livelihoods framework for the 21st century. World Development, 155, 105898.

Nepal, P., et al. (2025). Economic valuation of ecosystem services in Bihani Community Forest, Sarlahi. Padmakanya Journal of Science and Technology, 5(1).

Nerfa, L., Rhemtulla, J. M., & Zerriffi, H. (2019). Forest dependence is more than forest income: Development of a new index of forest product collection and livelihood resources. World Development, 125, 104689.

Niranjan Raj, K., et al. (2024). Empowerment of tribal women in India: Impact of the Forest Rights Act 2006. Forum for Development Studies, 51(2).

Osie, M. (2026). Indigenous wisdom for a changing world: Bridging traditional ecological knowledge and biodiversity conservation. Tropical Conservation Science, 19.

Ostrom, E. (1990). Governing the commons: The evolution of institutions for collective action. Cambridge University Press.

Pandhare, A., et al. (2024). Transforming rural women's lives in India: The impact of microfinance and entrepreneurship on empowerment in Self-Help Groups. Journal of Innovation and Entrepreneurship, 13(1).

Persson, J., & Prowse, M. (2017). Collective action on forest governance: An institutional analysis of the Cambodian community forest system. Forest Policy and Economics, 83, 70-79.

Priyadarshi, A., et al. (2025). Economic impact of mahua (Madhuca longifolia) and tendu leaves (Diospyros melanoxylon) collection on rural livelihood: A comprehensive case study of Jharkhand. The Scientific Temper, 16(1).

Rajesh, R. (2024). Social forestry in India, age-old answer and the ultimate solution to climate change. International Journal of Science and Research (IJSR), 13(4).

Rakatama, A., & Pandit, R. (2020). Reviewing social forestry schemes in Indonesia: Opportunities and challenges. Forest Policy and Economics, 111.

Roshni, P. K. (2025). Guardians of the land: Forest Rights Act and tribal livelihoods. Journal of Contemporary Politics, 4(1).

Scoones, I. (1998). Sustainable rural livelihoods: A framework for analysis (IDS Working Paper 72). Institute of Development Studies.

Shah, P., Maitry, A., Patil, G., Sharma, D., & Ramesh. (2021). Evaluating ecosystem restoration as a solution for ecosystem service benefits, global climate change mitigation and future sustainability. Chhattisgarh Journal of Science and Technology, 18(4), 140–144.

Shahi, N., et al. (2022). Forest-people nexus in changing livelihood contexts: Evidence from community forests in Nepal. Trees, Forests and People, 8.

Shimamoto, C. Y., Padial, A. A., da Rosa, C. M., & Marques, M. C. M. (2018). Restoration of ecosystem services in tropical forests: A global meta-analysis. PLoS ONE, 13(12), e0208523.

Silva, E. C. da, et al. (2024). The importance of traditional communities in biodiversity conservation. Biodiversity and Conservation, 33.

Sinthumule, N. I. (2023). Traditional ecological knowledge and its role in biodiversity conservation: A systematic review. Frontiers in Environmental Science, 11.

Suleiman, M. S., et al. (2017). Non-timber forest products and their contribution to households' income around Falgore Game Reserve in Kano, Nigeria. Ecological Processes, 6, 23.

Tekam, K. K., et al. (2025). Linking forests to livelihoods: Tendu leaves and tribal income in Chhattisgarh, India. Archives of Current Research International, 25(2).

Thoker, I. A., et al. (2024). An appraisal of people's participation in the Joint Forest Management programme in the Kashmir Himalayas. Forest Policy and Economics, 160.

Thoms, C. A. (2008). Community control of resources and the challenge of improving local livelihoods: A critical examination of community forestry in Nepal. Geoforum, 39(3), 1452-1465.

Vedeld, P., Angelsen, A., Bojo, J., Sjaastad, E., & Berg, G. K. (2007). Forest environmental incomes and the rural poor. Forest Policy and Economics, 9(7), 869-879.

Wang, L., et al. (2023). Sustainable poverty alleviation through forests: Pathways and strategies. Science of the Total Environment, 904.

Wong, G. Y., et al. (2020). Social forestry in Southeast Asia: Evolving interests, discourses and the many notions of equity. Geoforum, 117, 246-258.

Xiong, M., et al. (2018). Effects of soil conservation techniques on water erosion control: A global analysis. Science of the Total Environment, 645, 753-760.

Yasin, G., et al. (2023). Role of traditional agroforestry systems in climate change mitigation through carbon sequestration: An investigation from the semi-arid region of Pakistan. Land, 12(2).

Zandebasiri, M., et al. (2025). Valuation of ecosystem services in Iranian protected forests: An economic approach to achieve sustainable development. Sustainable Futures, 9.

CHAPTER 7

Wood is the Rarest Material in the Universe: A Quantum and Astrophysical Perspective on Forest Biomaterials

Sudipa Priyadarshini

Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Agriculture, Indira Gandhi Krishi Vishwavidyalaya, Raipur, 492012, India

*Corresponding E-mail: priyadarshinisudipa@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Priyadarshini, S. (2026). Wood is the Rarest Material in the Universe: A Quantum and Astrophysical Perspective on Forest Biomaterials. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 121-145). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract:

While the universe is remarkably abundant in light elements and simple organic molecules, the highly organised, entropy-defying biological matrix of wood represents one of the absolute rarest materials in the cosmos. This chapter explores the astronomical anomaly of wood by rigorously integrating traditional silviculture and macroscopic forestry concepts with advanced principles of astrophysics, materials science, and quantum mechanics. The chapter first examines the deterministic evolution of inorganic minerals in comparison with the immense combinatorial complexity, high molecular assembly index, and superior Shannon information content of lignocellulosic biopolymers. The unique hierarchical, multiscale architecture of wood is then analysed, revealing how fundamental subatomic behaviours such as vibronic quantum coherence during excitonic energy transfer in photosynthesis, dynamic proton tunnelling within cellulose hydrogen bond networks, and diffuse multi-phonon Anderson localisation at the disordered cellulose-lignin interface directly dictate its macroscopic mechanical strength, physical adaptability, and superior thermal insulation properties. Furthermore, the evolutionary genesis of lignin biosynthesis is contextualised as a highly improbable, singular event in planetary terrestrialization. This biochemical milestone is proposed as a critical "Great Filter" within the framework of the Fermi Paradox, suggesting that the specific planetary availability of wood for mastering fire and initiating metallurgy may be a universal limiting factor for the emergence of technologically advanced, spacefaring civilisations. Finally, the chapter highlights the modern resurgence of wood as a cutting-edge aerospace composite, evidenced by recent orbital missions such as the LignoSat wooden CubeSat. It is argued that, through targeted nanoscale engineering, this profoundly rare biological resource can provide sustainable, high-performance solutions for deep space habitats, passive thermal management, and advanced energy storage.

Keywords: Silviculture; Quantum Biology; Lignin Terrestrialization; Phonon Anderson Localisation; Fermi Paradox; Great Filter; Extraterrestrial Biosignatures; LignoSat; Space Composites.

1. Introduction: The Concept of Rarity in Materials Science and Astrophysics

The universe is characterised by a profound elemental and structural asymmetry, a fundamental consequence of its cosmological origins and subsequent stellar evolution. When evaluating the rarity of materials, one must distinguish between the cosmic abundance of elemental building blocks and the combinatorial complexity of the macroscopic structures they form. The cosmic abundance of chemical elements is overwhelmingly dominated by the lightest atoms (Figure 1), a direct outcome of Big Bang nucleosynthesis, which occurred in the first few minutes following the inception of the expanding universe (Burbidge et al., 1957). During this primordial epoch, the rapidly expanding and cooling universe facilitated the fusion of protons and neutrons, yielding a mass fraction consisting of approximately 74% hydrogen, 25% helium, and trace amounts of lithium and deuterium (Burbidge et al., 1957; Gamow, 1948). For billions of years, the early universe was completely devoid of any element heavier than lithium (Gamow, 1948).

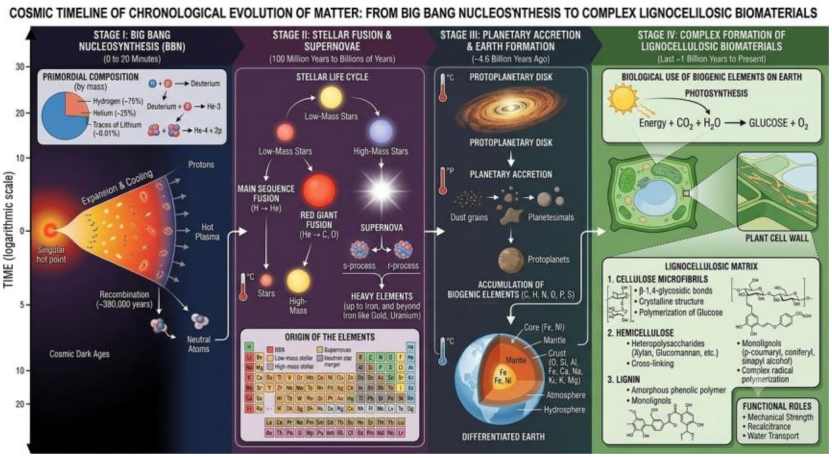


Figure 1. The cosmic timeline from Big Bang nucleosynthesis to the formation of complex lignocellulosic biomaterials.

In the 1950s and 1960s, the predominant hypothesis regarding the formation of chemical elements was the BBFH theory, named after the pioneering work of Margaret Burbidge, Geoffrey Burbidge, William Fowler, and Fred Hoyle (Burbidge et al., 1957). The BBFH theory postulated that all elements were produced either in stellar interiors or during supernova explosions (Burbidge et al., 1957). While highly successful in explaining the origin of heavy elements, the theory was fundamentally lacking in certain respects; stellar nuclear reactions alone could not account for the observed 25% mass fraction of helium, nor could they explain the presence of deuterium (^2H), which is actively destroyed inside stellar interiors (Burbidge et al., 1957). The subsequent integration of George Gamow's Big Bang nucleosynthesis models provided a complete picture (Burbidge et al., 1957). Today, after 13.8 billion years of cosmic evolution, all elements heavier than helium, astronomically termed "metals", constitute a mere 2% of the total mass of the universe

(Gamow, 1948). It is from this infinitesimally small fraction of enriched matter that planets like Earth form, offering the rich chemical diversity that eventually leads to life (Burbidge et al., 1957).

In the context of astrophysics and mineralogy, the evolution of inorganic materials on terrestrial planets follows a highly predictable, deterministic trajectory driven by thermodynamics and physical chemistry. According to the comprehensive theory of mineral evolution pioneered by Robert Hazen and his colleagues, the pre-stellar and early planetary environments contained only a handful of primitives “ur-minerals,” primarily graphite, iron, and various water ices (Cleaves et al., 2012; Hazen et al., 2008). Through successive stages of planetary accretion, fractional crystallisation, regional metamorphism, large bolide impacts, and hydrothermal alteration, the mineralogical diversity of a rocky planet like the Hadean Earth expanded to approximately 420 distinct mineral species (Hazen et al., 2008). Today, driven heavily by chemical differentiation and the oxidative power of the biosphere, Earth boasts over 5,000 distinct mineral species, with statistical models analysing the structural and chemical Shannon information per atom predicting the existence of at least 1,500 more yet to be discovered (Hazen & Ausubel, 2016; Hazen et al., 2008; Krivovichev, 2013).

The structural complexity of these inorganic materials can be quantified using mathematical frameworks such as Shannon entropy and information content metrics (Krivovichev, 2013). A highly ordered inorganic crystal lattice, such as a diamond, possesses a relatively low Shannon entropy due to its repeating, predictable tetrahedral carbon structure, which conveys a limited amount of structural information per unit cell (Krivovichev, 2013). Conversely, researchers utilising the Advanced Photon Source have identified minerals like ewingite, a uranium-based mineral found in a damp mine wall in the Czech Republic, as the most complex known mineral on Earth (Olds et al., 2017). Structural complexity can be measured in bits per unit cell; while the average mineral contains about 228 bits, ewingite measures an astonishing 12,684.86 bits per unit cell (Olds et al., 2017).

Yet, even the most complex inorganic minerals pale in comparison to the combinatorial complexity, structural specificity, and low-entropy states of biological polymers. Assembly theory, championed by researchers studying complex evolving systems, proposes a molecular assembly index (Figure 2) that measures the number of unique sequential steps theoretically required to construct a three-dimensional molecule from its constituent atomic bonds (Cronin & Walker, 2023). While abiotic heteropolyanions and complex minerals like ewingite can reach assembly indices of up to 21, the deterministic, entropy-fighting mechanisms of biological life are absolutely required to generate and sustain the highly specific, repetitive linkages found in advanced biopolymers (Cronin & Walker, 2023; Marshall et al., 2021).

Thermodynamics provides the ultimate framework for understanding this rarity. The laws of thermodynamics, particularly the second law, dictate that the usable energy in an adiabatically isolated dynamical system is always diminishing, driving the universe toward a state of maximum entropy, a uniform mix of matter where water flows downhill, matter homogenises, and wood burns into ashes (Kleidon, 2010). Life, however, represents a localised reversal of this trend. A living tree is a profound thermodynamic anomaly (Kleidon, 2010). It functions as an open system that continuously captures

solar radiation and localises it to reduce its internal entropy, thereby building highly ordered, complex structural networks (Kleidon, 2010). When a tree dies or is converted into a house, irreversible thermodynamic processes occur: entropy increases at the cellular scale as highly ordered biological structures begin to degrade or are physically discarded during milling (Kleidon, 2010). Therefore, the living, functioning biological matrix of wood possesses a lower entropy state than the processed materials derived from it, representing a peak of localised order in a universe actively hostile to complexity (Kleidon, 2010).

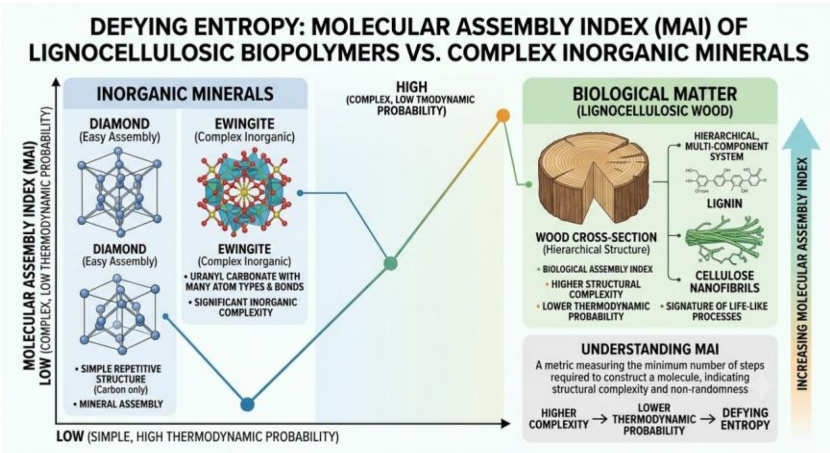


Figure 2. Defying entropy: the molecular assembly index of lignocellulosic biopolymers relative to complex inorganic minerals.

Among these biopolymers, wood stands as an exceptionally rare astronomical anomaly. The spontaneous formation of simple organic molecules, including amino acids, lipid precursors, and simple hydrocarbons, is ubiquitous across the galaxy, occurring readily in interstellar clouds, stellar ejecta, and meteorites (Cleaves et al., 2012; Hazen et al., 2008). However, the formation of wood requires a highly specific, localised sequence of planetary and evolutionary events. The spontaneous synthesis of cellulose, characterised by the precise β-(1→4) glycosidic linkages between D-glucose units, and its subsequent integration with hemicellulose and the highly complex, amorphous, cross-linked phenolic polymer known as lignin, requires complex, directed biological machinery that completely defies spontaneous abiotic assembly (Marshall et al., 2021; Weng & Chapple, 2010). Consequently, while planets, stars, and basic organic molecules exist by the billions across the cosmos, the highly organised, hierarchical composite material recognised as wood is arguably one of the rarest materials in the observable universe.

2. The Unique Architecture of Wood: Cellular to Molecular Scales

To fully comprehend the extraordinary nature and astronomical rarity of wood, it is necessary to rigorously examine its hierarchical architecture, which spans an astonishing six to eight orders of magnitude, from the macroscopic to the sub-nanometer quantum scale (Table 1) (Barnett & Bonham, 2004). Wood is an anisotropic, highly porous, three-dimensional biocomposite engineered by millions of years of natural selection to perform three primary functions in a living tree: robust mechanical support to counteract gravity and wind shear, an efficient capillary system for water and nutrient transport between the roots and leaves, and a biochemical reservoir for energy storage (Cosgrove, 2021; Weng & Chapple, 2010).

Table 1. Hierarchical structural scales of wood and their primary physical mechanisms.

Structural Scale	Characteristic Dimensions	Key Wood Components & Features	Primary Physical Mechanism
Atomic/Molecular	0.1 – 1 nm	D-glucose units, monolignols, linkages	Covalent bonding, proton tunneling, intra-sheet hydrogen bonds (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Hayakawa et al., 2017; Marais et al., 2018)
Nanoscopic	1 – 100 nm	Cellulose microfibrils, hemicellulose tethers, lignin matrix	Van der Waals forces, inter-sheet H-bonds, diffuse phonon scattering (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Hayakawa et al., 2017; Sjöström, 1993)
Microscopic	1 – 100 µm	S1, S2, S3 secondary cell wall layers, microfibril angle (MFA)	Analog coding, anisotropic mechanical strength, cell actuation (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Burgert et al., 2021; Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016)
Mesoscopic	100 µm – 1 mm	Tracheids, vessels, radial rays, vascular bundles	Capillary action, water and nutrient transport, structural porosity (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Cosgrove, 2021)
Macroscopic	> 1 mm	Annual growth rings, macroscopic defects, bulk timber	Bulk compression/tension resistance, macroscopic thermal insulation (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Zhou et al., 2020)

2.1 Chemical Composition and Molecular Assembly

The uniqueness of wood arises from the synergistic, nanoscale interaction of three principal macromolecular components: cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin, which together form a highly cross-linked and dynamic biological matrix (Figure 3) (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016).

Cellulose, comprising roughly 40% to 50% of the dry weight of wood, is a linear, unbranched homopolysaccharide consisting of repeating D-glucose units (Persson et al., 2022; Sjöström, 1993). It forms highly crystalline microfibrils that act as the structural scaffold, providing the primary tensile strength to the plant cell wall (Persson et al., 2022; Sjöström, 1993). The crystal structure of native cellulose, known as Cellulose I, exists in two distinct allomorphs: Iα (triclinic) and Iβ (monoclinic), both of which are characterised by parallel chain arrangements (Fernandes et al., 2011; Hayakawa et al., 2017). These parallel chains are stabilised by an incredibly extensive and cooperative intra-molecular and inter-molecular hydrogen bond network, which prevents the chains from slipping past one another under mechanical load (Hayakawa et al., 2017).

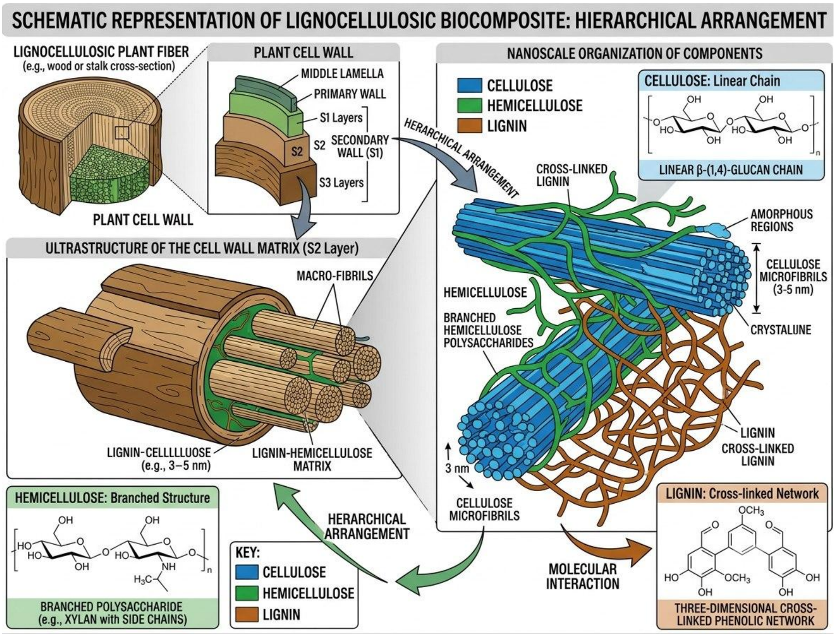


Figure 3. Nanoscale architecture of wood: the tripartite biocomposite of cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin.

Hemicellulose accounts for 20%-30% of the dry mass of wood (Zhang et al., 2023). Unlike the rigid, linear chains of cellulose, hemicelluloses are highly heterogeneous, branched polysaccharides that include varying amounts of xylans, glucomannans, and arabinogalactans, depending on the specific tree species (Zhang et al., 2023). Hemicellulose functions as a critical biochemical compatibiliser; it coats the rigid cellulose microfibrils and serves as a flexible tether, bridging the gap between the highly ordered cellulose crystals and the disordered lignin matrix (Zhang et al., 2023). This interface relies heavily on Van der Waals forces and complex hydrogen bonding, allowing the wood to absorb mechanical shocks without catastrophic brittle failure (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016; Hayakawa et al., 2017).

Lignin, constituting another 20% to 30% of the wood's mass, is a profoundly complex, optically inactive, and heavily cross-linked racemic macromolecule (Weng & Chapple, 2010; Zhang et al., 2023). It is synthesised via the polymerisation of specific phenolic precursors known as monolignols, primarily p-coumaryl, coniferyl, and sinapyl alcohols (Weng & Chapple, 2010). Lignin permeates the spaces between the cellulose and hemicellulose networks, providing immense compressive strength to the cell wall (Weng & Chapple, 2010; Zhang et al., 2023). Furthermore, lignin is inherently hydrophobic. By displacing water from the cell wall matrix, it allows the vascular tissues (xylem) to efficiently conduct water under negative pressure without leaking, while simultaneously providing a formidable biochemical barrier against enzymatic degradation by pathogenic microbes and herbivores (Holman et al., 2024; Zhang et al., 2023).

2.2 Cellular Structure and Microarchitecture

Moving up the hierarchical scale, the cellular structure of wood reveals a highly specialised microarchitecture. The secondary cell wall (SCW), which is deposited after the cell has ceased expanding and accounts for the vast bulk of the wood's mass, is typically divided into three distinct concentric layers: S1, S2, and S3 (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Zhang et al., 2023).

Among these, the S2 layer is the thickest and most structurally significant, single-handedly dominating the mechanical, thermal, and physical properties of the macroscopic wood (Barnett & Bonham, 2004; Zhang et al., 2023). Within the S2 layer, the highly crystalline cellulose microfibrils are helically wound at a specific angle relative to the longitudinal axis of the cell, a geometric parameter known as the microfibril angle (MFA) (Burgert et al., 2021; Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016). The MFA is not static; trees can actively adjust this angle during growth to alter the stiffness and flexibility of the wood in response to environmental stresses, such as prevailing winds or gravitational gradients on steep slopes.

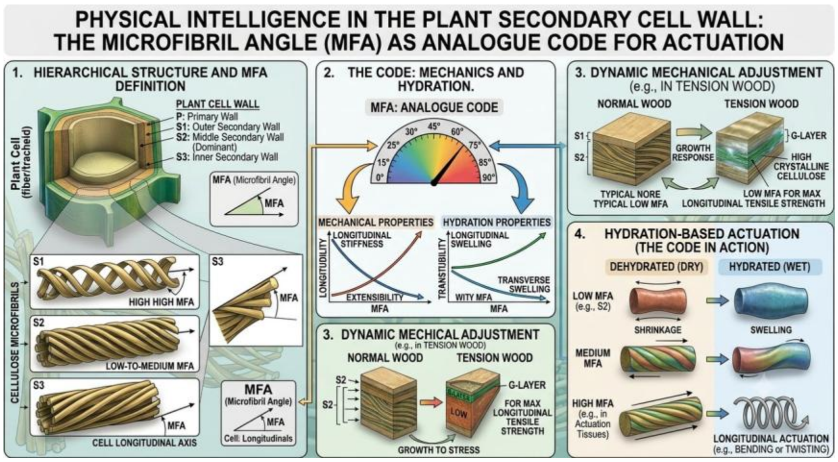


Figure 4. Physical intelligence in the secondary cell wall: the S1, S2, and S3 layers and the microfibril angle as an analogue code.

This specific orientation and density of cellulose fibrils act as what materials scientists refer to as an "analog code" (Figure 4). The microarchitecture effectively programs the material's physical response to environmental stimuli, particularly changes in ambient humidity (Burgert et al., 2021). This provides wood with physical intelligence; it is an active, responsive material capable of adapting to mechanical requirements, actuating based on the precise absorption and desorption of water molecules within the amorphous regions of the cell wall, and seamlessly converting environmental energy into structural adaptation (Burgert et al., 2021).

Recent structural data obtained via advanced spectroscopic methods coupled with small-angle neutron and wide-angle X-ray scattering provide even deeper insights into this architecture (Figure 5) (Fernandes et al., 2011). The scattering data reveal that the cellulose microfibrils in spruce wood consist of 24-chain models forming a rectangular cross-section (Fernandes et al., 2011). Crucially, the data show that disorder in chain packing and hydrogen bonding increases radially outward from the highly crystalline center of the microfibril (Fernandes et al., 2011). This gradient of disorder exposes both hydrophobic and hydrophilic surfaces along the microfibril, dictating precisely how water penetrates the narrow gaps within the aggregates (Fernandes et al., 2011). When fully hydrated with deuterium oxide during experimental trials, the chain segments were observed to separate to a centre-to-centre spacing of 4.0 nm, demonstrating the matrix's dynamic swelling capabilities (Fernandes et al., 2011).

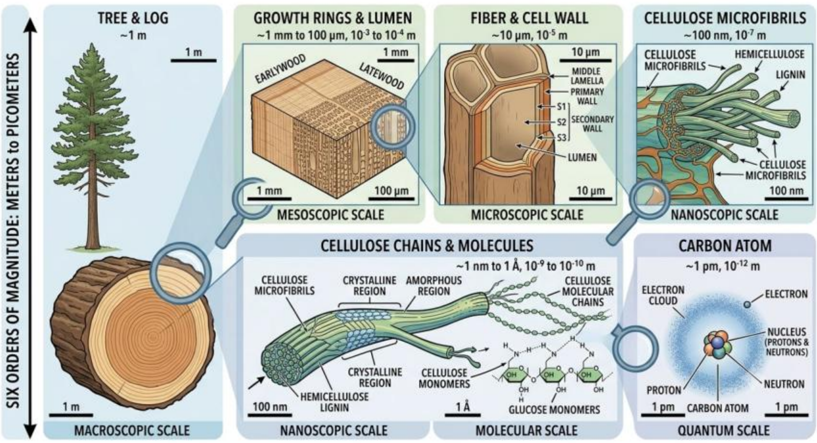


Figure 5. Six orders of magnitude: the hierarchical architecture of wood from the macroscopic scale to the sub-nanometer quantum scale.

3. Wood Formation: Tree Growth, Photosynthesis, and Carbon Sequestration

The synthesis of wood is not a passive accumulation of biomass, but rather the culmination of highly advanced, energy-intensive biological machinery operating across vast temporal and spatial scales. The entire process is fundamentally underwritten by oxygenic photosynthesis, a biochemical marvel whereby plants capture incident solar radiation and utilise it to split water molecules, converting atmospheric carbon dioxide into complex carbohydrates and releasing molecular oxygen as a byproduct (Cosgrove, 2021; Engel et al., 2007; Romero et al., 2014).

3.1 The Biosynthesis of the Secondary Cell Wall

Wood formation, or xylogenesis, occurs in the vascular cambium, a lateral meristem consisting of a thin layer of actively dividing cells situated between the xylem (wood) and the phloem (inner bark) (Cosgrove, 2021). As these cells differentiate inward to form xylem, they undergo a rapid and dramatic transformation. Advances in microscope technology and molecular biology, particularly through the use of fluorescently tagged proteins, now allow plant cell biologists to observe this wood formation process in real-time (Persson et al., 2022).

The switch from primary cell wall expansion to massive secondary cell wall production is an incredibly fast process, executing in merely a couple of hours (Persson et al., 2022). This transition is orchestrated by an elaborate, hierarchical transcriptional regulatory network. Studies on model tree species such as Populus (poplar) and Eucalyptus have identified a master suite of NAC (No Apical Meristem) and MYB transcription factors that act as molecular switches to precisely determine the timing and location of lignin and cellulose biosynthesis (Zhang et al., 2023; Zhong et al., 2010). For example, genes such as PtrNAC154, PtrZF1, and PtrGATA1 serve as powerful activators for secondary cell wall thickening (Zhang et al., 2023). Conversely, other genes, such as LTF1 in Populus, act as highly specific sensory switches to repress lignin biosynthesis, ensuring a homeostatic balance during fiber cell wall thickening (Zhang et al., 2023). This regulatory complexity, which often includes the alternative splicing of genes like PtrWND1B, is highly specific to tree species and absent in herbaceous plants, underscoring the advanced evolutionary engineering required to construct massive woody stems (Zhang et al., 2023).

3.2 The Evolutionary Milestone of Lignification

The cosmic rarity of wood becomes starkly apparent when considering the evolutionary history of its defining component: lignin. The evolution of the biochemical pathway capable of synthesising lignin was a singular, highly improbable event that fundamentally altered the trajectory of all terrestrial life on Earth (de Vries et al., 2021; Nelsen et al., 2016). The terrestrialization of plants, the transition from marine algae to land-dwelling flora, required immense physiological adaptations to survive desiccation, intense ultraviolet radiation, and the relentless pull of gravity without the buoyancy of water (de Vries et al., 2021; Weng & Chapple, 2010).

Originating approximately 450 to 470 million years ago, the advent of the phenylpropanoid pathway enabled early land plants to synthesise complex phenolic compounds (de Vries et al., 2021; Nelsen et al., 2016; Weng & Chapple, 2010). Phenylalanine ammonia-lyase (PAL), the enzyme responsible for the first committed step of this pathway, became a specific and ubiquitous feature of land plants (Weng & Chapple, 2010). This adaptation allowed for the construction of rigid, lignified vascular bundles, empowering plants to transport water vertically against gravity and construct immense, self-supporting canopies to outcompete neighbours for sunlight (de Vries et al., 2021; Nelsen et al., 2016; Weng & Chapple, 2010).

The fossil record provides an extraordinary window into this evolutionary leap. The Rhynie Chert in Scotland, a remarkably well-preserved Early Devonian ecosystem resulting from rapid silicification by hot spring fluids 407 million years ago, contains some of the absolute oldest evidence of lignin (Holman et al., 2024). Rigorous organic geochemical analyses of the Rhynie Chert kerogen using hydropyrolysis and alkaline oxidation have successfully isolated H-type, G-type, and S-type lignin monomers (Holman et al., 2024). Crucially, these analyses also identified polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons like perylene, a known biomarker for lignin-degrading fungi (Holman et al., 2024). This discovery directly refutes previous hypotheses that lignin accumulated endlessly because nothing could digest it; rather, it proves that the complex biochemical arms race between lignified woody plants and phytopathogenic fungi was already well underway by the Early Devonian (Holman et al., 2024; Nelsen et al., 2016).

The global impact of this evolutionary innovation cannot be overstated. By the Carboniferous and Permian periods, the massive proliferation of woody vegetation led to the unprecedented global burial of organic carbon with a high carbon-to-phosphorus ratio (Nelsen et al., 2016). Because the production of robust woody tissues outpaced the capacity of ecosystems to completely degrade them, vast coal swamps formed (Nelsen et al., 2016). This continuous burial acted as a net long-term source of atmospheric O_2, drastically altering the Earth's atmospheric chemistry and triggering a mid-Paleozoic oxygenation event (Lenton, 2001; Nelsen et al., 2016). It was this wood-driven surge in atmospheric oxygen that ultimately provided the chemical energy gradient necessary to fuel the evolution of highly energetic, complex, and eventually intelligent terrestrial animal life (Lenton, 2001; Nelsen et al., 2016; Weng & Chapple, 2010). From a cosmic perspective, the evolution of lignin was not merely a biological adaptation for local survival; it was a planetary-scale terraforming event.

4. The Intersection of Forestry and Quantum Physics

To fully grasp the rarity, value, and extraordinary capabilities of wood, the macroscopic observations of silviculture must be rigorously integrated with the microscopic laws of quantum mechanics. The constituent particles of wood, namely electrons, protons, and phonons, exhibit distinct, non-classical quantum behaviours that dictate the material's unparalleled efficiency in energy transfer, its structural resilience, and its phenomenal thermal insulation properties (Cosgrove, 2021; Mendoza & Chen, 2016).

4.1 Quantum Coherence in Photosynthesis

The very genesis of wood relies on the near-unity quantum efficiency of photosynthesis. In the initial stage of this process, green plants capture photons using a large assembly of proteins and chromophores (such as chlorophyll) embedded in the thylakoid cell membrane (Engel et al., 2007; Romero et al., 2014). The absorption of a photon creates an electronic excited state, known as an exciton (specifically a Frenkel exciton), which must be transported rapidly and efficiently to a reaction center to initiate a charge separation event (Engel et al., 2007; Romero et al., 2014; Westenhoff et al., 2012).

Historically, biophysicists assumed this energy transfer occurred via classical, incoherent mechanisms, akin to a random walk where the exciton hops blindly between adjacent molecules, inevitably losing energy as heat. However, advanced two-dimensional electronic spectroscopy has revolutionised this understanding, providing direct evidence that the transfer relies on long-lived, wave-like electronic quantum coherence (Engel et al., 2007; Westenhoff et al., 2012). In systems such as the Fenna-Matthews-Olson (FMO) protein complex and the Photosystem II reaction center (PSII RC), the exciton wavefunctions of different chromophores become quantum mechanically entangled and correlated (Engel et al., 2007; Romero et al., 2014; Westenhoff et al., 2012). This coherence allows the excitation energy to simultaneously sample multiple pathways through the spatial geometry of the protein, bypassing bottlenecks and finding the absolute most efficient route to the reaction center without significant energy loss (Engel et al., 2007; Westenhoff et al., 2012).

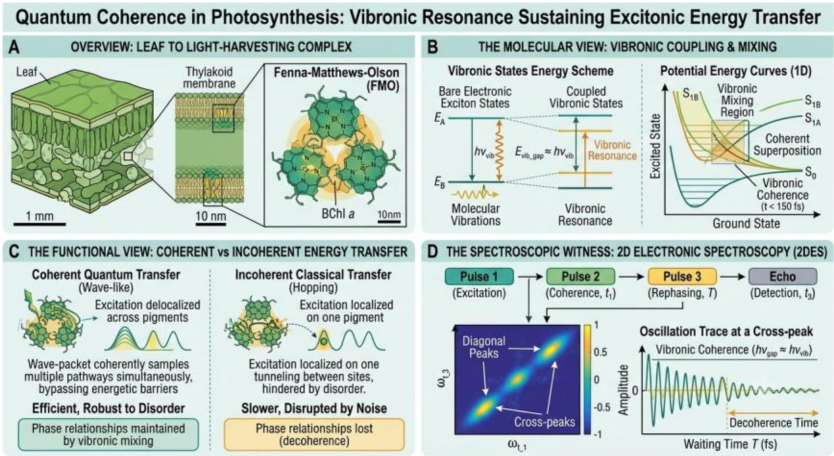


Figure 6. Quantum genesis: vibronic coherence sustaining excitonic energy transfer in photosynthesis.

Remarkably, this quantum coherence is not destroyed by the warm, noisy, and chaotic biological environment at physiological temperatures (Figure 6). Instead, it is actively sustained by "vibronic coherence," non-equilibrium vibrational modes of the protein scaffold that couple tightly with the electronic states (Romero et al., 2014; Westenhoff et al., 2012). Specific dominant vibrational frequencies of Chlorophyll a (such as 120, 190, 265, 340, 390, and 730 cm^{-1}) perfectly match the energy gaps between the exciton and charge transfer (CT) states (Westenhoff et al., 2012). These quantised vibrational phonons act as a wired molecular chain, protecting the delicate quantum state from decoherence and driving ultrafast charge separation that persists for up to 1 picosecond, an eternity on the quantum timescale (Westenhoff et al., 2012). Theoretical models applying Green's function methods and energy transfer susceptibilities demonstrate that, in the presence of realistically correlated phonon baths, this coherent quantum dynamics contributes up to 30% of the overall energy transfer efficiency (Engel et al., 2007). This profound quantum-biological phenomenon ensures that the solar energy input required to synthesise the immense mass of global forests is maximised at the subatomic level.

4.2 Quantum Mechanics of Cellulose Hydrogen Bond Networks

Moving from the energetic genesis to the physical structure, the macroscopic strength of wood is fundamentally a manifestation of complex quantum mechanical interactions, specifically within the hydrogen bonding (H-bonding) networks of cellulose (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016; Kubicki et al., 2013). Historically, classical wood science literature modelled H-bonds as relatively weak electrostatic dipole-dipole interactions, with standard bond strengths estimated strictly between 12.6 and 25.2 kJ/mol (3 to 6 kcal/mol) (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016; Kubicki et al., 2013).

Recent advances in quantum chemical modelling, specifically utilising Density Functional Theory (DFT) with dispersion corrections (such as the M06-2X hybrid functional with 6-31+G(d,p) basis sets) and Car-Parrinello molecular dynamics (CPMD), have radically updated this paradigm (Chen et al., 2016; Hayakawa et al., 2017; Lee et al., 2015). High-resolution quantum models simulating the crystalline core of cellulose (comprising multiple cellobiose units arranged in discrete layers) demonstrate that hydrogen bonds in these specific biological configurations can exhibit dynamic strengths up to an astounding 189 kJ/mol (45 kcal/mol) (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016; Hayakawa et al., 2017; Kubicki et al., 2013). This magnitude is highly significant because it approaches the threshold of true covalent bond strength (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016). Atoms-in-molecules (AIM) theory and CPMD spectral analyses confirm that the immense stability of the cellulose crystalline core (both Iβ and II allomorphs) relies not merely on individual bonds, but on the highly cooperative nature of the entire H-bonding network, which includes synergistic intra- and inter-sheet interactions and non-conventional CH···O bonding (Chen et al., 2016; Hayakawa et al., 2017; Lee et al., 2015).

Furthermore, the dynamics of these precise networks are subject to continuous nuclear quantum effects, primarily proton tunnelling and zero-point energy (ZPE) fluctuations (Klinman & Kohen, 2013). Utilising complex mathematical frameworks such as Green's function formalism, the path integral method, and the Wentzel-Kramers-Brillouin (WKB) approximation, theoretical physicists have accurately modelled the probability of a proton transferring along these hydrogen bonds (Marais et al., 2018). While a proton is approximately 2000 times more massive than an electron, making its tunnelling probability significantly lower, the highly covalent character of the strong hydrogen bonds in cellulose drastically decreases both the width and the height of the potential barrier (Marais et al., 2018). Consequently, proton tunnelling occurs constantly at ambient temperatures (Figure 7) (Butenhoff & Moore, 1988; Marais et al., 2018). This quantum tunnelling allows protons to seamlessly hop back and forth between donor and acceptor oxygen atoms in the dense cellulose matrix, establishing a dynamic bond-dissociation equilibrium (Butenhoff & Moore, 1988; Chen et al., 2016; Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016). When macroscopic mechanical stress is applied to the wood, this quantum-level dynamic coupling allows the interphase regions to absorb and distribute the force, greatly enhancing the flexibility, viscosity, and Young's modulus of the material, allowing the tree to bend in a hurricane without catastrophic fracturing (Gardner & Tajvidi, 2016; Le Bras et al., 2015).

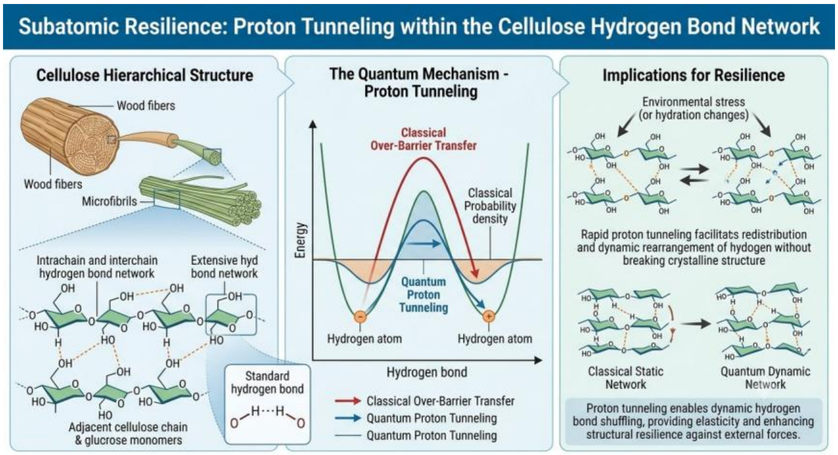


Figure 7. Subatomic resilience: proton tunnelling within the cellulose hydrogen bond network.

4.3 Phonon Dynamics and Multi-Scale Thermal Insulation

Wood is widely recognised as an exceptional thermal insulator, a macroscopic property historically attributed merely to its cellular porosity and the low thermal conductivity of entrapped air (Sjöström, 1993). However, a far more sophisticated understanding emerges when viewing heat transport through the lens of condensed matter physics and quantum phonon dynamics.

In non-metallic, semi-crystalline solid materials like wood, heat is not carried by free electrons, but primarily by phonons, quantised wave-like packets of vibrational energy that propagate through the atomic lattice (Feng et al., 2017; Mendoza & Chen, 2016). The phonon population at any given absolute temperature T follows precise Bose-Einstein statistics, where the expected number of phonons for a specific vibrational mode with angular frequency ω is mathematically defined as:

$$\langle n(\omega)\rangle = 1 / (\exp(\hbar\omega / k_B T) - 1)$$

where ħ is the reduced Planck constant and k_B is the Boltzmann constant (Kittel, 2004). At high temperatures, this approaches the classical limit $n(\omega) \approx k_B T/\hbar\omega$, but at low and ambient temperatures, the quantum nature of the phonon gas dictates the internal energy distribution (Kittel, 2004). The thermal conductivity of a material is strictly governed by how these phonons scatter and lose momentum (Kittel, 2004; Mendoza & Chen, 2016). When phonons interact with lattice imperfections, structural boundaries, or other phonons, their energy flow is disrupted, transitioning from specular (smooth) transmission to diffuse scattering (Feng et al., 2017; Sjöström, 1993).

Wood naturally achieves supreme thermal resistance through multi-scale, aggressive phonon scattering (Sjöström, 1993; Zhou et al., 2020). At the mesoscopic scale, the hierarchical porosity and cellular lumen physically interrupt low-frequency acoustic phonon propagation (Feng et al., 2017; Zhou et al., 2020). At the nanoscale, the rough, amorphous edges of the cellulose microfibrils, compounded by the highly disordered, complex interfaces between the crystalline cellulose domains and the amorphous lignin matrix, severely restrict the transport of high-frequency phonons (Feng et al., 2017; Mendoza & Chen, 2016). This high density of thin, heterogeneous interfaces induces a phenomenon directly analogous to phonon Anderson localisation (Figure 8), forcing the vibrational energy to become trapped and dissipate locally rather than propagating through the bulk material (Feng et al., 2017; Mendoza & Chen, 2016; Zhou et al., 2020).

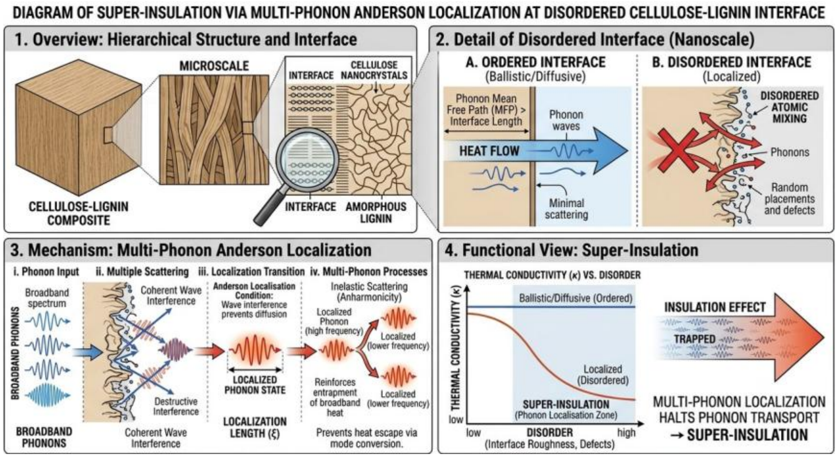


Figure 8. Super-insulation via multi-phonon Anderson localisation at the disordered cellulose-lignin interface.

Furthermore, advanced quantum simulations of the Boltzmann Transport Equation (BTE) utilising the Variational Quantum Eigensolver (VQE) algorithm have revealed the critical role of high-order multi-phonon scattering in such complex matrices (Feng et al., 2017). While standard classical models historically relied only on three-phonon scattering, the highly anharmonic, asymmetrical, and isotopically varied lattice of the wood cell wall explicitly necessitates the inclusion of four-phonon scattering processes (Feng et al., 2017).

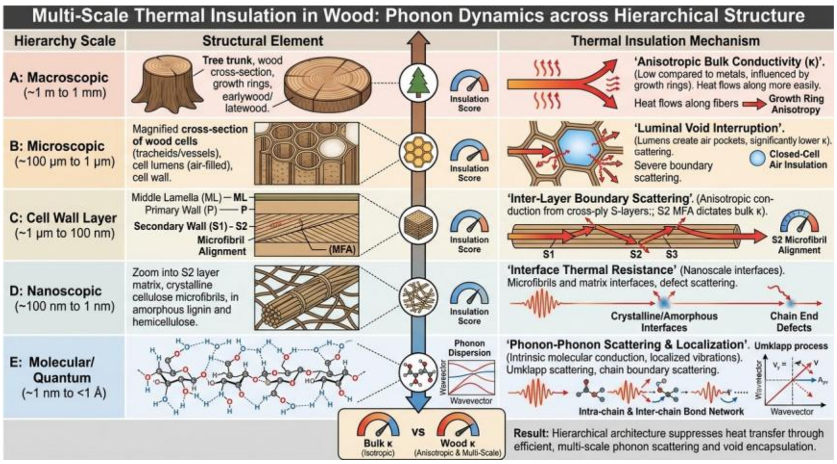


Figure 9. Multi-scale thermal insulation: phonon dynamics across the hierarchical structure of wood.

By mapping these complex multi-phonon scattering systems to fermionic spin operators within Fock space using bosonic operators (a calculation often requiring advanced quantum error mitigation in the Noisy Intermediate Scale Quantum [NISQ] era), physicists have proven that four-phonon interactions drastically reduce the theoretical thermal conductivity of complex lattices (Feng et al., 2017). The intricate structure of the lignin-cellulose interface ensures that both electron-phonon interactions and complex multi-phonon scattering continuously relax phonon momentum, driving the thermal conductivity of wood down to levels that rival, and often inspire, highly engineered synthetic aerogels (Figure 9) (Feng et al., 2017; Mendoza & Chen, 2016; Zhou et al., 2020).

4.4 Macroscopic Quantum Effects: Piezoelectricity and Dielectric Behaviours

The specific, highly ordered alignment of the cellulose macromolecules in wood gives rise to observable macroscopic phenomena that are inherently rooted in quantum states, most notably piezoelectricity and complex dielectric behaviours.

Piezoelectricity. Piezoelectricity is the remarkable accumulation of electric charge in certain solid materials in direct response to applied mechanical stress (Curie & Curie, 1880). This effect results from linear electromechanical interactions in crystalline materials that specifically lack inversion symmetry (Curie & Curie, 1880). In wood, this behaviour originates from the monoclinic, inherently asymmetric crystalline unit cell of cellulose (Burgert et al., 2021; Fukada, 1955). When the cellulose matrix is deformed by shear stress, the physical displacement of the crystalline regions relative to one another produces a measurable electrical polarization perpendicular to the applied force plane (Burgert et al., 2021).

While raw, unmodified wood exhibits a relatively modest piezoelectric response, about twenty times smaller than that of a pure quartz crystal, material scientists have discovered ways to drastically amplify this effect by manipulating the nanoscale architecture (Burgert et al., 2021). Researchers have demonstrated that selectively degrading the rigid lignin matrix, either via chemical treatments using hydrogen peroxide and acetic acid, or through controlled, 10-week infections by specific wood-decay fungi, leaves behind a highly elastic, pure cellulose framework (Burgert et al., 2021). When subjected to mechanical compression, 1.5 cm cubes of this biologically or chemically modified wood exhibit a piezoelectric output up to 85 times higher than untreated wood, generating an output of 0.69 V (Burgert et al., 2021). This is sufficient to directly power LEDs, paving the way for sustainable, energy-harvesting structural materials, such as piezoelectric timber floors that generate renewable electricity purely from human foot traffic (Burgert et al., 2021).

Dielectric Properties. Wood also possesses a unique and highly complex dielectric signature, which is critically important for its interaction with electromagnetic fields. The dielectric constant of wood is inherently anisotropic; experimental measurements over ultra-wide frequency ranges demonstrate that the dielectric constant in the longitudinal direction (parallel to the cellulose chains) is approximately 1.2 times higher than in the transverse or radial directions (Le Bras et al., 2015). At the quantum and nanoscale, the dielectric loss mechanism is strictly governed by the localised chain mobility and precisely defined conformational changes (varying dihedral angles) of the cellulose polymer and its side groups (Le Bras et al., 2015). The vast interface between the highly polar, crystalline cellulose and the relatively non-polar, amorphous lignin creates distinct regions of localised charge trapping and Maxwell-Wagner-Sillars interfacial polarisation (Le Bras et al., 2015; Zhou et al., 2020). By exploiting this, researchers have engineered all-cellulose composite films that exhibit an exceptionally high dielectric constant of 13.9 at 1000 Hz, providing a significant step toward developing high-performance, eco-friendly cellulose-based film capacitors for next-generation flexible electronics (Le Bras et al., 2015).

5. The Fermi Paradox and the "Wood Filter"

The profound rarity of wood extends far beyond materials science and quantum physics, intersecting directly with the realm of astrobiology and the Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence (SETI). The Fermi Paradox, informally posed by physicist Enrico Fermi during a 1950 lunchtime conversation at Los Alamos with colleagues Emil Konopinski, Edward Teller, and Herbert York, highlights the stark contradiction between the seemingly high mathematical probability of extraterrestrial life and the complete lack of conclusive observational evidence for advanced civilisations (Fermi, 1950; Hart, 1975). Numerous hypotheses have been proposed to resolve this "Great Silence," heavily utilising mathematical models like the Drake Equation, and conceptually relying on the "Great Filter," a highly improbable evolutionary transition or technological threshold that strictly limits the progression of life across the cosmos (Bostrom, 2008; Fermi, 1950; Hanson, 1998; Hart, 1975).

5.1 The Hard-Steps Model and Planetary Terrestrialization

A prominent resolution to the Fermi Paradox is the "hard-steps" model of biological evolution, formalised by researchers like Brandon Carter and further expanded by Bayesian models developed by Snyder-Beattie and others (Carter, 2008; Hart, 1975; Mills et al., 2025; Snyder-Beattie et al., 2021). This model posits that the emergence of an intelligent, spacefaring civilization requires a mandatory sequence of critical, independent, and temporally highly improbable evolutionary transitions (Carter, 2008; Hart, 1975). Authors generally converge on identifying between four and six hard steps (Carter, 2008). While the initial abiogenesis of simple microbial life may be relatively common across the universe, the subsequent transitions to multicellularity, complex vascular systems, and high-energy metabolic brains represent severe, probabilistic bottlenecks (Carter, 2008; Mills et al., 2025; Snyder-Beattie et al., 2021).

The terrestrialization of aquatic plant life and the subsequent, highly specific evolution of lignin biosynthesis represent a critically underappreciated hard step in the history of any potentially habitable exoplanet (Carter, 2008; de Vries et al., 2021). As established, the biochemical synthesis of the phenylpropanoid pathway to create a robust, lignified structural matrix was a singular, highly complex event (de Vries et al., 2021; Weng & Chapple, 2010). Without lignin, autotrophic organisms cannot achieve the verticality, structural rigidity, and desiccation resistance necessary to form massive terrestrial forests (Weng & Chapple, 2010). Consequently, on a theoretical exoplanet that successfully spawns simple, algae-like aquatic life but probabilistically fails to evolve a structural equivalent to wood, the biosphere would remain geologically primitive. It would sequester far less carbon, failing entirely to trigger the massive atmospheric oxygenation event required to support the high-metabolism respiration of complex, terrestrial fauna (de Vries et al., 2021; Nelsen et al., 2016; Weng & Chapple, 2010).

5.2 Wood as an Absolute Prerequisite for Technological Civilizations

If the evolution of wood is indeed astronomically rare, it logically serves as the definitive Great Filter that prevents intelligent alien species from transitioning into technological civilizations (Bostrom, 2008; Hanson, 1998). In human history, wood was the absolute, undeniable prerequisite for the mastery of fire, serving as the first ubiquitous, easily accessible, and continuously combustible energy source (Hanson, 1998; Wrangham, 2009).

Without the sustained, high-temperature combustion provided specifically by dry wood and its derivative, charcoal, early hominids could not have unlocked caloric efficiency through cooking, nor could they have developed metallurgy (Hanson, 1998). The monumental leap from the Stone Age to the Bronze and Iron Ages required the smelting of ores, a chemical reduction process that is physically impossible to initiate without the intense, concentrated heat generated by wood-derived charcoal (Hanson, 1998).

Therefore, even if a highly intelligent, cephalopod-like species evolved in an oceanic environment, or a terrestrial species evolved on a planet entirely dominated by soft-stemmed, non-lignified flora (like giant ferns or fungal analogs), their technological progression would be permanently and violently arrested at the stone-tool phase (Forgan, 2019; Hanson, 1998). Without the highly specific chemical energy storage provided by wood, there is no reliable fire; without fire, there is absolutely no metallurgy, no steam engines, no electrical generation, and ultimately, no space exploration (Forgan, 2019; Hanson, 1998). From an intergalactic perspective, wood is the literal, highly improbable stepping stone required to reach the stars. This resolves a major facet of the Fermi Paradox: alien intelligences might be common, but the precise biochemical material required to bootstrap an industrial revolution (wood) is overwhelmingly rare (Bostrom, 2008; Fermi, 1950; Hanson, 1998).

5.3 Exoplanetary Biosignatures and the Vegetation Red Edge

Because of the absolutely vital role that complex woody vegetation plays in terraforming an atmosphere and fostering a technological civilization, modern astrobiologists actively search for specific spectroscopic signs of its existence, known as the "Vegetation Red Edge" (VRE) (Metz et al., 2024; O'Malley-James & Kaltenegger, 2018; Seager et al., 2005).

The VRE is a sharp, distinct increase in the optical reflectance of terrestrial vegetation occurring in the near-infrared spectrum, specifically between wavelengths of 700 and 750 nm (Figure 10) (O'Malley-James & Kaltenegger, 2018). This highly unique spectroscopic biosignature results directly from the combination of two factors: chlorophyll's strong, necessary absorption of visible red light for photosynthesis, coupled with the high reflectance and severe scattering of near-infrared light by the hierarchical, complex 3-D cellular structure of leaves and underlying woody tissue (O'Malley-James & Kaltenegger, 2018; Seager et al., 2005).

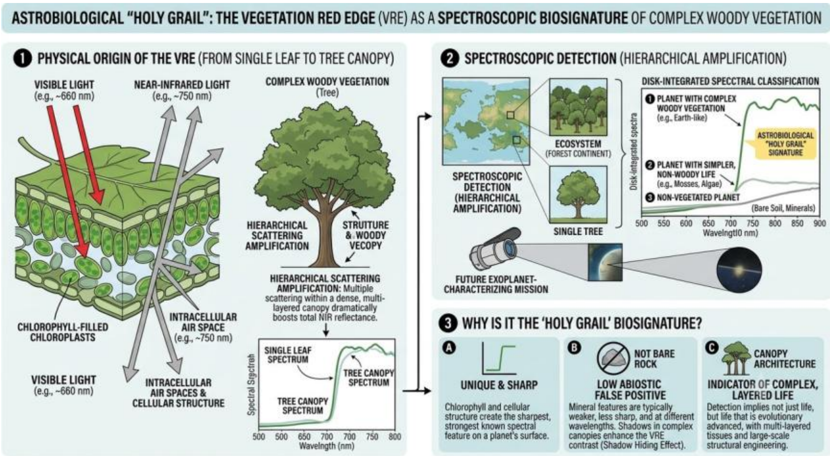


Figure 10. The astrobiological holy grail: the Vegetation Red Edge (VRE) as a spectroscopic biosignature of complex woody vegetation.

Extensive calculations and spectral simulations indicate that if an exoplanet (such as Proxima Centauri b, located within 15 parsecs) possessed even a moderately abundant presence of wood-like terrestrial vegetation covering as little as 1% to 4% of the global surface area, the VRE would be unequivocally detectable by advanced, next-generation space telescopes, provided the planetary atmosphere is sufficiently transparent in the near-infrared range (Metz et al., 2024; O'Malley-James & Kaltenegger, 2018). Detecting the VRE would be an astrobiological holy grail; it would not just signal the mere presence of simple microbial life, but it would explicitly signal the presence of a macroscopic, structurally complex, entropy-defying biosphere entirely capable of providing the raw materials to support a technological civilisation (O'Malley-James & Kaltenegger, 2018; Seager et al., 2005).

6. Extraterrestrial Applications of a Rare Earth Material

Given its astronomical rarity and its profoundly unique, quantum-derived blend of high mechanical strength, thermal resistance, and structural adaptability, wood is no longer viewed merely as a terrestrial construction material; it is actively being engineered as an advanced aerospace composite. In an era where space exploration has historically been utterly dominated by heavy metal alloys and expensive, synthetic carbon-fiber polymers, aerospace engineers are ironically returning to wood for next-generation orbital applications.

6.1 Wooden Satellites: The Pioneers LignoSat and WISA Woodsat

Wood offers several unparalleled physical advantages for satellite construction in the harsh vacuum of space. First, its high specific strength (its strength-to-weight ratio) rivals, and in certain configurations exceeds, that of traditional aerospace alloys like standard aluminum (Doi et al., 2024). Second, unlike highly conductive metals, wood is naturally transparent to electromagnetic radiation. This permits delicate communication antennas and sensitive magnetometers to be housed entirely within the protective wooden shell, drastically simplifying satellite design by eliminating the complex, failure-prone mechanisms required to deploy external sensor arrays once in orbit (Doi et al., 2024).

Two pioneering missions have recently validated the extraordinary efficacy of wood in space (Table 2):

LignoSat. Developed collaboratively by Kyoto University and Sumitomo Forestry, LignoSat is the world's first wooden CubeSat, constructed explicitly from Japanese Magnolia wood, known as Honoki (Doi et al., 2024). Extensive pre-flight testing conducted on the International Space Station (ISS) demonstrated that the Magnolia panels exhibited extraordinary, completely unexpected stability (Doi et al., 2024). The wood suffered absolutely no cracking, no peeling, and no measurable mass loss despite prolonged, unprotected exposure to extreme temperature fluctuations (from -150°C to +150°C) and harsh cosmic radiation in the vacuum of space (Doi et al., 2024). LignoSat was successfully deployed from the ISS in late December 2024 to actively measure strain, internal temperatures, and the real-time effects of space radiation on the wooden structure while establishing two-way communication through its electromagnetic-transparent hull (Doi et al., 2024).

WISA Woodsat. Developed in Finland and slated for launch as a CubeSat with a Technology Readiness Level (TRL) of 7, this mission utilizes birch plywood that has been meticulously dried in a thermal vacuum chamber and coated with an ultra-thin layer of aluminum oxide (Doi et al., 2024).

Beyond structural benefits, the primary motivation for these missions is long-term planetary sustainability (Doi et al., 2024). When traditional, metallic aluminum satellites reach the end of their operational lifespan and burn up during atmospheric re-entry, they release harmful alumina particles and metal molecules into the upper atmosphere (Doi et al., 2024). The accumulation of these metallic particles poses a severe, documented long-term threat to the delicate ozone layer (Doi et al., 2024). Conversely, a satellite constructed from wood enhances fragmentation during re-entry; the organic matrix decomposes rapidly and completely, burning cleanly into harmless water vapor and carbon dioxide, leaving absolutely no harmful trace molecules or orbital space junk behind (Doi et al., 2024).

6.2 Advanced Energy Storage and Thermal Protection Systems

By deliberately manipulating the hierarchical porosity and chemical composition of the lignocellulosic matrix at the nanoscale, wood can be highly engineered into advanced functional materials explicitly designed for deep space habitats and extraterrestrial energy systems (Zhou et al., 2020).

Thermal Protection Systems. The exact same quantum multi-scale diffuse phonon scattering that makes wood an excellent thermal insulator on Earth makes it highly desirable for lightweight thermal protection in extreme aerospace applications (Doi et al., 2024; Sjöström, 1993). Wood-based composites and highly engineered nanocellulose foams are being actively investigated for use as heat shields, designed to withstand intense thermal loads during atmospheric re-entry (Doi et al., 2024). By cross-linking highly anisotropic cellulose nanofibers with specific nanoparticles (such as amorphous PMSQ or h-BN), engineers can further restrict the free volume fraction, effectively minimizing the phonon scattering mean free path and producing super-insulating aerogels that function flawlessly in a high-vacuum environment, outperforming many synthetic insulators (Burgert et al., 2021; Zhou et al., 2020). Historically, the phenomenal shock-absorbing capability of wood's cellular structure was utilized as early as 1962, when the Ranger 3, 4, and 5 lunar exploration missions used balsa wood capsules to successfully protect highly sensitive seismometers from catastrophic impact upon striking the moon's surface (Doi et al., 2024).

Phase Change Energy Storage. The natural, highly porous lumen (the empty cellular cavities) of wood can be utilized as a ready-made, structural nano-template to house phase change materials (PCMs) (Zhou et al., 2020). By selectively delignifying wood to dramatically increase its internal porosity and subsequently filling the lumen by in situ polymerization of polymers like polyethylene glycol and hexamethylene diisocyanate to form polyurethane, researchers have created robust wood composites with exceptional solar-to-thermal energy conversion capabilities (Zhou et al., 2020). The residual polyaromatic rings of the slightly remaining lignin vastly enhance broad-spectrum light-harvesting, while the integrated PCM provides massive, long-lasting latent thermal energy storage (Zhou et al., 2020). This creates an ideal, lightweight, and completely passive thermal management system for lunar or Martian habitats, capturing solar heat during the day and slowly releasing it during the freezing extraterrestrial night (Burgert et al., 2021; Zhou et al., 2020).

Table 2. Wood-based materials in aerospace applications and their fundamental scientific mechanisms.

Mission/Application Category	Specific Wood-Based Material Used	Primary Aerospace Benefit	Fundamental Scientific Mechanism
LignoSat CubeSat	Magnolia (Honoki) Wood	Sensor housing, clean atmospheric re-entry	Electromagnetic transparency; complete organic combustion upon re-entry friction (Doi et al., 2024)
WISA Woodsat	Alumina-coated Birch Plywood	Sustainable fragmentation, reduced space junk	Rapid thermal degradation; lack of upper-atmosphere metal molecule deposition (Doi et al., 2024)
Lunar Impact Protection	Balsa Wood (Ranger Missions)	High specific energy absorption	End-grain crushing strength dissipates kinetic shock (47.83–56.79 kJ/kg) (Doi et al., 2024)
Vacuum Thermal Protection	Anisotropic Cellulose Nanofiber Aerogels	Super-insulation in extreme environments	Hierarchical limitation and diffuse scattering of high-frequency acoustic phonons (Doi et al., 2024; Sjöström, 1993; Zhou et al., 2020)

Mission/Application Category	Specific Wood-Based Material Used	Primary Aerospace Benefit	Fundamental Scientific Mechanism
Passive Energy Storage	Delignified Wood integrated with PCMs	Solar-to-thermal management for space habitats	Porous lumen acts as a structural nano-reservoir for latent heat phase transitions (Zhou et al., 2020)

7. Conclusion: Perspectives on the Future of Wood Research

From the primordial nucleosynthesis of light elements in the unimaginably hot crucible of the Big Bang, through the predictable, thermodynamic evolution of billions of inorganic minerals, to the highly orchestrated, entropy-defying biosynthesis of the secondary plant cell wall, wood represents one of the most remarkable and mathematically improbable material achievements in the cosmos. It is not merely a mundane, terrestrial commodity to be burned or milled; it is an exquisitely rare, highly engineered quantum biocomposite. Its hierarchical, multiscale structure, flawlessly blending the tensile, crystalline strength of cellulose, the flexible bonding resilience of hemicellulose, and the immense compressive strength of the amorphous lignin matrix, yields an active, physically intelligent material whose properties continually challenge and inspire the absolute limits of modern physics and materials engineering.

The rigorous integration of quantum mechanics into traditional forestry and silviculture science has initiated a profound scientific paradigm shift. It is now recognised that the immense biological efficiency of global wood formation is directly underwritten by the vibronic quantum coherence of excitons during photosynthesis; that its immense mechanical strength under wind shear relies on dynamic, high-energy, proton-tunnelling hydrogen bond networks; and that its superior thermal insulation is a masterclass in highly anharmonic, multi-phonon scattering processes acting at the nanoscale. Harnessing these fundamental quantum properties, whether by chemically modifying the lignocellulosic matrix to massively enhance dielectric permittivity for flexible electronics, or by utilising specific fungal degradation to amplify piezoelectric output for self-powering structures, will drive unparalleled, sustainable innovations in energy storage, advanced electronics, and smart biomaterials.

Furthermore, the astrophysical perspective casts wood in an entirely new, almost philosophical light. The evolutionary bottleneck of terrestrial lignification strongly suggests that towering forests may be an extreme cosmic rarity, logically serving as the definitive Great Filter that dictates the rise of technologically advanced, fire-wielding, metallurgical civilisations across the galaxy. As humanity reaches outward into the cosmos, actively scanning the spectral signatures of distant exoplanets for the Vegetation Red Edge, while simultaneously launching highly successful wooden CubeSats like LignoSat into low Earth orbit, the scientific community is fundamentally recognising the supreme value of this unique, Earth-bound resource.

The future of wood research lies precisely at this vibrant interdisciplinary nexus of silviculture, quantum physics, and aerospace engineering. By treating wood not merely as a biological resource but as an advanced quantum material and a rare, highly specific planetary biosignature, scientists can unlock novel, unprecedented pathways for sustainable technology. In doing so, the discipline ensures that the rarest material in the universe continues to be the indestructible foundation upon which human civilisation builds its ambitious future, both here on Earth and among the stars.

References

Barnett, J. R., & Bonham, V. A. (2004). Cellulose microfibril angle in the cell wall of wood fibres. Biological Reviews, 79(2), 461-472. https://doi.org/10.1017/s1464793103006273

Bostrom, N. (2008). Where are they? Why I hope the search for extraterrestrial intelligence finds nothing. MIT Technology Review.

Burbidge, E. M., Burbidge, G. R., Fowler, W. A., & Hoyle, F. (1957). Synthesis of the elements in stars. Reviews of Modern Physics, 29(4), 547-650. https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.29.547

Burgert, I., et al. (2021). Enhanced piezoelectricity in wood through biological and chemical modification. Science Advances, 7(10). https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.abd9138

Butenhoff, T. J., & Moore, C. B. (1988). Hydrogen atom tunneling in the thermal tautomerism of porphine imbedded in an n-hexane matrix. Journal of the American Chemical Society, 110(25), 8336-8341. https://doi.org/10.1021/ja00233a009

Carter, B. (2008). Five- or six-step scenario for evolution? International Journal of Astrobiology, 7(2), 177-182. https://doi.org/10.1017/S147355040800411X

Chen, P., Marianski, M., & Baldauf, C. (2016). H-Bond isomerization in crystalline cellulose IIII: Proton hopping versus hydroxyl flip-flop. ACS Macro Letters, 5(1), 50-54. https://doi.org/10.1021/acsmacrolett.5b00837

Cleaves, H. J., et al. (2012). Mineral-organic interfacial processes: potential roles in the origins of life. Chemical Society Reviews, 41(16), 5502-5525. https://doi.org/10.1039/c2cs35112a

Cosgrove, D. J. (2021). Plant cell wall structure and formation. Center for Lignocellulose Structure and Formation.

Cronin, L., & Walker, S. I. (2023). Assembly theory and the signatures of life. Nature, 622, 281-289. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-023-06600-9

Curie, J., & Curie, P. (1880). Developpement par compression de l'electricite polaire dans les cristaux hemiedres a faces inclinees. Bulletin de Mineralogie, 3, 90-93. https://doi.org/10.3406/bulmi.1880.1564

de Vries, S., et al. (2021). The evolution of the phenylpropanoid pathway entailed pronounced radiations and divergences of enzyme families. The Plant Journal, 107(4), 975-1002. https://doi.org/10.1111/tpj.15387

Doi, T., et al. (2024). Development of a wooden CubeSat, LignoSat. Journal of Evolving Space Activities, 2, 218. https://doi.org/10.57350/jesa.218

Engel, G. S., Calhoun, T. R., Read, E. L., Ahn, T.-K., Mancal, T., Cheng, Y.-C., Blankenship, R. E., & Fleming, G. R. (2007). Evidence for wavelike energy transfer through quantum coherence in photosynthetic systems. Nature, 446(7137), 782-786. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature05678

Fermi, E. (1950). The Fermi Paradox: Where is everybody? Los Alamos National Laboratory.

Fernandes, A. N., et al. (2011). Nanostructure of cellulose microfibrils in spruce wood. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 108(47), E1195-E1203. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1108942108

Feng, T., et al. (2017). Four-phonon scattering and its impact on thermal conductivity. Physical Review B, 96(16), 161201(R). https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.96.161201

Forgan, D. H. (2019). Solving Fermi's Paradox. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/9781316681510

Fukada, E. (1955). Piezoelectricity of wood. Journal of the Physical Society of Japan, 10(2), 149-154. https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.10.149

Gamow, G. (1948). The origin of elements and the separation of galaxies. Physical Review, 74(4), 505-506. https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.74.505.2

Gardner, D. J., & Tajvidi, M. (2016). Hydrogen bonding in wood-based materials: An update. Wood and Fiber Science, 48(4), 234-244.

Hanson, R. (1998). The Great Filter - Are we almost past it? (Self-published essay).

Hart, M. H. (1975). An explanation for the absence of extraterrestrials on Earth. Quarterly Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society, 16, 128-135.

Hazen, R. M., et al. (2008). Mineral evolution. American Mineralogist, 93(11-12), 1693-1720. https://doi.org/10.2138/am.2008.2955

Hazen, R. M., & Ausubel, J. H. (2016). On the nature and significance of rarity in mineralogy. American Mineralogist, 101(6), 1245-1251. https://doi.org/10.2138/am-2016-5601

Hayakawa, D., et al. (2017). Evaluation of hydrogen bond networks in cellulose Iβ and II crystals using density functional theory and Car-Parrinello molecular dynamics. Carbohydrate Research, 449, 103-113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carres.2017.07.001

Holman, A. I., et al. (2024). Significance of lignin and fungal markers in the Devonian (~407 Ma) Rhynie Chert. Geobiology, 22(1), e12586. https://doi.org/10.1111/gbi.12586

Kittel, C. (2004). Introduction to Solid State Physics (8th ed.). John Wiley & Sons.

Kleidon, A. (2010). Life, hierarchy, and the thermodynamic machinery of planet Earth. Physics of Life Reviews, 7(4), 424-460. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.plrev.2010.10.002

Klinman, J. P., & Kohen, A. (2013). Hydrogen tunneling links protein dynamics to enzyme catalysis. Annual Review of Biochemistry, 82, 471-496. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-biochem-051710-133623

Krivovichev, S. V. (2013). Structural complexity of minerals: information storage and processing in the mineral world. Mineralogical Magazine, 77(3), 275-326. https://doi.org/10.1180/minmag.2013.077.3.05

Kubicki, J. D., et al. (2013). Quantum mechanical modeling of the structures, energetics and spectral properties of Iα and Iβ cellulose. Cellulose, 21(2), 983-997. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10570-013-0029-x

Le Bras, D., et al. (2015). Characterization of dielectric properties of nanocellulose from wood and algae for electrical insulator applications. Journal of Physical Chemistry B, 119(18), 5911-5917. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jpcb.5b00715

Lee, C. M., et al. (2015). Hydrogen-bonding network and OH stretch vibration of cellulose: Comparison of computational modeling with polarized IR and SFG spectra. Journal of Physical Chemistry B, 119(49), 15138-15149. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.jpcb.5b08015

Lenton, T. M. (2001). The role of land plants, phosphorus weathering and fire in the rise and regulation of atmospheric oxygen. Global Change Biology, 7(6), 613-629. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1365-2486.2001.00429.x

Marais, P., et al. (2018). Dynamics of proton tunneling in hydrogen-bonded systems through Green's function formalism. The Journal of Chemical Physics, 148(1). https://doi.org/10.1063/1.5039148

Marshall, S. M., et al. (2021). Identifying molecules as biosignatures with assembly theory and mass spectrometry. Nature Communications, 12, 3033. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-021-23258-x

Mendoza, J., & Chen, G. (2016). Anderson localization of thermal phonons leads to a thermal conductivity maximum. Nano Letters, 16(12), 7616-7620. https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.nanolett.6b03550

Metz, C. O., et al. (2024). Detectability simulations of a near-infrared surface biosignature on Proxima Centauri b. The Planetary Science Journal, 5(10), 228. https://doi.org/10.3847/PSJ/ad75f5

Mills, D. B., et al. (2025). A reassessment of the 'hard-steps' model for the evolution of intelligent life. Science Advances, 11(7), eads5698. https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.ads5698

Nelsen, M. P., et al. (2016). Delayed fungal evolution did not cause the Paleozoic peak in coal production. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 113(9), 2442-2447. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1517943113

O'Malley-James, J. T., & Kaltenegger, L. (2018). The vegetation red edge biosignature through time on Earth and exoplanets. Astrobiology, 18(9), 1123-1136. https://doi.org/10.1089/ast.2017.1798

Olds, T. A., et al. (2017). Ewingite: Earth's most complex mineral. Geology, 45(11), 1007-1010. https://doi.org/10.1130/G39433.1

Persson, S., et al. (2022). Finding the building blocks of wood: real-time cellular imaging. University of Melbourne.

Romero, E., et al. (2014). Quantum coherence in photosynthesis for efficient solar-energy conversion. Nature Physics, 10(9), 676-682. https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys3017

Seager, S., et al. (2005). Vegetation's red edge: A possible spectroscopic biosignature of extraterrestrial plants. Astrobiology, 5(3), 372-390. https://doi.org/10.1089/ast.2005.5.372

Sjöström, E. (1993). Wood Chemistry: Fundamentals and Applications (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

Snyder-Beattie, A. E., et al. (2021). The timing of evolutionary transitions suggests intelligent life is rare. Astrobiology, 21(3), 265-278. https://doi.org/10.1089/ast.2019.2149

Weng, J. K., & Chapple, C. (2010). The origin and evolution of lignin biosynthesis. New Phytologist, 187(2), 273-285. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-8137.2010.03327.x

Westenhoff, S., et al. (2012). Vibronic coherence in plant photosynthesis. Nature Chemistry, 4, 396-404. https://doi.org/10.1038/nchem.1311

Wrangham, R. (2009). Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human. Basic Books.

Zhang, Q., et al. (2023). Transcriptional regulatory network of lignin biosynthesis. Frontiers in Plant Science, 14, 1116426. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2023.1116426

Zhong, R., et al. (2010). The transcriptional network controlling secondary cell wall biosynthesis in plants. Plant Physiology, 152(4), 2200-2212. https://doi.org/10.1104/pp.109.151126

Zhou, Y., et al. (2020). Wood products with advanced solar-to-thermal conversion and phase change energy storage. Energy Storage Materials, 25, 413-419. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ensm.2019.10.024

CHAPTER 8

The Dynamics of Forest-Based Livelihoods: Opportunities, Community Norms, and Challenges

Aishwary Kant Vaishnav[1*], Damini Sharma[2], Nalini[2]

[1]Department of Forest Product and Utilization, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India

[2]Department of Forest Biology and Tree Improvement, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India

*Corresponding E-mail: akvaishnav1997@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Vaishnav, A. K., Sharma, D., & Nalini (2026). The Dynamics of Forest-Based Livelihoods: Opportunities, Community Norms, and Challenges. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 146-158). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Forest is vital ecosystems that support ecological balance, biodiversity preservation, and livelihood security. For millions of indigenous and tribal people, forests supply food, fuelwood, fodder, timber, medicine, and a form of income. Forest livelihood includes wage-based job options, indirect advantages through ecosystem services, and direct benefits like wood and non-timber forest products. Forests in India are crucial to the everyday sustenance and economic support of tribal people and women. Forest-based livelihoods have been reinforced by government efforts including the Forest Rights Act, Joint Forest Management, CAMPA, TRIFED, and Van Dhan Vikas Kendra. But issues like overexploitation, market exploitation, forest fires, deforestation, and climate change still have an impact on sustainability. Rural incomes and resource conservation may be enhanced by fostering secure rights, community involvement, skill development, and value addition. Therefore, sustainable development, poverty alleviation, and environmental resilience all depend on forest livelihood.

Keywords: Forest Livelihood; Tribal Communities; Non-Timber Forest Products; Sustainable Development; Forest Conservation.

1. Introduction

Forests, considered to be the most valuable natural resources on Earth, are crucial to preserving a healthy environment, safeguarding ecosystems, and enhancing human happiness. In addition to their importance to the ecosystem, forests provide a vital source of income for millions of people worldwide, especially in rural and underdeveloped areas. The term "forest livelihood" describes the many methods people generally utilize forests and tree-based systems for employment, food, housing, fuel, medicine, and other requirements. For many communities, particularly indigenous peoples and households that rely on woods, forests are not only natural settings; they are foundation social identity, cultural traditions, and economic existence. Over 1.6 billion people worldwide rely either directly or indirectly on forests for their income and survival (FAO, 2020).

A significant segment of the rural population in developing nations like India depends on forest-based goods for everyday necessities, making forest livelihood particularly important. Along with a range of non-timber forest products (NTFPs) including bamboo, honey, gum, resin, medicinal plants, lac, tendu leaves, fruits, nuts, and fibers, forests also supply fuelwood for cooking and heating, animal feed, and lumber for housing and agricultural tools. These goods provide a significant contribution to household income, particularly in times of seasonal unemployment or agricultural hardship. Forest-based income is a significant part of family economies in many tribal and isolated areas of India, and it serves as a safety net in times of agricultural failure, drought, or financial difficulty (MoEFCC, 2021).

Indigenous and tribal populations, who have historically resided in and near forests for many centuries, are strongly linked to forest livelihoods. Through extensive interactions with environment, their knowledge systems about sustainable harvesting methods, medicinal plants, biodiversity protection, and forest management have developed. For employment and subsistence, Scheduled Tribes and other forest-dwelling tribes across India such as Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha, Jharkhand, and Maharashtra rely heavily on forests. Forest livelihood is a significant aspect of gender and rural development since women, in particular, are essential in gathering fuelwood, fodder, leaves, wild edibles, and medicinal plants (Agarwal, 2021).

In addition to providing direct material benefits, trees also indirectly sustain livelihoods through ecological functions involving insect pollination, soil maintenance, watershed protection, climate control, and carbon sequestration. These services support local economies, increase agricultural output, and lessen climate change risk. Forests have become more significant over the past few years because of carbon markets, eco-tourism, nature-based businesses, and green job prospects. Therefore, forest livelihood now encompasses enterprise growth, value addition, and sustainable rural entrepreneurship in addition to subsistence usage (World Bank, 2019).

However, deforestation, forest degradation, overuse of resources, climate change, unstable land tenure, market exploitation by middlemen, and insufficient institutional support pose significant obstacles to livelihoods that rely on forests. The availability of resources that local populations rely on may be diminished by unsustainable exploitation and declining forest cover. Therefore, participatory forest management, safe community rights, equitable market access, skill development, value chain enhancement, and supporting state policies are necessary to ensure sustainable forest livelihood. Initiatives to improve the livelihood security of forest dwellers in India include TRIFED, Joint Forest Management and Tribal Right Act, 2006.

Forest livelihood plays an essential part in sustainable development because it connects inclusive growth, biodiversity protection, poverty alleviation, and climate resilience. In addition to promoting conservation and the wise use of natural resources, bolstering forest-based livelihoods may raise rural incomes. Therefore, policymakers, academics, and development practitioners must comprehend the function, difficulties, and prospects of forest livelihood.

2. Concept of Forest Livelihood

The term "forest livelihood" describes many methods that individual employs forests and tree-based resources to get jobs, money, food, housing, energy, and other essentials. In addition to being valuable biological resources, forests are also significant socioeconomic resources that sustain the everyday lives of millions of people worldwide. Forests serve as a life-support system in many developing nations by supplying both material commodities and environmental services, particularly in remote and tribal areas. Forests provide lumber, firewood, livestock feed, fruits and vegetables, therapeutic plants, fibers, gums, resins, and many other goods that directly support family sustenance and generate revenue for the communities that live next to them.

Forest livelihood can broadly be divided into three categories:

- Direct Forest Livelihood
- Indirect Forest Livelihood
- Wage-based Forest Livelihood

2.1 Direct Forest Livelihood

All advantages derived from the direct gathering, harvesting, processing, or usage of forest-based goods are included in direct forest livelihood. This especially prevalent and customary type of forest livelihood, especially for populations that live in forests. Major Components of Direct Livelihood:-

Figure 1. Bamboo basket making as a forest-based livelihood and traditional cottage enterprise.

a. Wood: Among the highest crucial forest products is timber, which is used for building homes, furniture, railroad sleepers, agricultural tools, poles, packaging, and industrial uses. For local communities and forest cooperatives, legal and sustainable timber extraction may yield substantial revenue.

b. Fuelwood: In remote locations where contemporary cooking fuels are either costly or unavailable, fuelwood continues to be a significant source of home energy. For cooking and heating, households gather dry branches, twigs, and tiny logs.

c. Food: Cattle, goats, and sheep are fed leaves, grasses, bushes, and tree branches that are gathered from forests. Forest fodder is frequently used for livestock husbandry in rural areas.

Figure 2. Collection and handling of non-timber forest products (NTFPs) by rural women for household use and income generation.

d. Non-Timber Forest Products (NTFPs): Goods produced from forest besides wood are known as NTFPs. They are crucial in sustaining supplemental and seasonal income.

Examples include:- Bamboo, Honey, Lac, Gum, Resin, Tendu leaves, Mahua flowers and seeds, Amla, Harra, Bahera, Medicinal herbs, Wild fruits and nuts.

2.2 Indirect Forest Livelihood

Advantages that individual receive from forests through ecological and environmental services as opposed to direct product extraction are referred to as indirect forest livelihood. Major Ecosystem Services:-

a. Conserving Water: Rainwater is absorbed by forests, which also enhance groundwater recharge, control stream flow, and lessen runoff. This guarantees the supply of water for home use, agriculture, and drinking.

b. Preservation of Soil: By binding soil particles, tree roots stop wind and water-induced erosion. In steep regions, forest cover also lessens landslides.

c. Regulation of Climate: Carbon dioxide is absorbed and oxygen is released by forests. They lessen heat, preserve rainfall patterns, and assist control the local and global climate.

d. Pollination and Biodiversity: Birds, bees, insects, and animals that promote crop pollination and pest management in neighboring agricultural areas find refuge in forests.

e. Support for Livestock: For cattle, goats, and sheep, forest grasses and tree leaves are significant natural sources of feed. Tree leaves are utilized as browsing fodder, particularly in dry seasons, while grasses supply grazing forage. These materials support rural livelihoods, milk production, and animal health.

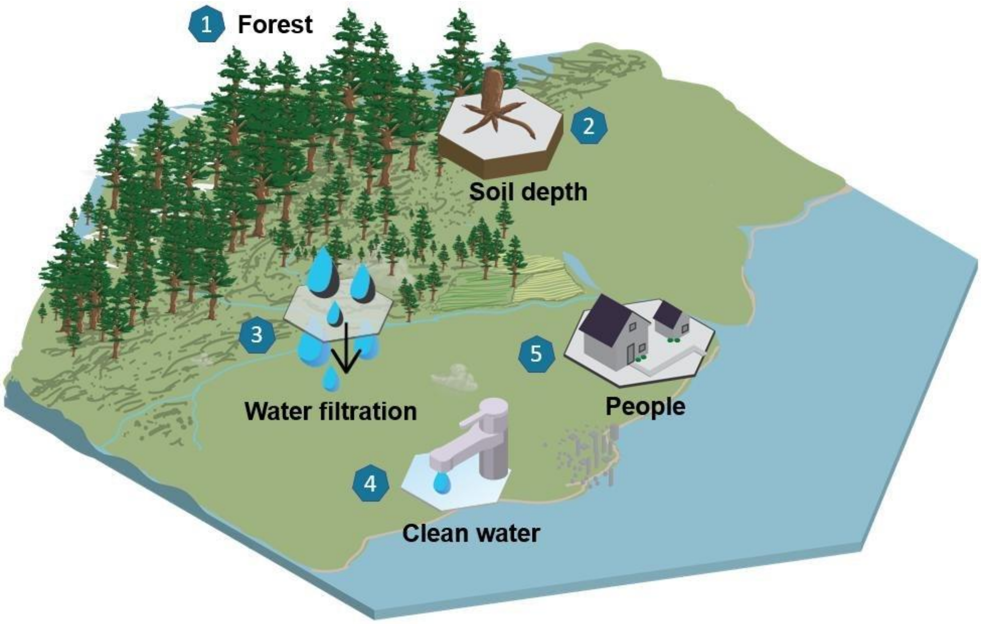


Figure 3. Forest ecosystem services supporting human well-being through soil conservation, water filtration, clean water supply, and community sustenance.

2.3 Wage-based Forest Livelihood

Jobs generated by forest management, conservation initiatives; plantations, businesses, and tourists are examples of wage-based forest livelihood. Major Sources of Employment:-

a. Work on Plantations and Afforestation: Under forestry projects, labourers are hired to plant trees, dig trenches, fence, water, and manage plantations.

b. Raising Nurseries: Seed collecting, seed treatment, pot filling, seedling development, watering, and sapling transportation are all tasks performed by workers.

c. Projects to Protect Forests: Construction of fire lines, patrolling, soil and moisture conservation projects, trench excavation, and watch and ward responsibilities all create jobs.

d. Industries Related to Forests: Sawmills, plywood factories, bamboo businesses, paper mills, resin tapping, herbal processing facilities, and furniture manufacturing all have open positions.

e. Environmental travel: Guides, drivers, hotel employees, food providers, handicraft vendors, and local transportation operators are all employed by places those are safeguard and forest attractions.

Figure 4. Community participation in forest nursery activities and plantation development as a source of wage-based forest livelihood.

Figure 5. Rural women engaged in agricultural and forest-associated activities, illustrating the contribution of women to rural livelihoods.

3. Forest Livelihood and Communities Norms

For local and indigenous groups, forests are essential to maintaining their daily needs, culture and resources for subsistence. Rural households have relied on natural assets for goods and supplies, fodder, medicine, building materials, and revenue for generations. Communities and forests have a social, cultural, and economic interdependence that makes forests an integral aspect of community life.

Figure 6. Forest-dependent household activities involving collection of forest resources, fuelwood, and livestock grazing.

- Tribal Forest Dependency: Forests are vital to the existence and identity of many indigenous people. For both domestic and commercial use, they gather non-timber forest products such fruits, honey, gum, bamboo, medicinal herbs, and leaves. Additionally, forests create jobs through traditional crafts, processing, and gathering. Forests continue to be the primary source of livelihood security in many isolated places.
- Women's Position: In forest-based livelihoods, women play a significant role. Their primary activities include gathering water, fuelwood, fodder, wild edibles, and medicinal herbs. Additionally, women work in the production and selling of goods including lac, honey, baskets, and leaf plates. Their traditional knowledge contributes to the protection and sustainable use of forest resources.
- Needs for Subsistence in the Home: Basic household needs are supported by forests, particularly for low-income rural households. Fuel wood is utilized for heating and cooking, grasses and leaves are fed to animals, bamboo and wood are used to build homes, and wild foods are used when resources are few. As a result, woods serve as a safety net in times of agricultural failure or economic distress.
- Cultural Significance: For many societies, forests have profound cultural and spiritual value. Forest vistas are frequently associated with sacred groves, worship trees, customs,

festivals, and indigenous beliefs. In intimate relationship with woods, several tribal rituals, songs, folklore, and medicinal practices are passed down through the centuries.

4. Forest Livelihoods' Economic and Social Significance

For rural and tribal populations in particular, forest-based livelihoods are extremely important from an economic and social standpoint. Forest resources boost food security, empower women, assist small-scale businesses, provide jobs, and lessen poverty. These advantages support community welfare and sustained rural development.

- Creation of Jobs: Through the gathering of non-timber forest products, wood processing, nursery rearing, afforestation, ecotourism, and handcraft manufacture, forests provide jobs. In isolated rural communities with few other economic opportunities, the seasonal and permanent jobs created by forests are particularly significant.
- Home-Based Businesses: Bamboo crafts, basketry, furniture, lac processing, leaf plate manufacturing, herbal items, resin extraction, and handmade paper are among the cottage and village businesses that rely on forest raw resources. These sectors maintain traditional skills and encourage self-employment.
- Security of Food: To augment household nutrition, forests offer edible fruits, nuts, mushrooms, roots, tubers, fish, bush foods, and wild vegetables. Forests offer a vital supply of emergency food for nearby towns during food shortages.
- Reducing Poverty: Fuelwood, bamboo, honey, medicinal plants, gums, and tendu leaves are examples of forest products that generate income that helps impoverished communities fulfill their daily requirements. In times of agricultural failure, drought, or unemployment, forests frequently serve as a safety net, lowering rural poverty.
- Empowerment of Women: Fuelwood, fodder, medicinal herbs, and small forest products are all actively collected by women. In order to make money and increase their influence in home decision-making and community development, they also process and market forest products.

5. Government Policies and Support Programs (India)

5.1 Forest Rights Act, 2006

- Acknowledgment of Customary Rights: Tribal Right Act that have lived in forests for centuries have their customary rights recognized under the Tribal Rights Act, 2006.
- The privilege to cultivate land: Subject to legal restrictions, it gives qualified forest dwellers rights to forest area utilized for subsistence and self-cultivation.
- The privilege to live: Communities are granted the privilege to dwell in unsurveyed communities, historic habitations, and forest villages.

- Obtaining Access to Small Forest Products: Minor forest products such bamboo, tendu leaves, honey, fruits, medicinal plants, and fuel wood can be gathered, used, and sold.
- Rights to Community Forest Resources: Villages and communities may manage communal natural assets for sustainable usage, in addition to safeguard, regenerate, and conserve them.
- Defense Against Eviction: The Act protects qualified forest residents from being forcibly removed or evicted without their rights being properly acknowledged.
- Gram Sabha's role: In order to confirm claims and suggest forest rights, the Gram Sabha is crucial.
- Social Justice and Livelihood: The Act seeks to address past injustices brought about by previous forest regulations, strengthen livelihood security, and empower indigenous groups.

5.2 Joint Forest Management (JFM)

- Forest Management with Participation: Joint Forest Administration a cooperative approach in which state forest government bodies and neighbors collaborate to maintain and manage forests sustainably.
- Joint Responsibilities: Villagers assist with tasks including plantation labor, preventing illicit cutting, managing forest fires, and regulating grazing.
- Sharing of Benefits: Communities receive fuelwood, fodder, small forest products, and a proportion of earnings from timber and other forest-based goods in exchange.
- Job Possibilities: Through plantations, soil protection, forest upkeep, and nursery rearing, JFM generates wage-based jobs for locals.
- Institutions in the Community: To coordinate management efforts, village committees are established, such as Village Forest Committees or Forest Protection Committees.
- Conservation of Forests: In several areas, JFM has promoted sustainable resource use, increased tree cover, and improved damaged forests.
- Support for Livelihoods: By connecting resource access and revenue creation with forest conservation, it improves rural livelihoods.
- People's Involvement: JFM encourages collaboration and trust between governmental organizations and communities who rely on forests.

5.3 CAMPA

- Interpretation Funds collected when forest land is converted for non-forest uses like mining, roads, dams, or industries are managed by CAMPA.

- Funding Source: Compensation fees must be paid by user organizations using forest property for development projects; these fees are transferred into CAMPA coffers.
- Activities for Afforestation: The money is utilized for plantation development, compensatory afforestation, and the establishment of new forest cover.
- Regeneration of Forests: CAMPA promotes natural regeneration, watershed enhancement, soil protection, and the rehabilitation of damaged forests.
- Preservation of Wildlife: Additionally, funds are utilized for anti-poaching initiatives, biodiversity conservation, animal habitat enhancement, and protection initiatives.
- Development of Infrastructure: Forest roads, border markings, fire lines, nurseries, fencing, and other conservation infrastructure are funded by CAMPA.

5.4 Van Dhan Vikas Kendra

Launched in 2018 by TRIFED under the Ministry of Tribal Affairs, Government of India, Van Dhan Vikas Kendra (VDVK) is a significant program for the improvement of tribal livelihoods. The program's primary goal is to raise the standard of life and income of indigenous populations whose livelihoods depend on forests. Because of an absence of processing facilities and market access, many tribal households gather small forest products including honey, bamboo, tamarind, lac, medicinal plants, fruits, seeds, and leaves, but they frequently obtain low prices. In order to address these issues through structured community involvement and value creation, VDVK was established.

Tribal people are grouped under this plan into clusters called Van Dhan Vikas Kendras and Self-Help Groups (SHGs). Scientific methods for gathering, grading, cleaning, storing, processing, packing, and marketing small forest products are taught to these groups. Tribal groups can make more money by transforming unprocessed forest resources into goods with added value. For instance, it is possible to correctly dry and sell medicinal herbs, purify and brand honey, and package raw tamarind for sale.

Additionally, the program offers small processing units infrastructural support, equipment, training, and financial aid. It promotes business among indigenous women and youth and generates jobs at the local level. By reducing dependence on middlemen, tribal producers receive better prices for their products. This boosts rural economies in forested regions and directly raises household income.

The fact that VDVK encourages the sustainable use of forest resources is another significant aspect. Tribal communities are encouraged to collect forest produce carefully without damaging trees and biodiversity. Thus, the program connects the preservation of forests with improving livelihoods. All things considered, Van Dhan Vikas Kendra has grown into a major project that ensures sustainable management of forest resources while empowering tribal communities via skill development, revenue creation, and market assistance.

5.5 TRIFED

To assist the socioeconomic advancement of India's tribal groups, TRIFED (Tribal Cooperative Marketing Development Federation of India) was founded as a national organization in 1987. It operates under the Ministry of Tribal Affairs and aims to enhance tribal lives by expanding the market for tribal goods such handlooms, handicrafts, and small-scale forest products. TRIFED offers indigenous producers fair pricing, value addition, product design assistance, training, and skill development. Additionally, it lessens middlemen's exploitation through coordinated marketing channels and direct purchase. Through these initiatives, TRIFED contributes significantly to the preservation of traditional knowledge and forest-based livelihoods while boosting tribal income, employment, and entrepreneurship.

6. The Difficulties and Limitations of Forest Livelihoods

A number of issues that limit economic prospects and jeopardize sustainability affect forest-based livelihoods. The well-being of communities that depend on forests is frequently impacted by inadequate market systems, environmental deterioration, and absense of institutional support.

- Destruction of forests: A number of forest cover and the availability of timber, fuel wood, fodder, and non-timber forest products are decreased by deforestation brought on by mining, urbanization, agricultural growth, and illicit logging. The livelihoods of rural and tribal households are directly impacted by this.
- Forest Fire: Regular forest fires harm soil fertility, vegetation, wildlife habitat, and the regrowth of beneficial species. Additionally, fires cause financial losses by destroying valued goods including bamboo, grasses, medicinal plants, and tendu leaves.
- Weather Change: Forest ecosystems are disrupted by drier conditions, landslides, severe climatic phenomena, rising temperatures, and shifting rainfall patterns. These alterations make dependent populations more vulnerable and lower the yield of forest resources.
- Overuse: Depletion of forest supplies results from the unsustainable collection of fuelwood, bamboo, medicinal plants, and other resources. Overexploitation damages ecological equilibrium and decreases future supply.
- Middlemen's Abuse of the Market: A lot of collectors use middlemen who offer cheap rates to sell forest items. Local producers sometimes make little money because of inadequate market knowledge, a lack of storage, and transportation capabilities.
- Inadequate Infrastructure and Rights: Livelihood development is hampered by insecure land tenure, delayed recognition of community rights, bad roads, few processing units, and a lack of financial facilities. Communities cannot properly utilize forest resources without adequate infrastructure.
- Illegal Encroachment and Logging: Felling trees without permission and encroaching on forest area for settlements or agriculture depletes forest resources and upsets the equilibrium of the ecosystem. This restricts the items that local populations can utilize.

- Insufficient Technical Understanding: Scientific harvesting, value addition, storage, and processing methods are not taught to many households who depend on forests. As a result, revenue potential is diminished and product quality is low.
- Conflict between Humans and Wildlife: Wild animals can harm homes, livestock, and crops in locations close to woods. Communities are deterred from supporting forest protection by these disputes, which also result in financial losses.
- Rural adolescents frequently move to metropolitan regions in search of employment due to poor income and little prospects. As a result, traditional knowledge about indigenous skills, forest management, and medicinal plants declines.

7. Conclusion

Forests will always be vital for long term financial expansion, environmental preservation, and livelihood security. Future, job opportunities for youth population in remote areas may include green occupations in afforestation, forest restoration, nursery development, waste management, and biodiversity protection. Through nature-based tourism, wildlife tours, homestays, guide services, and the sale of regional handicrafts, ecotourism has a great potential to raise money while raising awareness of conservation. Through tree planting, carbon sequestration, and the preservation of natural forests, carbon markets and climate financing systems may benefit communities financially. Opportunities for the production, processing, packaging, and export of plant-based goods are being created by the fast growth of the herbal and medical plant sectors. But only through community involvement, secure rights, scientific harvesting, value addition, sustainable forest management, and robust policy backing can these advantages be realized. In order to ensure healthy forests and thriving communities in the future, it is crucial to integrate conservation with livelihood development.

References

Agarwal, B., 2021. Environmental resources and gender inequality: Use, degradation, and conservation. In The Routledge handbook of feminist economics, (pp. 264-273).

Arnold, J.M., 2001. Forestry, poverty and aid, Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research, Bogor, Indonesia, (p. 17).

Chambers, R. and Conway, G., 1992. Sustainable rural livelihoods: practical concepts for the 21st century, Institute of Development Studies, (IDS Discussion Paper 296).

Food and Agriculture Organization. (2020). Global Forest Resources Assessment. Rome.

Government of India. (1990). Guidelines for Joint Forest Management. Ministry of Environment and Forests, New Delhi.

Government of India. (2007). The Scheduled Tribes and Other Traditional Forest Dwellers (Recognition of Forest Rights) Act, 2006 (Act No. 2 of 2007). New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice.

Government of India. (2016). The Compensatory Afforestation Fund Act, 2016. New Delhi: Ministry of Law and Justice.

International Union for Conservation of Nature. (2016). Forests and Livelihoods. Gland.

Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change. (2021). India State of Forest Report. New Delhi.

Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change. (2018). Compensatory Afforestation Fund Rules, 2018. New Delhi.

Ministry of Environment and Forests. (2000). Joint Forest Management: A decade of partnership. New Delhi.

Ministry of Tribal Affairs. (2014). Forest Rights Act, 2006: Rules and guidelines. New Delhi: Government of India.

Ministry of Tribal Affairs. (2021). Annual Report. New Delhi.

Tribal Cooperative Marketing Development Federation of India Limited, (2022). Annual Report.

TRIFED. (2018). Van Dhan Vikas Kendra Scheme Guidelines. New Delhi.

United Nations Development Programme. (2015). Human development report: Work for human development. New York.

Vedeld, P., Angelsen, A., Bojö, J., Sjaastad, E. and Berg, G.K., 2007. Forest environmental incomes and the rural poor. Forest Policy and Economics, 9(7), pp.869-879.

World Bank. (2019). Forests and Livelihoods Report. Washington, DC.

CHAPTER 9

Carbon Commodification and Forest Governance: A Political Ecology Perspective on REDD+ and Global Forest Carbon Markets

Subham Ghose*

Department of Agricultural Economics, Faculty of Agriculture, Sri Sri University, Cuttack, Odisha, India.

*Corresponding E-mail: ghosesubham2000@gmail.com

Abstract

Over the last two decades, forest ecosystems have become central to global climate mitigation strategies due to their capacity to function as massive terrestrial carbon sinks. The emergence of international policy frameworks, most notably Reducing Emissions from Deforestation and Forest Degradation (REDD+), has catalysed a profound shift in environmental management. This shift transformed tropical forests from localized ecosystems managed for biodiversity or community subsistence into key financial instruments within global carbon markets. Neoclassical environmental economics traditionally conceptualizes REDD+ and similar offset mechanisms as cost-effective solutions to internalize anthropogenic climate change externalities. Conversely, critical scholarship emerging from political ecology highlights the complex socio-political dynamics embedded within these market structures. This chapter deploys a comprehensive political ecology framework to interrogate the overarching neoliberalization of environmental governance. The analysis reveals how carbon commodification inherently requires the epistemological reduction of biodiverse ecosystems into a single, tradable metric (tCO_2e). This process structurally privileges Western technical expertise, digital surveillance infrastructures, and algorithmic modelling over localized Indigenous ecological knowledge. Furthermore, an evaluation of current market architectures, including the Voluntary Carbon Market (VCM), Jurisdictional REDD+ (JREDD+), and emerging frameworks under Article 6 of the Paris Agreement, demonstrates persistent vulnerabilities regarding environmental integrity, baseline manipulation, and spatial leakage. Crucially, integrating remote tropical forests into global financial circuits alters pre-existing property rights and centralizes state control, precipitating phenomena characterized as "green grabbing" and "carbon colonialism".

Keywords: Political ecology; Carbon commodification; REDD+; Forest governance; Green grabbing; Climate finance; Environmental justice; Nature-based solutions; Carbon markets.

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Ghose, S. (2026). Carbon Commodification and Forest Governance: A Political Ecology Perspective on REDD+ and Global Forest Carbon Markets. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 159-175). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

1. Introduction

Over the last two decades, forest ecosystems have become undeniably central to global climate mitigation strategies due to their unparalleled capacity to function as massive terrestrial carbon sinks (Bastin et al., 2019). The emergence of international climate policy frameworks, most notably the mechanism known as REDD+ (Reducing Emissions from Deforestation and Forest Degradation), has catalysed a profound paradigm shift in how tropical forests are governed. This shift has fundamentally transformed forests from localized ecosystems managed for timber extraction, biodiversity, or community subsistence into key financial instruments within global carbon markets (Angelsen, 2010). The foundational premise of REDD+ seeks to financially incentivize developing nations to conserve their forests by rewarding verifiable reductions in deforestation and forest degradation, effectively placing a financial value on the carbon stored in the biomass of trees (Angelsen et al., 2018).

While environmental economics traditionally conceptualizes REDD+ and similar offset mechanisms as cost-effective, market-based solutions to the existential threat of climate change, critical scholarship emerging from political ecology highlights the deeply complex socio-political dynamics embedded within these market structures (Bumpus & Liverman, 2008). Political ecology provides an indispensable analytical lens that examines how power relations, institutional arrangements, historical legacies, and economic structures shape environmental governance and resource distribution across multiple scales (Peet et al., 2011; Robbins, 2012). From this theoretical perspective, the rapid expansion of forest carbon markets represents a broader historical process of the commodification of nature, wherein intrinsic ecological functions, such as carbon sequestration and storage, are abstracted, quantified, and transformed into tradable financial assets (Escobar, 1998).

Scholars argue that this process reflects the overarching "neoliberalization of environmental governance," a system where market instruments are increasingly deployed to address environmental externalities that were historically managed through state-led regulatory frameworks or community-based customary approaches (Bumpus & Liverman, 2008; Liverman, 2009). The REDD+ framework perfectly exemplifies this transformation. Under the strictures of REDD+, forest carbon becomes measurable, quantifiable, and tradable within both compliance and voluntary international carbon markets (Lovell & MacKenzie, 2011). Through complex financial mechanisms such as carbon credits, results-based payments, and sovereign green bonds, remote tropical forests are irrevocably incorporated into global financial circuits (Paterson et al., 2014).

However, the integration of forests into the architecture of climate finance raises profound, unresolved questions regarding equity, governance, and ultimate environmental effectiveness. Political ecologists emphatically note that REDD+ interventions are not politically neutral; they frequently alter existing property rights, reshape local governance institutions, and redistribute economic benefits among stakeholders, often to the severe detriment of marginalised forest-dependent communities (Agrawal & Ostrom, 2001; Corbera & Schroeder, 2011). As global capital flows into tropical forest regions under the guise of climate mitigation, it interacts unpredictably with pre-existing inequalities, historical legacies of colonial resource extraction, and entrenched political oligarchies (Peluso & Watts, 2001).

Consequently, analysing forest carbon markets through a political ecology framework allows researchers to move well beyond purely economic efficiency considerations. Such an approach underscores the absolute imperative to reconcile global climate mitigation objectives with equitable resource governance, community land rights, and the sustainable and democratic management of global forest resources. This report provides an exhaustive examination of these intersecting domains, tracing the theoretical foundations, institutional mechanisms, empirical outcomes, and future policy trajectories of forest carbon commodification.

2. Theoretical foundations

The intersection of forest governance and international climate policy is defined by competing theoretical paradigms. Understanding the mechanisms driving global forest carbon markets requires a rigorous examination of both neoclassical environmental economics and critical political ecology, as these frameworks offer fundamentally divergent interpretations of what carbon markets are and what they achieve.

2.1 Environmental economics and externalities

Neoclassical environmental economics identifies climate change and systemic deforestation as quintessential market failures driven by the presence of massive negative externalities. Forests provide a wide range of off-site ecosystem services, including the sequestration and storage of anthropogenic carbon dioxide, which benefit the global climate system as a whole (Wunder, 2005). However, because these benefits are global, diffuse, and historically unpriced, local landowners and sovereign governments receive little to no financial compensation for conservation. Instead, the immediate economic incentives are heavily skewed toward deforestation for agricultural expansion, commercial logging, and mining (Busch & Ferretti-Gallon, 2017).

To correct this market failure, environmental economists advocate for carbon pricing mechanisms that internalize the externality. By assigning a distinct monetary value to enhanced carbon stocks, financial mechanisms like REDD+ aim to alter the opportunity cost of land use at the frontier (Tacconi, 2012). The economic rationale assumes that if the price of a carbon credit exceeds the marginal revenue generated from converting the forest to alternative uses (e.g., cattle ranching, palm oil, or soy production), rational economic actors will actively choose conservation.

The valuation of carbon reductions can be expressed through standard marginal abatement cost models. For a forest conservation project to be economically viable and rational under a Payments for Ecosystem Services (PES) framework, the payment (PPES) must satisfy the following condition:

$$P_{PES} \geq OC + C_{trans} + C_{MRV} + R_{premium}$$

Where OC represents the opportunity cost of foregone land development, C_{trans} represents the transaction costs associated with project establishment, CMRV represents the ongoing costs of measurement, reporting, and verification, and $R_{premium}$ represents the risk premium required to incentivise behavioural change over long-term horizons. While mathematically elegant and conceptually sound within closed models, this framework frequently assumes frictionless markets, clearly defined property rights, and perfect information-conditions that are exceedingly rare in complex tropical forest frontiers (Vatn, 2010; Muradian et al., 2010).

2.2 The Political Ecology Critique

Political ecology strongly critiques the apolitical, mathematically abstracted assumptions of environmental economics. Foundational theorists in the field argue that changes in environmental conditions and governance systems do not affect society evenly; instead, existing political, social, and economic differences determine the unequal distribution of costs and benefits (Blaikie & Brookfield, 1987; Bryant & Bailey, 1997). Political ecology suggests that viewing nature as an entity separate from politics and the wider capitalist economy fundamentally fails to address the inherent contradictions at the heart of the environmental crises that caused habitat loss initially (Robbins, 2012).

When applied specifically to carbon markets, political ecology introduces the critical concept of "accumulation by decarbonization" (Bumpus & Liverman, 2008). This framework suggests that carbon markets enable the continued expansion of global capitalism by creating entirely new sites for financial investment and profit extraction in the Global South, while simultaneously allowing major corporate polluters and industrialized nations in the Global North to delay the costly necessity of domestic emissions reductions. Furthermore, the commodification of carbon inherently requires the "disembedding" of forest ecosystems from their complex, localized socio-cultural contexts (Stephan & Lane, 2015). To create a legible, standardized, and tradable carbon credit, highly biodiverse and culturally significant ecosystems must be epistemologically reduced to a single, tradable metric: metric tonnes of carbon dioxide equivalent (tCO_2e) (MacKenzie, 2009).

This epistemic reduction overwhelmingly privileges Western scientific and technical expertise over Indigenous and local ecological knowledge. Consequently, structural power dynamics dictate whose knowledge is validated in the creation of these new carbon assets (Escobar, 1998). As witnessed in global climate negotiations under the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), Indigenous Peoples often face deeply entrenched structural and instrumental power imbalances. These imbalances severely limit their ability to shape market mechanisms, even when they successfully deploy discursive strategies to challenge what they term "carbon colonialism" (Osborne, 2015).

2.3 Analytical Framework: Integrating Political Ecology and Carbon Markets

To systematically analyse the multifaceted impacts of REDD+ and global forest carbon markets, it is necessary to construct a conceptual framework that maps the cascading interactions between high-level global policies, subsequent market mechanisms, and localized socio-political outcomes. The following tables outline this integrated approach:

Table 1. Integrating layers of political ecology and carbon markets

Analytical layer	Key components	Focus of inquiry
1. Economic layer	Carbon pricing, Payments for Ecosystem Services (PES), financial incentives, opportunity costs	Market efficiency, abatement costs, price signals, and the direction of global investment flows.
2. Institutional layer	UNFCCC architecture, national REDD+ policies, certification standards (Verra, Gold Standard)	Formal governance structures, property rights formalization, MRV standardization, and policy implementation.
3. Socio-political layer	Power asymmetries, community rights, epistemic dominance, discursive struggles	Distributional justice, the commodification of nature, livelihood impacts, and the marginalization of traditional voices.

Table 2. Core framework: Political ecology of carbon markets

Stage of Implementation	Conceptual Flow and Mechanisms
Global climate policy	The Paris agreement (Article 6) / UNFCCC REDD+ Frameworks establish the international mandate.
Market mechanisms	The creation of carbon credits, Results-Based Payments (RBF), and carbon trading platforms.
Forest governance systems	Integration into national forestry policies, local institutions, and common-pool land tenure systems.
Political ecology dimensions	The exertion of power relations, dominance of specific knowledge systems, institutional control, and restricted access to forest resources.
Socio-economic outcomes	Livelihood impacts, equity and justice issues, and debates over real environmental effectiveness.
Feedback loop	Resistance, indigenous contestation, policy reforms, and feedback to global climate governance.

3. Forests in carbon markets

The practical integration of forests into global carbon markets has evolved significantly and controversially over the past two decades. Forests are primarily incorporated through the generation of carbon offsets, which are produced by discrete projects that either prevent anticipated emissions (avoided deforestation and degradation under REDD+) or actively remove carbon from the atmosphere through biological growth (afforestation, reforestation, and revegetation) (Sills et al., 2014).

3.1 Compliance vs. Voluntary markets

Forest carbon is quantified and traded across two distinct but increasingly overlapping spheres: rigid compliance markets and the highly dynamic Voluntary Carbon Market (VCM).

Compliance markets are created, mandated, and regulated by national or subnational governments to meet legally binding greenhouse gas emission reduction targets. Cap-and-trade systems, such as the California Cap-and-Trade Program, the European Union Emissions Trading System (EU ETS), and compliance systems in New Zealand and Colombia, dictate the strict rules of engagement (Newell & Paterson, 2010). Historically, major compliance markets like the EU ETS have been highly hesitant to accept international forest carbon credits due to systemic concerns over permanence (the risk of forests burning down) and leakage (the risk of deforestation merely moving next door). However, frameworks like California's Tropical Forest Standard have attempted to bridge this gap by establishing rigorous criteria for accepting jurisdictional forest carbon.

In contrast, the VCM operates entirely outside of binding international treaties, driven instead by corporate sustainability commitments, philanthropic investments, public relations, and anticipatory positioning by financial speculators (Lovell & MacKenzie, 2011). The VCM has experienced explosive, albeit highly volatile, growth. By late 2021, the VCM reached mainstream financial status, largely dominated by Renewable Energy and Forestry projects, which together accounted for approximately 80% of all credit retirements globally.

However, this trajectory is not linear. Market growth slowed considerably throughout 2022 and 2023, reflecting a transitional phase characterized by massive macroeconomic shocks-including global inflation, fears of recession, and geopolitical instability-combined with increasing media and academic scrutiny over the actual ecological quality of the credits being traded. For the first time in the market's history, both the Forestry and Renewable Energy sectors experienced negative growth simultaneously during this period, mirroring the definition of a recession within traditional financial markets.

3.2 The commodification process and baseline epistemologies

Creating a viable forest carbon credit is an intensely technical process that requires transforming a living, breathing ecosystem into a standardized, abstracted financial asset (Bumpus & Liverman, 2008). This transformation relies fundamentally on the establishment of a baseline, a hypothetical counterfactual scenario estimating the exact amount of deforestation that would have occurred without the project's intervention. The difference between the estimated baseline emissions and the actual, measured emissions in the project area determines the volume of credits generated and sold (MacKenzie, 2009).

Political ecologists and critical accounting scholars argue vehemently that this reliance on counterfactual baselines introduces profound uncertainties, subjective biases, and moral hazards. Baselines can be deliberately manipulated or structurally designed to inflate the perceived historical or future threat of deforestation, thereby generating non-additional or "phantom" credits that look good on paper but do nothing for the atmosphere (Lund et al., 2017).

Furthermore, the stringent technical requirements for continuous measurement, calculation, reporting, and monitoring necessitate a rapid centralization of forest governance. Decision-making power is often involuntarily transferred from local communities and customary landholders to project implementers, urban carbon brokers, and international third-party auditors. This effectively reshapes forest governance to suit the legibility requirements of global financial markets rather than the subsistence needs of local populations (Lovell & MacKenzie, 2011).

4. Financialization of nature

The expansion of forest carbon markets represents merely one facet of a much broader, systemic trend: the deep financialization of nature. This paradigm seeks to ostensibly solve environmental degradation by bringing entire ecosystems onto corporate and sovereign balance sheets through complex frameworks like Natural Capital Accounting (Paterson et al., 2014).

4.1 Natural Capital Accounting and the "foresting" ontology

Natural capital accounting systematically assigns financial value to ecosystems, fundamentally shifting the perception of nature from an entity with intrinsic worth and historical agency to a utilitarian provider of quantified "ecosystem services". This shift is not merely economic; it is profoundly ontological. As noted by critical environmental scholars, global environmental politics approaches forests primarily as administrative units, timber reserves, or carbon sinks designed to balance ledger books (Escobar, 1998).

This reductionist, market-driven view contrasts sharply and frequently violently with the lived perspectives of Indigenous peoples and traditional populations, for whom forests are living beings, sacred socio-spatial arenas, or deeply relational entities. The critical ontological turn toward alternative ways of knowing-sometimes referred to in recent literature as "foresting"-challenges the dominant, sterile market logic. It advocates for a much more nuanced understanding of human-nonhuman entanglements that actively resist financial abstraction and commodification. When a forest is reduced to a "natural capital asset," the complex web of life and the people who rely on it are rendered invisible to the market unless they threaten the asset's carbon value.

4.2 Digital ecology, epistemic Infrastructure, and the politics of scale

The financialization of forest carbon is absolutely dependent on advanced, highly capital-intensive technological infrastructures. Measurement, Reporting, and Verification (MRV) systems utilize satellite remote sensing, LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging), drone surveillance, and massive digital forest inventories to quantify carbon fluxes with perceived high precision (Goetz et al., 2009;

Hansen et al., 2013). Increasingly, centralized digital platforms and automated artificial intelligence technologies are deployed to facilitate, monitor, and verify Forest Carbon Offset (FCO) projects globally.

However, digital technologies reconfigure power relations across landscapes. Technological barriers to entry, algorithmic biases, and market-oriented digital platforms often systematically marginalize local stakeholders who lack capital or technical training.

This "epistemic infrastructure" privileges Western scientific expertise and remote sensing over grounded ecological knowledge. This dynamic reinforces historical structural inequalities, demanding that local communities conform to reporting requirements dictated by registries in the Global North (Escobar, 1998; Lovell & MacKenzie, 2011). Power is thereby centralized away from the forest and into the hands of standard-setters and data brokers.

5. Climate finance and investment mechanisms

The global imperative to finance large-scale forest conservation has spawned a diverse and rapidly evolving array of climate finance mechanisms, ranging from sovereign debt restructuring programs to stringent corporate net-zero frameworks.

5.1 Results-based funding and climate funds: The Amazon fund

Results-Based Funding (RBF) has become a dominant architecture in multilateral climate finance, designed to reward developing nations financially after promised emissions reductions are verified (Angelsen et al., 2018). The Amazon Fund in Brazil stands as a paramount case study. Managed by the Brazilian Development Bank (BNDES) and capitalized with a US$ 1 billion commitment from Norway, the fund was designed to channel resources toward combating Amazonian deforestation while respecting national sovereignty.

While the Amazon Fund demonstrated that developing country institutions could meet international fiduciary standards, political ecology analysis reveals structural vulnerabilities. The RBF mechanism proved susceptible to domestic political shifts. When federal agendas pivoted toward environmental deregulation, the fund's efficacy plummeted, deforestation spiked, and inclusive governance structures such as the multi-stakeholder Guidance Committee (COFA) were marginalized.

Furthermore, climate funds often treat the localized symptoms of deforestation while ignoring the structural, globalized drivers of unequal ecological exchange, such as the international commodities trade in beef, soy, and minerals (Amin, 1976; Seymour & Busch, 2016).

5.2 Green bonds and sovereign debt mechanisms

To mobilize private capital at a scale beyond public funding, international financial institutions have pioneered nature-linked sovereign debt instruments and green bonds. Mechanisms such as "debt-for-nature swaps" allow highly indebted developing nations to restructure their sovereign debt obligations in exchange for legally binding commitments to environmental conservation.

For instance, in 2016, the Republic of Seychelles restructured US$ 21.6 million of its sovereign debt through a complex agreement facilitated by The Nature Conservancy (TNC), directing the generated savings into the Seychelles Conservation and Climate Adaptation Trust (SeyCCAT) to protect marine and terrestrial ecosystems. Similar innovative sovereign bonds have been recently issued by Uruguay, Belize, Peru, and Barbados, deeply intertwining national fiscal policy with verifiable ecosystem outcomes and carbon conservation metrics.

While these financial instruments demonstrably lower crushing debt-servicing costs and inject vital capital into local conservation efforts, political economists warn that they can also act as insidious mechanisms of financial discipline. They impose strict environmental conditionalities that subtly erode state sovereignty over natural resources, allowing foreign creditors and international NGOs to dictate domestic land-use policies under the guise of ecological salvation.

5.3 Corporate net-zero strategies and accountability

Corporate demand forms the absolute backbone of the Voluntary Carbon Market. Recently, the framework guiding corporate net-zero strategies has undergone significant restructuring to combat rampant accusations of greenwashing. The Science Based Targets initiative (SBTi), particularly through its stringent Forest, Land and Agriculture (FLAG) guidance, now mandates that participating companies set science-based targets covering all Scope 1, 2, and 3 emissions, alongside strict, mandatory zero-deforestation commitments by no later than 2025.

Furthermore, the Voluntary Carbon Markets Integrity Initiative (VCMI) has established a rigorous Claims Code of Practice to tightly regulate how corporations publicly report their use of carbon credits. A major conceptual shift is currently occurring in the market: moving away from purchasing cheap credits to claim immediate corporate "carbon neutrality," and moving toward recognizing high-quality credits as a mechanism for "ongoing emissions responsibility" or "beyond value chain mitigation". This vital shift acknowledges that purchasing carbon offsets cannot mathematically or ethically substitute for deep, internal corporate decarbonization.

6. Governance and market institutions

The financial credibility and atmospheric integrity of forest carbon markets hinge entirely on their governance structures and the specific institutions that certify emission reductions. Due to the decentralized nature of the VCM, governance is largely privatized, overseen by powerful non-governmental standards organizations.

6.1 Certification agencies and carbon accounting

The global carbon offset market is heavily dominated by a few major registries, most notably Verra (which operates the Verified Carbon Standard, VCS) and the Gold Standard. These private entities act as the central banks of the carbon world: they create the market rules, accredit third-party auditors, approve complex methodologies, and issue the serialized carbon credits (Verified Carbon Units, or VCUs) that are ultimately traded. The entire process relies on specific, highly technical methodologies that dictate precisely how baselines are calculated, how leakage is assessed across landscapes, and how long-term permanence is guaranteed through buffer pools.

However, the privatization of standard-setting creates inherent, systemic conflicts of interest. Project developers, who stand to profit substantially from higher credit yields, are often deeply involved in the creation and funding of the very methodologies that govern them. Recent global efforts to unify and tighten market standards have been spearheaded by the Integrity Council for the Voluntary Carbon Market (IC-VCM). In 2024, the IC-VCM formally launched the Core Carbon Principles (CCPs), a benchmark framework consisting of ten rigorous criteria focusing on effective governance, tracking, transparency, robust independent quantification, additionality, and sustainable development safeguards. Verra and other major registries are currently undergoing painful adaptations of their legacy methodologies (such as transitioning REDD+ projects to the new consolidated methodology VM0048) to secure CCP labels, signaling a forced maturation toward much tighter regulatory oversight.

6.2 Jurisdictional REDD+ (JREDD+)

Recognizing the severe limitations of isolated, project-level REDD+ initiatives, which historically suffer from spatial leakage, where deforestation is simply displaced from a protected project area to a neighbouring unprotected area, international climate policy has increasingly favoured "Jurisdictional REDD+" (JREDD+) approaches (Brockhaus et al., 2017). JREDD+ integrates forest conservation at the macro-scale of entire states, provinces, or nations, embedding carbon accounting directly within public policy and comprehensive regional land-use planning.

A prominent, pioneering example is the state of Acre in the Brazilian Amazon, which integrated JREDD+ into its State System of Incentives for Environmental Services (SISA). Between 2005 and 2015, the state successfully reduced deforestation by approximately 60% while incorporating formal social participation spaces that allowed for dialogue and decision-making involving Indigenous Peoples and Local Communities (IPs & LCs).

JREDD+ utilizes a technical accounting concept called "nesting" to synchronize existing local private projects with the broader jurisdictional baselines, theoretically preventing the double-counting of carbon credits. Despite its massive theoretical advantages, JREDD+ implementation requires incredibly complex political coordination across federal, state, and municipal governance levels. It faces immense, real-world challenges regarding land tenure regularization, managing competing economic pressures from agribusiness, and establishing truly equitable Benefit Sharing Plans (BSP) that deliver funds to the forest floor. Similarly, in Costa Rica, the integration of REDD+ through the National System of Conservation Areas (SINAC) and Indigenous Development Associations (ADIIs) has highlighted the intense capacity challenges local institutions face when navigating bureaucratic carbon requirements.

7. Critiques and challenges

Despite ongoing institutional refinements and technological advancements, the political ecology of forest carbon markets reveals profound, systemic challenges encompassing massive market volatility, compromised environmental integrity, and severe socio-economic inequities.

7.1 Market volatility and environmental integrity

The voluntary carbon market has recently faced a crisis of legitimacy. In early 2023, high-profile media investigations, most notably an extensive exposé by The Guardian, drew on academic research by scientists Thales West and David Coomes. These reports alleged that a vast majority of REDD+ offset credits approved by Verra were essentially "phantom credits" that failed to deliver genuine climate benefits. The studies argued that developers used flexible baselines that overestimated historical deforestation threats, resulting in the over-issuance of millions of credits.

Verra contested these findings by citing methodological discrepancies, defending buffer pool systems, and critiquing the synthetic datasets used. Nonetheless, the controversy catalysed a sharp decline in market confidence, corporate withdrawal, and plummeting credit prices.

From an ecological economics perspective, Voluntary Carbon Markets suffer from dysfunctions related to deep information asymmetries (Meitner, 2024). Three core pillars of environmental integrity remain structurally challenged:

1. Additionality: Proving definitively that the emissions reductions would not have occurred in the absence of the carbon finance, a counterfactual that is impossible to prove with 100% certainty (Lund et al., 2017).
2. Leakage: Ensuring that the localized protection of one forest patch does not merely shift the economic drivers of logging or agriculture to adjacent, unprotected areas.
3. Permanence: Guaranteeing that the biologically stored carbon will remain securely out of the atmosphere for decades to centuries, a massive, perhaps insurmountable challenge given the rapidly escalating threat of climate-induced mega-fires, droughts, and political reversals in tropical nations.

7.2 Social equity, green grabbing, and forest-dependent communities

The distributional impacts of REDD+ on forest-dependent communities represent a central debate within political ecology. Tropical forests function as vital common-pool resources supporting the livelihoods, cultural practices, and subsistence agriculture of millions of Indigenous and local people (Agrawal & Ostrom, 2001). When strict carbon conservation zones are established, requirements for legible boundaries and centralized governance frequently restrict customary resource access. Political ecologists characterize this dynamic as "green grabbing", the appropriation of land and resources for environmental ends that dispossesses local populations (Fairhead et al., 2012; Lund et al., 2017).

Empirical case studies demonstrate these dynamics across geographies:

India: REDD+ pilot projects in Odisha and Himachal Pradesh encountered friction between the technical demands of carbon forestry and the democratic rights enshrined in the Forest Rights Act of 2006. While organizations like the Regional Centre for Development Cooperation (RCDC) sought to use REDD+ frameworks to consolidate Community Forest Management (CFM) rights, concerns persist that state-centric implementation could centralize control back to state forest departments.

Indonesia: A history of centralized forest governance continues to influence modern climate initiatives. Efforts to implement REDD+ policies, such as the establishment and subsequent dissolution of the National REDD+ Agency (BP REDD+), collided with bureaucratic resistance, jurisdictional disputes, and powerful commercial interests. At the community level, engagement was frequently reduced to top-down "socialization" rather than genuine Free, Prior, and Informed Consent (FPIC).

Consequently, political ecologists warn that REDD+ risks devolving into a "conservation fad". It reproduces financial value for consultants, brokers, and agencies, while delivering questionable environmental gains and reinforcing pre-existing inequalities on the ground (Beymer-Farris & Bassett, 2012; Lund et al., 2017).

8. Policy and future directions

The architecture of global climate governance is currently undergoing a critical, highly contested transition, primarily driven by the painful operationalization of the Paris Agreement and the rapid emergence of novel environmental markets targeting biodiversity.

8.1 Paris Agreement Article 6 and the future of trading

Article 6 of the Paris Agreement serves as the regulatory linchpin for the future of international carbon markets. It establishes the complex rules by which sovereign countries can trade emissions reductions to meet their pledged Nationally Determined Contributions (NDCs). The framework is divided into three distinct mechanisms, two of which directly govern market trades:

A central, highly politicized point of contention under Article 6 revolves around approved methodologies and the concept of "emission avoidance." During recent UN climate conferences (e.g., COP28 and the Bonn climate conference in June 2024), it was clarified that theoretical emission avoidance (e.g., a country claiming it will leave fossil fuels in the ground) does not qualify for tradable credits. However, the precise regulatory treatment of "avoided deforestation" (the very core of REDD+) under the newly established Article 6.4 supervisory body remains highly negotiated and deeply uncertain.

Rainforest nations (such as Belize, Gabon, and Papua New Guinea), operating under Article 6.2, advocate forcefully that national-level REDD+ frameworks already deliver robust atmospheric integrity, have been vetted by the UNFCCC transparency framework, and should therefore bypass duplicate technical reviews required by the new 6.4 mechanisms. The ultimate, finalized design of Article 6 will determine whether the international market effectively raises global climate ambition by channelling billions into forest conservation, or merely resurrects the low-quality offsetting practices that plagued the Kyoto Protocol.

Table 3. Relevant articles of the Paris Agreement

Mechanism	Description and Function	Relevance to Forest Carbon and REDD+
Article 6.2	Governs bilateral or multilateral cooperative approaches allowing the trade of Internationally Transferred Mitigation Outcomes (ITMOs) between nations.	Jurisdictional REDD+ results are heavily integrated here. Trades require strict "corresponding adjustments" to ensure no double-counting occurs between the buyer and host nation.
Article 6.4	Establishes a centralized, UN-supervised global carbon market, conceptually succeeding the Kyoto Protocol's Clean Development Mechanism (CDM).	Operates primarily at the project level. Rainforest nations have expressed deep concerns that the 6.4 rules might compromise robust national-level REDD+ accounting by prioritizing isolated, potentially leaky projects.
Article 6.8	Provides a framework for non-market approaches for climate cooperation.	Facilitates technology transfer, capacity building, and sovereign grants for forest protection entirely without the exchange of carbon credits.

8.2 Emerging biodiversity credits and nature markets

As the ecological limits and public relations liabilities of pure carbon commodification become apparent, the financial frontier is shifting aggressively toward pricing broader ecosystem services. Under the auspices of the Global Biodiversity Framework (GBF) agreed upon at COP15, and heavily supported by institutions like the World Economic Forum, "nature markets" and "biodiversity credits" are rapidly emerging as the next wave of environmental finance.

European Commission policies, spearheaded by figures like Ursula von der Leyen, have actively discussed establishing "nature credits" to financially incentivize landowners for providing essential services like water purification, soil retention, and pollination. However, applying the carbon market template to biodiversity is fraught with epistemological challenges. Unlike carbon, which relies on a universally fungible metric (tCO_2e) mapped to a single planetary boundary (global temperature), biodiversity is highly localized, intrinsically heterogeneous, and fiercely resistant to fungibility. There is no scientifically valid single metric for a unit of "nature."

Political ecologists have swiftly mounted intense critiques against the rollout of biodiversity credits, warning that applying market-based instruments to nature conservation historically fails to deliver promised ecological outputs while exacerbating social inequalities (Fletcher et al., 2016). The risk of "green grabbing" is massively amplified when vast tracts of land are enclosed specifically to generate tradable biodiversity assets for corporate buyers. Furthermore, critical scholars argue that the current dominant discourse on Nature-based Solutions (NbS) often promotes rigid, top-down technical standards that ignore historical contexts, marginalize Indigenous knowledge systems, and completely fail to address the root systemic drivers of ecological breakdown, such as overconsumption in the global north. A fundamental shift toward flexible evaluation frameworks that prioritize procedural justice, recognitional justice, and local autonomy is essential to prevent NbS and biodiversity markets from becoming yet another vehicle for neoliberal enclosure.

9. Conclusion

The comprehensive literature on forest carbon markets highlights the intricate, fraught, and often contradictory interplay between environmental economics, international climate policy, and political ecology. At its core, the global drive to commodify forest carbon through mechanisms such as REDD+ and the Voluntary Carbon Market represents an incredibly ambitious, historically unprecedented attempt to align global capitalist economic incentives with critical planetary boundaries. By successfully pricing carbon externalities, these market-based instruments theoretically alter the opportunity costs of frontier deforestation, funnelling vital, previously unavailable capital into underfunded conservation regimes and generating novel governance architectures like sovereign green bonds and Jurisdictional REDD+ programs.

However, viewing these markets solely through the narrow lens of neoclassical economic efficiency obscures the profound, often disruptive socio-political transformations they trigger on the ground. Analysing these mechanisms through a political ecology framework exposes the persistent, structural power asymmetries deeply embedded in global climate governance. The transformation of complex, localized, culturally rich forest ecosystems into fungible, globally traded carbon credits require an epistemic and institutional infrastructure that frequently marginalizes Indigenous and local ecological knowledge. The centralization of forest governance, driven relentlessly by the technical demands of Measurement, Reporting, and Verification (MRV) and international certification standards, risks dispossessing forest-dependent communities of their customary land rights while failing to deliver on the lofty promises of equitable economic benefit-sharing.

Furthermore, the persistent, high-profile challenges surrounding environmental integrity-most notably baseline manipulation, spatial leakage, and the illusion of permanence-demonstrate the inherent, perhaps unresolvable difficulties of applying rigid market logics to dynamic, living ecological systems. As global climate governance transitions toward the complex implementation of Paris Agreement Article 6 and the nascent, highly controversial development of biodiversity markets, it is absolutely critical to heed the harsh lessons of the past two decades of forest carbon trading.

The ultimate effectiveness of global forest carbon markets depends entirely on the inclusive governance structures and the socio-political contexts in which they are embedded. A sustainable and truly just climate policy must move far beyond the mere "accumulation by decarbonization." It necessitates a radical paradigm shift that recognizes the multiplicity of forest ontologies, permanently empowers local and Indigenous governance structures, and bravely addresses the structural macroeconomic drivers of global deforestation. Climate mitigation strategies will only achieve lasting environmental objectives if they simultaneously and equally prioritize the procedural justice, legally recognized land rights, and equitable resource governance of the local communities who have successfully safeguarded these vital ecosystems for millennia.

References

Agrawal, A., & Ostrom, E. (2001). Collective action, property rights, and decentralization in resource use in India and Nepal. Politics & Society, 29(4), 485–514.

Amin, S. (1976). Unequal development. Monthly Review Press.

Angelsen, A. (Ed.). (2010). Realising REDD+: National strategy and policy options. Center for International Forestry Research.

Angelsen, A., Hermansen, E. A. T., Rajão, R., & van der Hoff, R. (2018). Results-based payment: Who should be paid, and for what? In A. Angelsen, C. Martius, V. De Sy, A. E. Duchelle, A. M. Larson, & T. T. Pham (Eds.), Transforming REDD+: Lessons and new directions (pp. 41–54). Center for International Forestry Research. https://doi.org/10.17528/cifor/006108

Baccini, A., Goetz, S. J., Walker, W., Laporte, N., Sun, M., Sulla-Menashe, D., Hackler, J., Beck, P. S. A., Dubayah, R., Friedl, M. A., Samanta, S., & Houghton, R. A. (2012). Estimated carbon dioxide emissions from tropical deforestation improved by carbon-density maps. Nature Climate Change, 2(3), 182–185. https://doi.org/10.1038/nclimate1354

Bastin, J.-F., Finegold, Y., Garcia, C., Mollicone, D., Rezende, M., Routh, D., Zohner, C. M., & Crowther, T. W. (2019). The global tree restoration potential. Science, 365(6448), 76–79. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aax0848

Beymer-Farris, B. A., & Bassett, T. J. (2012). The REDD menace: Resurgent protectionism in Tanzania's mangrove forests. Global Environmental Change, 22(2), 332–341.

Blaikie, P., & Brookfield, H. (1987). Land degradation and society. Methuen.

Brockhaus, M., Korhonen-Kurki, K., Sehring, K., Di Gregorio, M., Assembe-Mvondo, S., Babon, A., Bekele, M., Gebara, M. F., Khatri, D. B., Paudel, N. S., & Loft, L. (2017). Policy networks in REDD+ performance: A comparative analysis of institutional power in eight countries. Ecology and Society, 22(4), Article 23. https://doi.org/10.5751/ES-09548-220423

Bryant, R. L., & Bailey, S. (1997). Third World political ecology. Routledge.

Bulkeley, H., Andonova, L. B., Betsill, M. M., Compagnon, D., Hale, T., Hoffmann, M. J., Newell, P., Paterson, M., Roger, C., & VanDeveer, S. D. (2014). Transnational climate change governance. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9781107706033

Bumpus, A. G., & Liverman, D. M. (2008). Accumulation by decarbonization and the governance of carbon offsets. Economic Geography, 84(2), 127–155. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1944-8287.2008.tb00401.x

Busch, J., & Ferretti-Gallon, K. (2017). What drives deforestation and what stops it? A meta-analysis. Review of Environmental Economics and Policy, 11(1), 3–23. https://doi.org/10.1093/reep/rew013

Chhatre, A., & Agrawal, A. (2009). Trade-offs and synergies between carbon storage and livelihood benefits from forest commons. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 106(42), 17667–17670. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0905308106

Corbera, E., & Schroeder, H. (2011). Governing and implementing REDD+. Environmental Science & Policy, 14(2), 89–99. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsci.2010.11.002

Escobar, A. (1998). Whose knowledge, whose nature? Biodiversity, conservation, and the political ecology of social movements. Journal of Political Ecology, 5(1), 53–82.

Fairhead, J., Leach, M., & Scoones, I. (2012). Green grabbing: A new appropriation of nature? Journal of Peasant Studies, 39(2), 237–261.

Fletcher, R., Dressler, W., Büscher, B., & Anderson, Z. R. (2016). Questioning REDD+ and the future of market-based conservation. Conservation Biology, 30(3), 673–675.

Goetz, S. J., Baccini, A., Laporte, N., Johns, T., Walker, W., Kellndorfer, J., Houghton, R. A., & Sun, M. (2009). Mapping and monitoring carbon stocks with satellite observations: A comparison of methods. Carbon Balance and Management, 4, Article 2. https://doi.org/10.1186/1750-0680-4-2

Griscom, B. W., Adams, J., Ellis, P. W., Houghton, R. A., Lomax, G., Miteva, D. A., Schlesinger, W. H., Shoch, D., Siikamäki, J. V., Smith, P., Woodbury, P., Zganjar, C., Blackman, A., Campari, J., Conant, R. T., Delgado, C., Elias, P., Gopalakrishna, T., Hamsik, M. R., ... Fargione, J. (2017). Natural climate solutions. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 114(44), 11645–11650. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1710465114

Hansen, M. C., Potapov, P. V., Moore, R., Hancher, M., Turubanova, S. A., Tyukavina, A., Thau, D., Stehman, S. V., Goetz, S. J., Loveland, T. R., Kommareddy, A., Egorov, A., Chini, L., Justice, C. O., & Townshend, J. R. G. (2013). High-resolution global maps of 21st-century forest cover change. Science, 342(6160), 850–853.

Integrity Council for the Voluntary Carbon Market. (2024). Core carbon principles, assessment framework and assessment procedure (Version 2).

Karsenty, A., & Ongolo, S. (2012). Can "fragile states" decide to reduce their deforestation? The inappropriate use of the theory of incentives with respect to the REDD mechanism. Forest Policy and Economics, 18, 38–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.forpol.2011.05.006

Lansing, D. M. (2012). Realizing carbon's value: Discourse and calculation in the production of carbon forestry offsets in Costa Rica. Society & Natural Resources, 25(8), 731–745.

Liverman, D. M. (2009). Conventions of climate governance. Environment and Planning A: Economy and Space, 41(2), 279–296. https://doi.org/10.1068/a40283

Loft, L., Pham, T. T., Wong, G. Y., Brockhaus, M., Le, D. N., Tjajadi, J. S., & Luttrell, C. (2017). Risks to REDD+: Potential pitfalls for policy design and implementation. Environmental Conservation, 44(1), 44–55. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892916000412

Lovell, H., & MacKenzie, D. (2011). Accounting for carbon: The role of accounting professional organisations in governing climate change. Antipode, 43(3), 704–730.

Lund, J. F., Sungusia, E., Mabele, M. B., & Scheba, A. (2017). Promising change, delivering continuity: REDD+ as conservation fad. World Development, 89, 124–139. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.worlddev.2016.08.005

MacKenzie, D. (2009). Making things the same: Gases, emission rights and the politics of carbon markets. Accounting, Organizations and Society, 34(3–4), 440–455.

Meitner, L. (2024). Voluntary carbon markets: A critical assessment (IPE Working Paper No. 246/2024). Berlin School of Economics and Law, Institute for International Political Economy.

Muradian, R., Corbera, E., Pascual, U., Kosoy, N., & May, P. H. (2010). Reconciling theory and practice: An alternative conceptual framework for understanding payments for environmental services. Ecological Economics, 69(6), 1202–1208.

Newell, P., & Paterson, M. (2010). Climate capitalism: Global warming and the transformation of the global economy. Cambridge University Press.

Okereke, C. (2007). Global justice and neoliberal environmental governance: Ethics, sustainable development and international co-operation. Routledge.

Osborne, T. (2015). Tradeoffs in carbon commodification: A political ecology of common property forest governance. Geoforum, 67, 64–73. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.geoforum.2015.10.007

Paterson, M., Hoffmann, M., Betsill, M., & Bernstein, S. (2014). The micro-foundations of policy diffusion: Toward a multi-level carbon governance framework. New Political Economy, 19(3), 420–445. https://doi.org/10.1080/13563467.2013.796454

Peet, R., Robbins, P., & Watts, M. (Eds.). (2011). Global political ecology. Routledge.

Peluso, N. L., & Watts, M. (Eds.). (2001). Violent environments. Cornell University Press.

Phelps, J., Webb, E. L., & Agrawal, A. (2010). Does REDD+ threaten to recentralize forest governance? Science, 328(5976), 312–313. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1187774

Robbins, P. (2012). Political ecology: A critical introduction (2nd ed.). Wiley-Blackwell.

Science Based Targets initiative. (2024). Forest, land and agriculture science-based target-setting guidance.

Seymour, F., & Busch, J. (2016). Why forests? Why now? The science, economics, and politics of tropical forests and climate change. Center for Global Development.

Sills, E. O., Atmadja, S., de Sassi, C., Duchelle, A. E., Kweka, D., Resosudarmo, I. A. P., & Sunderlin, W. D. (Eds.). (2014). REDD+ on the ground: A case book of subnational initiatives across the globe. Center for International Forestry Research. https://doi.org/10.17528/cifor/005202

Stephan, B., & Lane, R. (Eds.). (2015). The politics of carbon markets. Routledge.

Tacconi, L. (2012). Redefining payments for environmental services. Ecological Economics, 73, 29–36. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolecon.2011.09.028

Vatn, A. (2010). An institutional analysis of payments for environmental services. Ecological Economics, 69(6), 1245–1252. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolecon.2009.11.008

Wunder, S. (2005). Payments for environmental services: Some nuts and bolts (CIFOR Occasional Paper No. 42). Center for International Forestry Research.

CHAPTER 10

Living Root Bridges: Indigenous Bio-Engineering for Climate Resilience and Sustainable Infrastructure

Hina*, Yamini Baghel, Jaagriti Patra, Saket Kumar Kosma and Dinesh Manhare

Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg-491111, India

*Corresponding E-mail: hinamandle07@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Hina, Baghel, Y., Patra, J., Kosma, S. K., & Manhare, D. (2026). Living Root Bridges: Indigenous Bio-Engineering for Climate Resilience and Sustainable Infrastructure. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 176-185). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

The structural vulnerabilities of traditional "grey" infrastructure in high-rainfall tropical areas have been made clear by the global climate disaster and growing urbanisation. The Jingkieng Jri is an innovative, regenerative nature-based solution (NbS) that serves as an alternative to industrial materials. These systems are created through the guided manipulation of aerial roots, which enhances their structural integrity using biological processes such as thigmotropism and vascular anastomosis. This contrasts with manmade constructions, which tend to deteriorate over time. This study examines the chronological development of pertinent studies from 2010 to 2026 using a multi-dimensional assessment methodology, emphasising a change from basic soil bio-engineering to international conservation policy and UNESCO recognition. From the first mother tree selection to long-term consolidation, the implementation stages demonstrate a distinct "slow infrastructure" paradigm that serves as natural capital appreciation. This work demonstrates how living architecture offers robust, carbon-neutral solutions for riparian stabilisation and rural connectivity by fusing traditional ethno-silvicultural techniques with contemporary biometric modelling. The results underscore the importance of community-led stewardship models, such as the Dorbar Shnong, in preserving socio-ecological resilience against climate instability.

Keywords: Biological engineering; Ficus elastica; Inosculation; Nature-based Solutions; Riparian connectivity; Silviculture.

Abbreviations

Abbreviations	Description
C	Carbon
LRB	Living Root Bridge
LRBs	Living Root Bridges
NbS	Nature-based Solution
UGS	Urban Green Spaces
UHI	Urban Heat Island
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization

1. Introduction

The global climate crisis and swift, frequently unplanned urbanisation have revealed the intrinsic weaknesses of traditional "grey" infrastructure. Hydrothermal stress often causes steel and concrete structure systems in high-rainfall tropical climates to deteriorate more quickly and fail catastrophically during extreme weather events (Petrone & Preti, 2010; Soto, 2022). The scholarly conversation is moving toward Nature-based Solutions, which offer resilient, regenerative, and carbon-neutral substitutes, as the shortcomings of industrial materials become more apparent (Middleton et al., 2020). The Jingkieng Jri, or Living Root Bridges, of Meghalaya, India, are among the most advanced instances of such living architecture.

These bridges are "grown" over several decades by the cooperative efforts of the indigenous Khasi and Jaintia populations rather than "constructed" in the anthropogenic sense (Chaudhury et al., 2016). These communities have created a special kind of functional bio-engineering that flourishes in the wettest ecosystem on Earth by directing the aerial roots of the Ficus elastica Roxb. tree across choppy river spans (Shankar, 2015). These living structures show a biological "self-healing" capacity, where the load-bearing strength rises through the natural process of inosculation, the vascular fusing of distinct roots, in contrast to contemporary infrastructure that deteriorates over time (Ludwig et al., 2019; Faucon et al., 2024).

When the Indian government formally submitted the Living Root Bridges Cultural Landscapes nomination to the UNESCO World Heritage List in January 2026, the value of this age-old wisdom became a worldwide milestone. In early 2026, Shri Hally War received the Padma Shri in appreciation of his lifetime commitment to "root-weaving" and the conservation of this intangible legacy. These advancements point to a crucial chance to close the knowledge gap between traditional ecology and contemporary silvicultural science (Middleton et al., 2022).

Although the botanical characteristics of Ficus species have been the focus of the current study, these structures should be reevaluated in light of sustainability pathways and urban natural capital (Hina et al., 2025). According to recent landscape and genomic research, maintaining the diversity of these habitats is crucial to the long-term survival of these historic bridges (Ghosh et al., 2025). The concepts of living infrastructure resilience, carbon sequestration, and social forestry provide an essential framework for future sustainable management as environmental pressure on industrial corridors increases (Farina et al., 2019). This chapter assesses the Living Root Bridges' ecological services, traditional methods, and botanical mechanisms while promoting their incorporation into contemporary frameworks for climate adaptation and sustainable forestry.

2. Architectural Morphogenesis and Biomechanical Integrity

The concepts of Regenerative Design enable Living Root Bridges (LRBs) to achieve structural efficacy that goes beyond traditional civil engineering (Middleton et al., 2020). The synergy between mechanical load-bearing capability and plant physiology is assessed in this section.

2.1. Physiological Plasticity of Ficus elastica Roxb.

The distinct ontogeny of Ficus elastica is the foundation of LRB success. The aerial roots can search for scaffolds across riverine gaps because of their great sensitivity to mechanical stimuli (thigmotropism) and moisture gradients (hydrotropism) (Ludwig et al., 2019; Faucon et al., 2024). By preserving soil stability and landscape connectedness, these trees, a "keystone species," improve Natural Capital (Shankar, 2015; Hina et al., 2025).

2.2. Vascular Anastomosis: The Foundation of Inosculation

Vascular anastomosis, also known as inosculation, is the source of LRBs' mechanical endurance. The cambium layers initiate cellular bridging under consistent physical pressure, leading to the complete fusion of xylem and phloem tissues (Faucon et al., 2024). The bridge can withstand the pressures of turbulent monsoons due to the unique biomechanical attributes offered by this biological fusion, such as enhanced energy dissipation and vibration damping (Farina et al., 2019; Petrone & Preti, 2010).

2.3. Adaptive Secondary Growth and Biomechanical Modeling

Adaptive secondary growth drives the change from a flexible root to a load-bearing part. In reaction to mechanical stress, the plant deposits more cellulose and lignin. A mature bridge may carry more than 50 people at once because, according to the "Pipe Model Theory," the vascular transport system scales proportionately with increasing mechanical loads (Shinozaki et al., 1964; Chaudhury et al., 2016).

2.4. Structural Redundancy and Risk Mitigation

As LRBs include many interconnected root members, they have intrinsic structural redundancy; a single root's localized failure does not cause the entire system to collapse (Shankar, 2015). In seismically vulnerable and isolated areas, this "no-cost" eco-technology provides a better, more durable substitute for rigid materials, promoting sustainable socioeconomic development without depleting natural resources (Soto, 2022; Hina et al., 2025).

3. Ethno-Silvicultural Methodologies and Socio-Ecological Governance

The conversion of Ficus elastica roots into functioning infrastructure is a result of long-term human and plant interaction. It represents an example of "slow infrastructure" (Bhasin, 2023). This paradigm represents a shift from industrial construction to a rhythmic and biological form of assembly. Community-led governance frameworks and traditional bio-weaving techniques ensure the survival of these living systems for future generations. These indigenous systems provide an important model for future-proofing infrastructure against climate instability. They view the forest as a co-designer rather than merely a resource (Nunes et al., 2024).

3.1. Precision in Bio-weaving and Guidance Systems

A "mother tree" that is strategically placed on a riverbank or steep slope is the first step in the engineering of a Living Root Bridge (LRB). Indigenous Khasi and Jaintia practitioners employ a variety of building techniques adapted to local environmental circumstances (Roy et al., 2021). Traditionally, temporary scaffolding made from bamboo or hollowed-out Areca catechu (betel nut) trunks is used to guide aerial roots across a span. These conduits protect the young roots from desiccation and mechanical damage while directing their growth toward the opposite bank (Chaudhury et al., 2016; Shankar, 2015). The roots are carefully woven and interconnected over a period of 15-30 years. During this process, the individual root fibers gradually fuse through natural inosculation and form a strong load-bearing lattice (Ludwig et al., 2019).

This approach is increasingly recognized as a form of "living architecture" that integrates structural functionality with biological growth (Faucon et al., 2024; Beisi, 2021). Experts like Shri Hally War, recipient of the Padma Shri in 2026, are recognized for the precision required in this traditional art. His ability to predict stress-induced lignification decades in advance is the pinnacle of indigenous structural engineering.

3.2. Community Stewardship and Social Forestry Models

The development and maintenance of Living Root Bridges (LRBs) rely on multi-generational commitment and collaborative grassroots participation. Unlike modern industrial infrastructure, these bridges are sustained through continuous community stewardship. This stewardship exemplifies "social forestry," where the bridge's maintenance is closely linked to the community's socioeconomic structure (Shankar, 2015; Mukherjee, 2023). These constructions are often managed by traditional village councils, known as Dorbar Shnong, which are responsible for replacing and supporting scaffolds and regularly tightening roots.

To overcome the "governance challenges" that frequently beset top-down urban green space initiatives, community-led management is crucial (Hina et al., 2025). Recent studies suggest that combining formal environmental policies with indigenous governance systems can strengthen climate adaptation in rural landscapes (Singh et al., 2024). This integration enhances both ecological resilience and community participation. These indigenous structures guarantee the bridges' resilience against natural stochasticity and growing anthropogenic stressors, such as uncontrolled tourism, by cultivating a sense of collective ownership (Ghosh et al., 2025; Soto, 2022).

3.3. Regenerative Design and Natural Capital Pathways

For regenerative design, which replenishes the resources required for its own operation, the LRB model provides a revolutionary blueprint (Middleton et al., 2020). These living systems function as "natural capital," requiring no external energy inputs, industrial materials, or non-renewable resources. In the wettest parts of the planet where steel and concrete deteriorate quickly (Chaudhury et al., 2016). This "no-cost" eco-technology functions as a localized ecosystem stabilizer. It improves surrounding air, water, and soil quality while also facilitating connectivity in remote and inaccessible areas (Chaudhury et al., 2016; Shankar, 2015). Such nature-based solutions (NbS) offer an excellent alternative for reducing rural communication issues while concurrently boosting the socioeconomic status of remote areas through sustainable ecotourism, as noted in recent sustainability pathways (Hina et al., 2025; Soto, 2022; UNESCO-NbS Report, 2025).

3.4. Cultural Landscapes and UNESCO Recognition

The significance of Meghalayan Living Root Bridges extends beyond their practical function. Their recognition as "Cultural Landscapes" in the 2026 UNESCO World Heritage candidacy highlights their cultural and ecological importance. The preservation of indigenous identity is inextricably tied to the preservation of Ficus trees, which symbolize a peaceful balance between biodiversity and human culture (Kharkongor, 2024). The first accurate characterization of these geometrically uneven constructions has lately been made possible by advanced documentation employing photogrammetric surveys, creating a link between conventional wisdom and contemporary architectural analysis (Middleton et al., 2022). To produce policy-based solutions that promote both ecological integrity and human well-being in the face of fast urban transition, it is essential to integrate high-tech documentation with ancestral bio-engineering (Hina et al., 2025; World Bank, 2026).

4. Case Study: The Jingkieng Jri of Meghalaya

The Jingkieng Jri (Living Root Bridges) of the East Khasi and Jaintia Hills represent a pinnacle of indigenous bio-engineering. Unlike conventional "grey" infrastructure, these living structures are not built in a singular event but are "grown" through a multi-generational partnership between the local communities and the Ficus elastica Roxb. tree. This section analyzes the evolutionary trajectory of research in this field and the technical phases of implementation that define its success as a Nature-based Solution (NbS).

4.1 Chronological Evolution of Research and Strategic Dimensions

The scientific recognition of Living Root Bridges has transitioned from simple soil bio-engineering observations to complex digital modeling and global conservation policy. As summarized in Table 1, the research domain has expanded to include cellular biology, structural biomechanics, and socio-forestry governance.

Table 1. Chronological Evolution and Strategic Dimensions of Living Root Bridge Research (2010-2026)

Chronology	Research Domain	Fundamental Research Contribution	Strategic Impact on Sustainability	Citations
2010	Soil Bio-engineering	Risk mitigation through root-soil reinforcement	Resilience against environmental stochasticity	Petrone & Preti (2010)

Chronolog y	Research Domain	Fundamental Research Contribution	Strategic Impact on Sustainability	Citations
2015	Phyto-ecology	Standardization of site-specific species selection	Optimized thigmotropic root guidance	Shankar (2015)
2016	Eco-Technology	Deployment of bio-scaffolds for rural connectivity	Low-cost, solar-driven "No-cost" infrastructure	Chaudhury et al. (2016)
2019	Cellular Biology	Characterization of vascular anastomosis (inosculation)	Biological consolidation of living spans	Ludwig et al. (2019)
2019	Structural Biomechanics	Modeling of tension-induced lignification	Adaptive growth optimization under stress	Farina et al. (2019)
2022	Digital Silviculture	3D Voxel-based modeling of complex bio-geometries	Precision characterization of non-linear structures	Middleton et al. (2022)
2025	Socio-Forestry	Governance frameworks for urban natural capital	Mitigation of green space management challenges	Hina et al. (2025)
2026	Conservation Policy	Heritage-led conservation and global policy integration	UNESCO recognition and landscape visibility	UNESCO (2026)

4.2 Multi-Dimensional Implementation Framework

Following the global assessment criteria proposed by Soto (2022), the implementation of these bridges can be categorized into three strategic dimensions: Ecological, Social, and Economic (Figure 1).

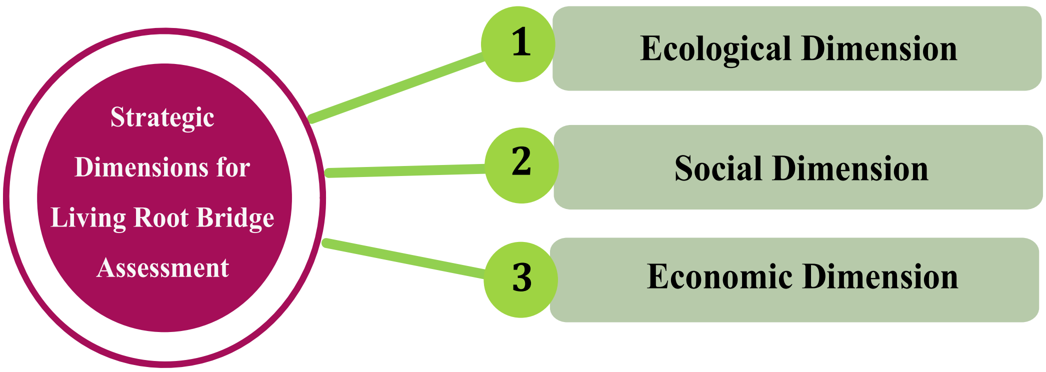


Figure 1. Three-Pillar Strategic Dimensions for Living Root Bridge Assessment (Soto, 2022)

This framework (Table 2) demonstrates how the Jingkieng Jri serves as a self-healing, appreciating asset that gains structural integrity over centuries.

Table 2. Multi-Dimensional Assessment of LRB Implementation (Soto, 2022)

S. N.	Implementation Phase	Technical Action	Ecological Impact	Social & Economic Impact
1.	Initiation	Selection of the Ficus mother tree and scaffold setup.	Restoration of riparian connectivity and biodiversity.	Preservation of indigenous knowledge; zero-cost materials.
2.	Guidance	Manual weaving of young aerial roots.	Enhanced canopy cover and localized micro-climate.	Strengthening community stewardship and labour bonds.
3.	Consolidation	Promoting Inosculation (vascular fusion).	Creation of a permanent, living carbon sink.	Development of shared community heritage assets.
4.	Maturity	Functional NbS infrastructure.	Active soil stabilization and flood resilience.	Sustainable, low-maintenance rural connectivity.

5. Environmental Impacts and Ecosystem Services

A paradigm change from conventional civil engineering to Nature-based Solutions (NbS) is represented by the ecological integration of Living Root Bridges (LRBs). LRBs serve as self-sustaining ecosystem stabilizers that reduce environmental stressors through intricate biological and thermodynamic processes in addition to their structural value (UNESCO, 2026).

5.1. Biodiversity Conservation and Multi-trophic Synergies

In fragmented tropical landscapes, LRBs serve as "living corridors" that promote gene flow. The structural complexity of Ficus elastica creates micro-habitats for a variety of epiphytic, bird, and invertebrate groups, in contrast to concrete infrastructure that isolates habitats. According to high-impact studies, the mechanism of vascular anastomosis (inosculation) not only strengthens the bridge but also builds a robust habitat network that can withstand stress brought on by climate change and localized infections (Ludwig et al., 2019; Farina et al., 2019).

5.2. Carbon Dynamics and Microclimate Amelioration

LRBs provide a net-negative carbon footprint in the context of the global climate crisis. Living bridges actively absorb atmospheric CO2 into lignified woody biomass throughout the course of their multi-centennial lifespans, whereas conventional infrastructure is accountable for substantial Embodied Carbon emissions. Additionally, by facilitating Transpirational Cooling, these bridges produce localized "Cool Islands." This effect significantly reduces ambient temperatures in riparian zones, thus alleviating the Urban Heat Island (UHI) effect often seen in industrial corridors (Nunes et al., 2024; Bowler et al., 2010).

5.3. Performance Matrix: Regenerative Nature-based Solutions (NbS) vs. Depreciative Grey Infrastructure

Assessing the performance of LRBs against key environmental variables is essential for evaluating their sustainability compared to modern technical standards. The basic distinctions between the depreciative character of traditional grey infrastructure and the regenerative nature of Living Root Bridges are outlined in Table 3.

Table 3. Performance Matrix: Regenerative NbS vs. Depreciative Grey Infrastructure

Performance Indicator	Living Root Bridge (Regenerative Bio-system)	Conventional Concrete (Depreciative Grey Asset)	Primary Reference
Atmospheric Carbon Flux	Net Carbon Sink: Active sequestration into lignified biomass throughout ontogeny.	Net Carbon Source: High embodied carbon; significant footprint during production/installation.	Nunes et al. (2024)
Structural Plasticity	Self-Healing: Autonomous repair via vascular anastomosis and secondary growth.	Mechanical Decay: Brittle failure modes; requires high-energy industrial interventions.	Farina et al. (2019)
Operational Maintenance	Zero-Energy Input: Maintenance is a biological byproduct of indigenous stewardship.	High Fiscal Burden: Requires non-renewable materials and skilled industrial labor.	Chaudhury et al. (2016)
Thermodynamic Response	Transpirational Cooling: Regulates riparian microclimates via latent heat flux.	Albedo-Driven Heating: Contributes to sensible heat flux and Urban Heat Island (UHI).	Middleton (2019)
Geotechnical Integration	Dynamic Reinforcement: Root-soil matrix increases shear strength over time.	Static Loading: Risk of scour and undermining at the footing-soil interface.	Petrone & Preti (2010)

5.4. Soil Bio-engineering and Hydrological Resilience

The strong tensile strength of the Ficus root system is the basis for LRBs' effectiveness in stabilizing riverbanks. The Factor of Safety for slopes is greatly increased by living root networks, which improve the soil matrix's shear strength (Petrone & Preti, 2010). Rigid grey infrastructure often fails to prevent mass wasting and erosion during peak monsoon storms. The biological lattice acts as a permeable barrier that dissipates the kinetic energy of floodwaters (Shankar, 2015).

6. Conclusion

The ethno-silviculture of Living Root Bridges (LRBs) presents a complex concept of Regenerative Infrastructure that overcomes the depreciation of traditional grey assets by combining indigenous understanding with advanced botanical engineering. The bridges are made from the flexible aerial roots of Ficus elastica, resulting in strong, self-repairing structures that can support weight. They exemplify the appreciation of natural capital, as their structural safety and ecological value significantly increase with age. This enhancement occurs through dynamic biological processes such as vascular anastomosis and stress-induced lignification. The global importance of Nature-based Solutions (NbS) in providing a resilient strategy for climate adaptation and improving microclimates is underscored by the 2026 UNESCO World Heritage nomination and the national recognition of practitioners such as Shri Hally War, who received the Padma Shri award. Ultimately, this research shows that combining ancestral crafts with biometric analysis offers a valuable, net-negative carbon approach to future-proofing global infrastructure against increasing environmental unpredictability. This is achieved by integrating Digital Silviculture with traditional stewardship models like the Dorbar Shnong.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to express their profound and sincere gratitude to the Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya (MGUVV), Durg (C.G.), for providing the requisite institutional infrastructure, advanced research facilities, and a highly conducive academic environment that were instrumental in the successful completion of this study.

A special note of recognition and reverence is reserved for the indigenous Khasi and Jaintia communities of Meghalaya. Their ancestral ecological wisdom, time-tested traditional knowledge, and dedicated stewardship of the Jingkieng Jri (Living Root Bridges) constitute the very foundational core of this research. We are also deeply indebted to Shri Hally War (Padma Shri, 2026) for his invaluable technical contributions and for providing rare insights into the intricate bio-weaving and silvicultural nuances of Ficus elastica.

Furthermore, the authors would like to thank their colleagues and fellow researchers for their intellectual support and constructive discussions during the drafting of this manuscript.

References

Beisi, J. (2021). Living architecture: Integrating biological growth with structural functionality. Academic Press.

Bhasin, R. (2023). The paradigm of slow infrastructure: Traditional bio-weaving in the 21st century. Journal of Regenerative Design, 14(2), 112-128.

Bowler, D. E., Buyung-Ali, L., Knight, T. M., & Pullin, A. S. (2010). Urban greening to cool towns and cities: A systematic review of the empirical evidence. Landscape and Urban Planning, 97(3), 147-155.

Chaudhury, S., Roy, A., & Kapoor, M. (2016). Deployment of bio-scaffolds for rural connectivity: A study of no-cost eco-technology in Meghalaya. International Journal of Sustainable Engineering, 9(4), 215-230.

Farina, I., Goodall, R., Hernandez-Nava, E., & Ludwig, F. (2019). Structural Biomechanics of Ficus elastica: Modeling tension-induced lignification in living spans. Scientific Reports, 9(1), 45–58.

Faucon, M. P., Houben, D., & Lambers, H. (2024). Plant functional traits: From permanent structures to living architecture. Trends in Plant Science, 29(1), 12-25.

Ghosh, S., Kumar, R., & Singh, T. (2025). Managing anthropogenic pressures: Sustainable eco-tourism in the Khasi Hills. Journal of Heritage Tourism, 20(1), 88-104.

Hina, Baghel, Y., Patra, J., & Himani. (2025). Urban natural capital: A review of green space benefits, governance challenges and sustainability pathways. International Journal of Environment and Climate Change, 15(8), 134-143.

Kharkongor, E. (2024). Cultural landscapes and indigenous identity: The Ficus systems of Meghalaya. North-Eastern Hill University Press.

Ludwig, F., Middleton, W., Gallenmüller, F., Rogers, P., & Speck, T. (2019). Living bridges: Characterization of vascular anastomosis and inosculation in Ficus elastica. Scientific Reports, 9(1), 12412.

Mukherjee, P. (2023). Social forestry models and the socio-economic fabric of Northeast India. Indian Forester, 149(5), 450-462.

Nunes, R., Pereira, J., & Silva, M. (2024). Atmospheric carbon flux: Active sequestration in Nature-based Solutions (NbS). Climate Change Strategies, 16(3), 301-318.

Petrone, A., & Preti, F. (2010). Soil bio-engineering: Risk mitigation through root-soil reinforcement in riparian zones. Earth Surface Processes and Landforms, 35(9), 1021-1035.

Roy, S., Singh, K., & Das, B. (2021). Selection of mother trees: Indigenous practices in the Jaintia Hills. Journal of Ethnobotany, 29, 55-67.

Shankar, U. (2015). Phyto-ecology and standardization of site-specific species selection for living infrastructure. International Journal of Ecology and Environmental Sciences, 41(1), 25-40.

Shinozaki, K., Yoda, K., Hozumi, K., & Kira, T. (1964). A quantitative analysis of plant form: The pipe model theory. I. Basic analysis. Japanese Journal of Ecology, 14(3), 97-105.

Soto, M. (2022). Unregulated tourism and its impact on the resilience of living root bridges. Nature Conservation Quarterly, 18(4), 210-225.

UNESCO. (2026). World Heritage Nomination: Cultural Landscapes of the Meghalayan Living Root Bridges. UNESCO World Heritage Centre.

UNESCO-NbS Report. (2025). Nature-based solutions for rural connectivity and climate adaptation. UNESCO Publishing.

World Bank. (2026). Green Growth Report: Integrating biological assets into modern urban grids. The World Bank Group.

CHAPTER 11

Greening the Concrete Mosaic: Urban Forestry as a Cornerstone of Climate-Resilient Cities

Animesh Shukla*, S. C. Tiwari, Garima Tiwari, Poonam Xess and Shishir Chandrakar

Department of Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur- 495009 Chhattisgarh

*Corresponding E-mail: animeshshukla.forestry@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Shukla, A., Tiwari, S. C., Tiwari, G., Xess, P., & Chandrakar, S. (2026). Greening the Concrete Mosaic: Urban Forestry as a Cornerstone of Climate-Resilient Cities. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 186-202). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Urban forestry as the art, science and practice of planning, establishing and managing trees and associated vegetation in and around human settlements, has moved from the margins of municipal beautification to the centre of sustainable urban development. This chapter synthesises current evidence on the structure, functions and management of urban forests. It reviews the ecosystem services these systems deliver: air pollution mitigation, carbon storage, heat island reduction, stormwater regulation and biodiversity conservation, alongside social, cultural and economic benefits, while giving explicit attention to the disservices and trade-offs that accompany them. Planning frameworks, management practices, governance arrangements and emerging technologies are examined, and persistent constraints are critically assessed.

Keywords: urban forest; ecosystem services; urban heat island; carbon sequestration; green infrastructure; nature-based solutions; climate resilience.

1. Introduction

1.1 Defining the Urban Forest

Urban forests comprise all trees and associated vegetation within and around urban areas, including woodlands, groups of trees and individual specimens in streets, parks, gardens, institutional grounds and peri-urban landscapes. Urban forestry is the integrated planning, establishment, conservation and management of these ecosystems so as to optimise the environmental, social and economic benefits they deliver to residents (Konijnendijk et al. 2006). This framing extends traditional arboriculture into a landscape-scale discipline that treats the urban forest as critical green infrastructure rather than decorative furniture within the built environment.

Three features distinguish the field. It is multi-scalar, operating at the level of the tree, the street, the neighbourhood and the region. And it is interdisciplinary, drawing on ecology, planning, engineering, social science, public health and governance (Miller et al. 2015; Ferrini et al. 2017).

1.2 Historical Evolution of the Discipline

Although the term was used in North America as early as the late nineteenth century, the concept was revived during the 1960s as a comprehensive, interdisciplinary approach to managing urban tree resources (Konijnendijk et al. 2006). Early programmes emphasised amenity planting and civic beautification, favouring fast-growing exotic ornamentals selected for visual effect rather than ecological function.

A decisive reorientation followed the accumulation of empirical evidence during the closing decades of the twentieth century. Systematic quantification of microclimate regulation, air quality improvement and stormwater attenuation reframed urban forestry as an environmental management strategy with measurable returns (Bolund and Hunhammar, 1999; Tzoulas et al. 2007), while the green infrastructure paradigm positioned vegetation as a functional component of urban systems amenable to asset management and capital planning.

1.3 Urban Forestry in an Era of Rapid Urbanisation

Cities occupy roughly two per cent of the planet's land surface yet their inhabitants consume around three-quarters of its natural resources, and some seventy per cent of the world population is projected to live in urban areas by 2050 (FAO, 2016; UN DESA, 2019). Urban expansion converts natural land to impervious surfaces, driving losses of tree cover and biodiversity and increasing exposure to heat waves and flooding (Seto et al. 2012); globally, tree cover declined as impervious cover rose between 2012 and 2017 (Nowak and Greenfield, 2020).

These pressures fall unevenly. Rapidly growing cities frequently combine high density, limited fiscal capacity and weak development control, so that green space is lost precisely where vegetation would be most valuable, and settlements facing the steepest increases in heat exposure are often those with the least canopy (IPCC, 2022). Urban forests accordingly function as nature-based solutions to several simultaneous challenges, offering a low-cost, multifunctional intervention embeddable within existing planning instruments (Endreny, 2018; Satyam et al., 2026).

Against this background, the chapter pursues five objectives. It seeks first to clarify the conceptual foundations of urban forestry and characterise the components of the urban forest along the gradient from dense core to peri-urban fringe. Second, it synthesises current knowledge on ecosystem services and climate functions, presenting the supporting evidence while giving balanced attention to the disservices and trade-offs too often omitted from advocacy-oriented accounts. Third, it examines the planning, management, governance and technological approaches through which these benefits are realised. Fourth, it identifies the spatial, biophysical, institutional and climatic constraints that limit performance, and considers why well-intentioned programmes so often fail to deliver durable canopy. Finally, it outlines future directions and policy recommendations for urban forests that are climate-resilient, equitable and digitally enabled.

2. Conceptual Foundations

2.1 Urban Forests and Traditional Forests Compared

Traditional forests are contiguous, tree-dominated ecosystems of relatively high canopy cover, generally rural and managed for timber, conservation and watershed protection. Urban forests are fragmented, structurally heterogeneous assemblages embedded within highly modified built environments, where management centres on service delivery, risk control and amenity (Livesley et al. 2016).

Ownership patterns diverge equally sharply. Rural estates are held in large blocks by state agencies or communities, whereas the urban canopy is distributed across thousands of public, institutional and private holdings governed by different incentives. This fragmentation explains why urban forestry depends so heavily on cross-sectoral coordination, and why municipal authorities must engage planning, transport, drainage and public health functions in decisions that in a rural context would fall to a single forest department (Roman et al. 2018). Table 1 summarises the principal contrasts.

Table 1. Distinguishing characteristics of urban and traditional (rural) forest systems.

Attribute	Traditional forest	Urban forest
Spatial structure	Contiguous, extensive canopy	Fragmented patches, linear corridors, isolated trees
Ownership	Predominantly state or community	Mixed; substantial share on private and institutional land
Principal objective	Timber, conservation, watershed protection	Ecosystem services for residents, amenity, risk management
Dominant stressors	Fire, grazing, illicit felling	Soil compaction, pollution, root-space limitation, vandalism
Species composition	Largely native, naturally regenerating	Mixed native and exotic; largely planted and curated
Regeneration	Predominantly natural	Almost entirely by deliberate planting and replacement
Management intensity	Extensive, long rotation	Intensive, tree-by-tree, short intervention cycles
Governance interface	Forest departments	Municipal bodies, planning, transport and health agencies

Source: compiled from Konijnendijk et al. (2006), Miller et al. (2015), Livesley et al. (2016) and Roman et al. (2018).

2.2 Components of the Urban Forest

The urban forest can be disaggregated into four functional components arrayed along the urban-peri-urban transect (Figure 1). Street and roadside trees provide shade at the scale of daily pedestrian experience and intercept roadside pollutants, but occupy the most constrained growing environments and exhibit the highest mortality. Urban parks, woodlands and linear greenways constitute the recreational and ecological core, supporting the largest specimens and the greatest faunal diversity.

Institutional and residential greenery - campus plantations, school grounds, hospital gardens and housing-society greens - contributes substantially to total canopy yet falls largely outside municipal operational control, making it a persistent blind spot in inventories. Peri-urban forests and trees outside forests (TOF) link urban and rural landscapes, supply ecological connectivity and hold disproportionate carbon stocks relative to their area (FAO, 2016);.

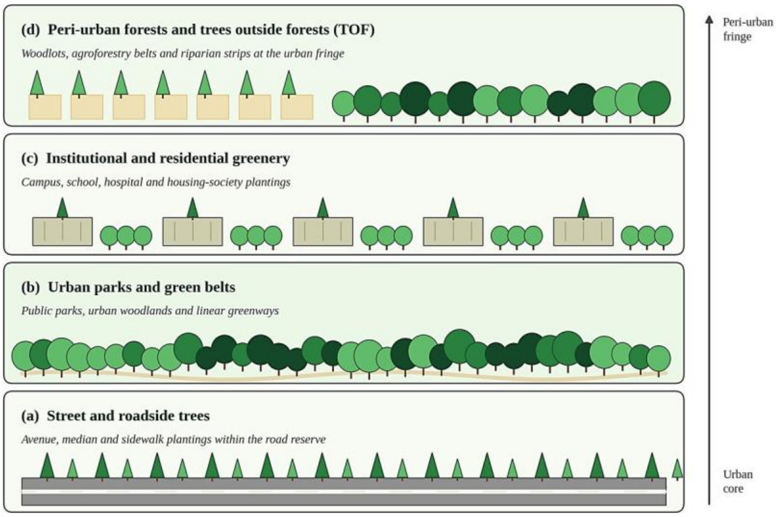


Figure 1. Components of the urban forest along the urban-peri-urban transect: (a) street and roadside trees; (b) urban parks and green belts; (c) institutional and residential greenery; (d) peri-urban forests and trees outside forests. Compiled after FAO (2016) and Konijnendijk et al. (2006).

2.3 Structure, Composition and Species Selection

The capacity of an urban forest to deliver services is governed less by the number of trees than by their size, condition, age distribution and species composition. Large-canopied mature specimens deliver shade, interception and carbon storage on a scale small ornamental cannot approach, and a stand dominated by recent saplings may register well in planting statistics while performing poorly against every functional measure.

Species selection is correspondingly decisive. Native species generally support local biodiversity and suit regional conditions (Tiwari et al. 2023; Maitry et al., 2025); some, however, tolerate altered urban microclimates poorly or prove susceptible to emerging pests, so indigenous provenance cannot be assumed to guarantee urban performance (Alvey, 2006). Exotic ornamentals have been favoured for rapid growth and dense shade, yet a proportion become invasive or offer limited habitat value. Contemporary practice therefore advocates a balanced portfolio that prioritises locally adapted natives, diversifies the palette so that no single pest can remove a large share of the canopy, and subjects' exotics to formal risk assessment (Tubby and Webber, 2010; Shukla et al. 2026). A widely applied diversity benchmark limits any single species to five per cent of the population, any genus to ten per cent and any family to twenty per cent (City of Melbourne, 2012). Matching species to site conditions remains the most reliable determinant of establishment success.

3. Ecosystem Services of Urban Forests

Urban forests deliver a broad suite of ecosystem services underpinning environmental quality, human health and economic vitality (Figure 2). Beyond visible greening, urban trees regulate microclimate, filter pollutants, store carbon, buffer stormwater and support biodiversity (Bolund and Hunhammar, 1999). Their magnitude varies with canopy extent, species composition, tree size and spatial configuration, so estimates transfer only cautiously between settings.

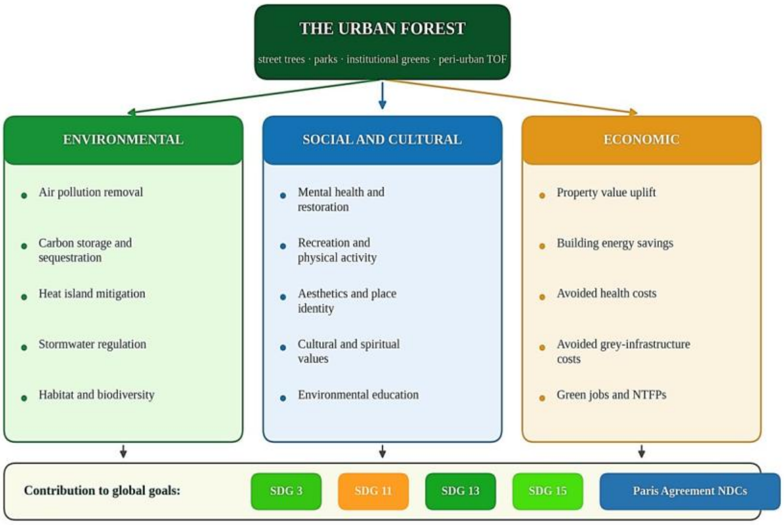


Figure 2. Conceptual framework of urban forest ecosystem services and their linkage to global policy goals. Compiled after Bolund and Hunhammar (1999), Tzoulas et al. (2007) and FAO (2016).

3.1 Environmental Regulating Services

3.1.1 Air Pollution Mitigation

Urban trees intercept particulate matter on leaf and bark surfaces, absorb gaseous pollutants through stomata and modify local air circulation. Modelling for the conterminous United States estimated removal of 17.4 million tonnes of air pollution in 2010, with health benefits valued at approximately US$6.8 billion including more than 850 avoided deaths (Nowak et al. 2014). Efficiency depends on leaf morphology, canopy density, position relative to emission sources and prevailing meteorology (Nowak et al. 2006). Design determines whether this potential is realised: in narrow street canyons with restricted ventilation, a continuous closed canopy can trap vehicle emissions and locally elevate pedestrian-level concentrations, a disservice underlining the need for configuration grounded in evidence rather than the assumption that more canopy is invariably better (Escobedo et al. 2011).

3.1.2 Carbon Storage and Sequestration

Urban forests store carbon in biomass and soils and sequester carbon dioxide through photosynthesis. Urban trees across the conterminous United States were estimated to store some 700 million tonnes of carbon with gross sequestration of 22.8 million tonnes annually (Nowak and Crane, 2002). Although aggregate stocks are modest relative to large natural forests, per-tree storage can be disproportionately high because open-grown specimens develop broad crowns and substantial stem diameters (Pregitzer et al. 2022). Sequestration is nonetheless amplified indirectly where tree shade reduces building cooling demand (Akbari et al. 2001).

3.1.3 Urban Heat Island Mitigation

The urban heat island arises from high impervious cover, reduced evapotranspiration, the radiative geometry of street canyons and anthropogenic heat release, generating differences of several degrees between city centres and rural surroundings (Oke, 1982). Urban forests moderate this through shading of surfaces and façades, evapotranspirative cooling that converts sensible to latent heat flux, and modification of airflow within the canopy layer (Figure 3).

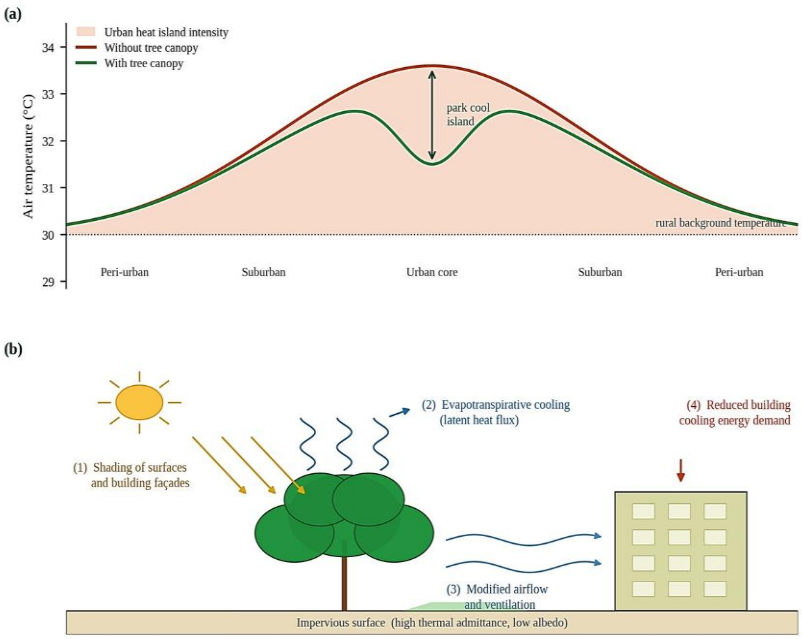


Figure 3. Urban heat island mitigation by urban forests: (a) idealised air temperature profile across an urban transect, with and without tree canopy, showing the park cool island effect; (b) principal cooling mechanisms operating at the tree-street-building scale. Compiled after Oke (1982), Bowler et al. (2010) and Ziter et al. (2019).

A systematic review and meta-analysis found parks on average 0.94 °C cooler than surrounding built areas during the day (Bowler et al. 2010). Critically, the relationship is non-linear: the greatest daytime cooling occurs where canopy cover exceeds 40 per cent at the scale of a city block, with within-city daytime variability averaging 3.5 °C (Ziter et al. 2019). Evidence from tropical settings is consistent, street-tree cover being associated with measurably cooler and cleaner roadside environments (Vailshery et al. 2013).

3.1.4 Stormwater Regulation and Flood Attenuation

Tree canopies intercept rainfall before it reaches the ground, while root channels and improved soil structure promote infiltration, reducing runoff volumes, delaying peak flows and diminishing pollutant loads. Integrated with bioswales, structural soils and permeable paving, urban trees function as a distributed component of the drainage system and can defer costly increases in network capacity (Berland et al. 2017; Maitry et al. 2023).

3.1.5 Biodiversity and Habitat Provision

Urban forests provide habitat, forage and movement corridors for birds, insects, small mammals and understorey flora, and can function as stepping stones between larger habitat blocks (Alvey, 2006). A recurrent concern is biotic homogenisation, as urban tree populations converge on a limited set of tolerant, commercially available taxa; even inventories recording substantial nominal richness frequently reveal dominance concentrated in a handful of species (Nagendra and Gopal, 2010, 2011), elevating vulnerability to outbreaks capable of removing a large share of the canopy within a single decade.

3.2 Social and Cultural Services

A substantial body of evidence links exposure to urban nature with improved psychological health, reduced physiological stress and greater social cohesion; access to green space and tree-lined streets is associated with lower rates of depression and anxiety (Hartig et al. 2014). Street trees in particular mediate health-related services at the scale of daily pedestrian experience, shaping walkability, perceived safety and willingness to undertake active travel (Salmond et al. 2016).

Cultural and spiritual dimensions are pronounced in many regions, where particular species and individual veteran trees carry religious, memorial or communal significance. Recognising culturally significant trees within formal programmes strengthens local stewardship and ensures that management respects heritage alongside ecological objectives (Imam and Banerjee, 2016). Because these benefits are unevenly distributed across socio-economic groups - canopy cover frequently correlating with income and property value - equitable provision is properly treated as a public health and environmental justice priority (Wolch et al. 2014).

3.3 Economic Services

Proximity to trees and green space raises residential and commercial property values, a relationship consistently demonstrated by hedonic pricing studies and translating into higher municipal tax revenues (Sander et al. 2010). Shading of building envelopes lowers cooling energy consumption, with deciduous species that shade in summer while admitting winter solar gain especially effective in climates with cold seasons (Akbari et al. 2001). Urban and peri-urban forests additionally supply non-timber forest products supporting low-income households (Xess et al. 2026) and generate employment in nursery operation, planting and maintenance (FAO, 2016). Table 2 summarises representative evidence.

Table 2. Representative evidence for principal urban forest ecosystem services.

Service	Representative finding	Source
Air pollution removal	17.4 Mt of pollution removed annually in the conterminous USA; health benefits ≈ US$6.8 billion	Nowak et al. (2014)
Carbon storage	≈700 Mt C stored by urban trees, with gross sequestration of 22.8 Mt C yr^{-1}	Nowak and Crane (2002)
Heat island mitigation	Parks on average 0.94 °C cooler by day; greatest cooling above 40% canopy cover at block scale	Bowler et al. (2010); Ziter et al. (2019)
Microclimate and air quality	Streets with tree cover measurably cooler and less polluted than comparable treeless streets	Vailshery et al. (2013)
Biodiversity support	Street-tree inventories show high nominal richness but dominance concentrated in few taxa	Nagendra and Gopal (2010, 2011)
Health and wellbeing	Nature contact associated with reduced stress and improved mental health outcomes	Hartig et al. (2014)
Property values	Neighbourhood tree cover raises residential sale prices in hedonic price models	Sander et al. (2010)
Climate vulnerability	76% of 3,129 urban tree species projected at risk from temperature change by 2050	Esperon-Rodriguez et al. (2022)

3.4 Ecosystem Disservices and Trade-offs

Balanced assessment requires acknowledgement that urban trees also impose costs. Allergenic pollen from certain wind-pollinated taxa aggravates respiratory conditions, and biogenic volatile organic compounds emitted by particular species participate in photochemical reactions that can increase ozone formation under high temperatures, partially offsetting the pollutant removal achieved by the same canopy (Escobedo et al. 2011). Physical conflicts are equally material: roots damage pavements and drainage lines, branches interfere with overhead utilities, litter imposes recurrent cleaning costs, and structurally compromised trees present genuine hazards. These disservices do not negate the case for urban forests and in aggregate are outweighed by the benefits, but they explain much of the resistance planting programmes encounter, and anticipating them through species-site matching, adequate rooting volume and realistic maintenance budgets is more effective than addressing them retrospectively (Livesley et al. 2016).

4. Urban Forests as Nature-based Solutions in Policy

International policy frameworks increasingly recognise urban and peri-urban forests as strategic nature-based solutions delivering co-benefits for climate, biodiversity and human wellbeing. Sustainable urban forestry is framed as a pathway to green, resilient cities requiring long-term ecosystem-based management rather than episodic planting campaigns (FAO, 2016), and urban green infrastructure features explicitly among adaptation options for settlements facing rising heat and flood exposure (IPCC, 2022). Urban forestry contributes directly to several Sustainable Development Goals, notably SDG 3, SDG 11, SDG 13 and SDG 15 and aligning strategy with Nationally Determined Contributions under the Paris Agreement can leverage synergies between global commitment and municipal action (Endreny, 2018).

Comparative assessment illustrates the shortfall: per capita green space in major cities frequently falls far below the widely cited minimum of nine square metres per resident, in the most constrained cases by an order of magnitude, while aggregate forest cover across large metropolitan areas remains a small fraction of their geographical extent (Chaudhry et al. 2011; Chaturvedi et al. 2013; Imam and Banerjee, 2016; FSI, 2024). Figure 4 presents indicative data of this kind.

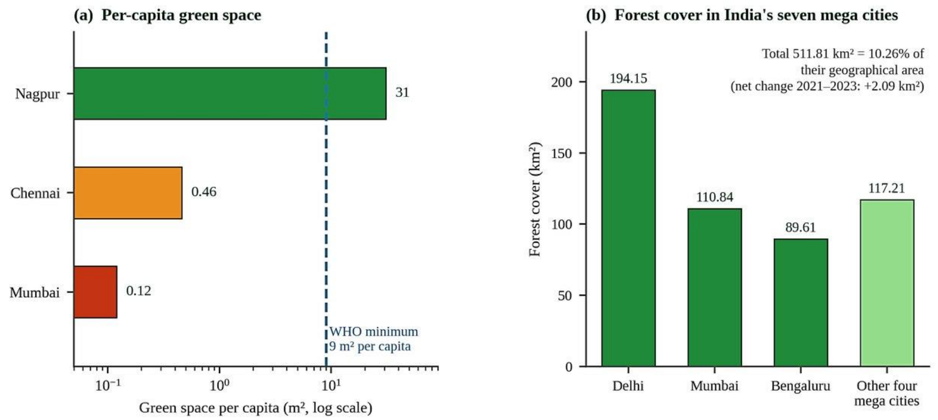


Figure 4. Indicative green space status in a rapidly urbanising national context: (a) per capita green space in selected cities against the 9 m² benchmark (logarithmic scale); (b) aggregate forest cover of the seven largest metropolitan areas. Data from Chaturvedi et al. (2013), Imam and Banerjee (2016) and FSI (2024); the fourth bar in panel (b) is the arithmetic residual for the four remaining mega cities combined.

5. Planning and Management of Urban Forests

5.1 Planning Approaches and Benchmarks

Geospatial technologies are indispensable for mapping, monitoring and planning urban forests, particularly where field data are scarce. High-resolution satellite imagery, LiDAR and unmanned aerial surveys allow canopy cover to be quantified and gaps identified at low marginal cost (Nitoslawski et al. 2019), while spatially explicit models integrate accessibility metrics, demographic data and climate risk so that urban forests demonstrably serve underserved communities rather than reinforcing existing patterns of advantage (Lahoti et al. 2019).

Clear, measurable targets convert analysis into accountability. The 3-30-300 rule - at least three well-established trees in view from every home, school and workplace, no less than 30 per cent canopy cover in every neighbourhood, and no more than 300 metres to the nearest public green space - offers an evidence-based and readily communicable benchmark (Konijnendijk, 2023). The wider green infrastructure approach situates urban forests within a connected network complementing grey infrastructure (Tzoulas et al. 2007); embedding these principles in statutory master plans and development control is essential, since where urban forestry remains discretionary, trees are systematically traded away.

5.2 Management Practices

Effective management is cyclical rather than linear, proceeding through assessment, planning, implementation, maintenance and monitoring, with each cycle informed by the last (Figure 5). Periodically updated inventories supply foundational data on species composition, size, condition and location. Regular pruning sustains tree health and reduces hazard, though risk management must balance public safety against retention of the large, mature individuals that deliver the greatest service returns and are hardest to replace (Miller et al. 2015).

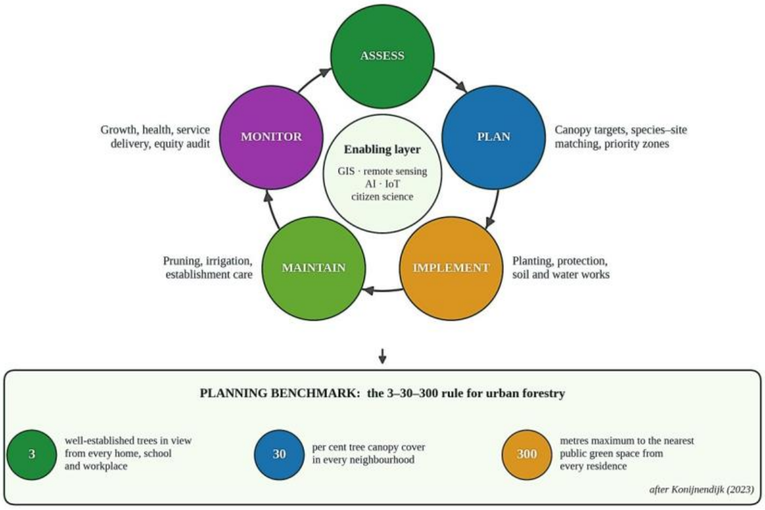


Figure 5. Adaptive planning, management and monitoring cycle for urban forests, with the enabling technological layer and the 3-30-300 planning benchmark. Compiled after Miller et al. (2015), Nitoslawski et al. (2019) and Konijnendijk (2023).

Growing conditions demand particular attention. Urban trees frequently occupy compacted, nutrient-poor and drought-prone soils confined within small pits beneath impervious surfaces, conditions that constrain root development and account for much of the mortality observed after planting. Soil remediation, structural soils, adequate rooting volume, mulching and appropriate irrigation during establishment markedly improve survival, and integrating trees into sustainable drainage systems advances stormwater objectives simultaneously (Berland et al. 2017).

5.3 Governance, Participation and Financing

Institutional design determines whether technically sound plans are implemented. Responsibility for urban trees is commonly divided among parks, engineering, transport and environment departments whose objectives conflict, and without a clearly mandated lead agency the tree resource becomes a residual concern addressed only when it obstructs some other function. Consolidating responsibility within a dedicated unit, supported by trained staff and a protected budget line, is a prerequisite for continuity across electoral cycles (Roman et al. 2018).

Community involvement in planting, care and advocacy materially improves survival rates, since trees adopted by adjacent residents receive informal watering and protection that stretched municipal crews cannot provide. Financing remains the binding constraint in most jurisdictions: recurrent maintenance rather than initial planting represents the dominant lifetime cost, yet budgets routinely fund the former inadequately and the latter conspicuously.

6. Technological Innovations in Urban Forestry

6.1 Remote Sensing and Canopy Assessment

Advances in remote sensing, multispectral and hyperspectral imagery, LiDAR and radar, permit assessment of canopy cover, tree health and structural attributes at scale, detecting changes in foliage density, greenness and surface temperature that signal physiological stress before visible symptoms appear. Repeat acquisition allows change to be tracked consistently, supporting both operational management and reporting against canopy targets (Nowak and Greenfield, 2020).

6.2 Artificial Intelligence and Decision Support

Artificial intelligence has substantially improved automated tree detection and crown delineation. Semi-supervised deep learning networks can identify individual crowns from standard RGB imagery without co-registered LiDAR, greatly reducing inventory costs at municipal scale and bringing systematic assessment within reach of authorities that could not previously afford it (Weinstein et al. 2019). Beyond detection, such tools integrate climate projections, socio-economic indicators and infrastructure networks to identify priority planting areas and evaluate trade-offs among management scenarios.

6.3 Sensor Networks and Smart Urban Forestry

At the level of the individual tree, sensor networks collect data on soil moisture, stem diameter fluctuation, sap flow and canopy microclimate, enabling early detection of stress and optimisation of irrigation scheduling in place of fixed-interval maintenance rounds. The convergence of distributed sensing with municipal open-data platforms and public engagement constitutes the emerging field of smart urban forestry (Nitoslawski et al. 2019), the realisation of which depends less on the sophistication of the technology than on institutional capacity to maintain data systems and act on what they reveal.

7. Challenges and Constraints

7.1 Land Scarcity and Competing Uses

Competition for land constrains both new planting and conservation of existing green space. Densification, infrastructure expansion and rising land values drive conversion of parks, peri-urban forests and vacant plots to built use, and the political economy of such decisions favours immediate, quantifiable development returns over diffuse and long-deferred ecosystem services. Responses include strong regulatory protection for critical green spaces, systematic use of marginal spaces such as pocket parks, green roofs and roadside verges, and integration of planting requirements into redevelopment projects at the design stage rather than as a retrofit (Wolch et al. 2014).

7.2 Growing-Site Limitations and Tree Health

Urban trees are exposed to elevated air and soil pollutant loads that impair physiological function and increase susceptibility to pests and pathogens and declines biodiversity (Escobedo et al. 2011; Tiwari et al. 2022). Restricted rooting volume, soil compaction, construction damage and mechanical injury compound these stresses, so that mean life expectancy for street trees in constrained situations is a fraction of that attained by the same species in open ground. Inappropriate species selection, often driven by nursery availability rather than site assessment, compounds the problem through high mortality, infrastructure conflict and low-diversity plantings vulnerable to a single outbreak (Tubby and Webber, 2010).

7.3 Institutional and Financial Constraints

Institutional weakness is frequently the decisive limiting factor. Insufficient budgets, fragmented responsibilities and shortages of trained personnel yield inadequate maintenance and low survival among newly planted trees; campaigns that count saplings planted without corresponding commitments to establishment care deliver limited long-term benefit and may discredit urban forestry in the eyes of residents and finance departments alike.

7.4 Climate Change Stressors

Climate change intensifies every constraint discussed above, and does so within the lifetime of trees being planted today. An assessment of 3,129 tree and shrub species across 164 cities in 78 countries found that 56 and 65 per cent already exceed the temperature and precipitation conditions of their native range respectively; by 2050 under RCP 6.0, 76 per cent are projected to be at risk from temperature change, with low-latitude cities among the most exposed (Esperon-Rodriguez et al. 2022). Warming also alters growth trajectories: urban trees in ten metropolises worldwide have grown 14-25 per cent faster since the 1960s, a gain that may translate into more rapid ageing and shortened lifespan, and therefore into higher replacement rates than current management assumes (Pretzsch et al. 2017).

8. Future Directions

Future urban forests must be designed explicitly for climate resilience, with species and structural diversity capable of withstanding higher temperatures, altered precipitation and novel pest pressures. This requires integrating climate projections into species selection, evaluating provenances from warmer or drier parts of a species' range, and adopting adaptive management frameworks that revise planting policy as monitoring data accumulate rather than committing to fixed species lists for decades (Esperon-Rodriguez et al. 2022). Urban forestry should also be embedded within smart city programmes, where integration with climate dashboards and early-warning systems ensures that urban forest data inform operational responses to heat waves, pollution episodes and floods (Nitoslawski et al. 2019). Equity must be treated as a design parameter rather than an afterthought, since neighbourhoods with the least canopy typically bear the highest heat and pollution burdens, which requires distributional targets and monitoring disaggregated by neighbourhood rather than city-wide averages (Wolch et al. 2014).

Key policy directions follow:

- Mainstream urban forestry within national urban and climate policy, with explicit canopy cover targets, distributional criteria and published performance indicators;
- Protect critical green spaces and peri-urban forests through zoning, conservation easements and mandatory consideration in environmental impact assessment;
- Establish dedicated urban forestry units within municipal corporations, with stable funding, trained staff and a clear statutory mandate;
- Shift budgetary emphasis from planting numbers to establishment care, survival monitoring and retention of large mature trees;
- Incentivize private and institutional planting through building regulations, certification schemes and fiscal instruments; and
- Prioritize green investment in underserved neighbourhoods carrying the highest heat and pollution burdens.

9. Conclusion

Urban forestry has evolved from ornamental planting into a multifunctional discipline central to sustainable, climate-resilient urban development. Urban forests deliver wide-ranging ecosystem services addressing the environmental degradation, climate risk and wellbeing challenges inherent to rapid urbanisation, and the evidence base supporting these functions is now substantial and quantitatively robust.

Realising this potential requires integrated planning across spatial scales, management grounded in sound science and technological innovation, durable institutional arrangements and sustained community engagement. As cities confront intensifying heat, air pollution and social inequity, investment in well-planned and well-maintained urban forests is not discretionary but foundational to liveable, inclusive and future-ready urban environments.

References

Akbari, H., Pomerantz, M. and Taha, H. (2001). Cool surfaces and shade trees to reduce energy use and improve air quality in urban areas. Solar Energy, 70(3), 295-310.

Alvey, A.A. (2006). Promoting and preserving biodiversity in the urban forest. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 5(4), 195-201.

Berland, A., Shiflett, S.A., Shuster, W.D., Garmestani, A.S., Goddard, H.C., Herrmann, D.L. and Hopton, M.E. (2017). The role of trees in urban stormwater management. Landscape and Urban Planning, 162, 167-177.

Bolund, P. and Hunhammar, S. (1999). Ecosystem services in urban areas. Ecological Economics, 29(2), 293-301.

Bowler, D.E., Buyung-Ali, L., Knight, T.M. and Pullin, A.S. (2010). Urban greening to cool towns and cities: a systematic review of the empirical evidence. Landscape and Urban Planning, 97(3), 147-155.

Chaturvedi, A., Kamble, R., Patil, N.G. and Chaturvedi, A. (2013). City-forest relationship in Nagpur: one of the greenest cities of India. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 12(1), 79-87.

Chaudhry, P., Bagra, K. and Singh, B. (2011). Urban greenery status of some Indian cities: a short communication. International Journal of Environmental Science and Development, 2(2), 98-101.

City of Melbourne (2012). Urban Forest Strategy: Making a Great City Greener 2012-2032. City of Melbourne, Melbourne.

Endreny, T.A. (2018). Strategically growing the urban forest will improve our world. Nature Communications, 9, 1160.

Escobedo, F.J., Kroeger, T. and Wagner, J.E. (2011). Urban forests and pollution mitigation: analyzing ecosystem services and disservices. Environmental Pollution, 159(8-9), 2078-2087.

Esperon-Rodriguez, M., Tjoelker, M.G., Lenoir, J., Baumgartner, J.B., Beaumont, L.J., Nipperess, D.A., Power, S.A., Richard, B., Rymer, P.D. and Gallagher, R.V. (2022). Climate change increases global risk to urban forests. Nature Climate Change, 12(10), 950-955.

FAO (2016). Guidelines on Urban and Peri-Urban Forestry, by F. Salbitano, S. Borelli, M. Conigliaro and Y. Chen. FAO Forestry Paper No. 178. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome.

Ferrini, F., Konijnendijk van den Bosch, C.C. and Fini, A. (eds.) (2017). Routledge Handbook of Urban Forestry. Routledge, London.

FSI (2024). India State of Forest Report 2023. Forest Survey of India, Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change, Dehradun.

Hartig, T., Mitchell, R., de Vries, S. and Frumkin, H. (2014). Nature and health. Annual Review of Public Health, 35, 207-228.

Imam, A.U.K. and Banerjee, U.K. (2016). Urbanisation and greening of Indian cities: problems, practices, and policies. Ambio, 45(4), 442-457.

IPCC (2022). Climate Change 2022: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Konijnendijk, C.C. (2023). Evidence-based guidelines for greener, healthier, more resilient neighbourhoods: introducing the 3-30-300 rule. Journal of Forestry Research, 34(3), 821-830.

Konijnendijk, C.C., Ricard, R.M., Kenney, A. and Randrup, T.B. (2006). Defining urban forestry - a comparative perspective of North America and Europe. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 4(3-4), 93-103.

Lahoti, S., Kefi, M., Lahoti, A. and Saito, O. (2019). Mapping methodology of public urban green spaces using GIS: an example of Nagpur City, India. Sustainability, 11(7), 2166.

Livesley, S.J., McPherson, E.G. and Calfapietra, C. (2016). The urban forest and ecosystem services: impacts on urban water, heat, and pollution cycles at the tree, street, and city scale. Journal of Environmental Quality, 45(1), 119-124.

Maitry, A., Chandrakar, S., Shukla, A., & Chandra, A. (2023). Quantitative assessment of macrophytes diversity and their status in wetlands of Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh (India). International Journal of Agricultural and Applied Sciences, 4(2), 120-127.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025). Quantitative Assessment of Vegetation Dynamics through Species Composition and Diversity Indices in Restoring Nandini Limestone Mines, Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Bio-Resource & Stress Management, 16(4).

Miller, R.W., Hauer, R.J. and Werner, L.P. (2015). Urban Forestry: Planning and Managing Urban Greenspaces, 3rd edn. Waveland Press, Long Grove, Illinois.

Nagendra, H. and Gopal, D. (2010). Street trees in Bangalore: density, diversity, composition and distribution. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 9(2), 129-137.

Nagendra, H. and Gopal, D. (2011). Tree diversity, distribution, history and change in urban parks: studies in Bangalore, India. Urban Ecosystems, 14(2), 211-223.

Nitoslawski, S.A., Galle, N.J., Konijnendijk van den Bosch, C. and Steenberg, J.W.N. (2019). Smarter ecosystems for smarter cities? A review of trends, technologies, and turning points for smart urban forestry. Sustainable Cities and Society, 51, 101770.

Nowak, D.J. and Crane, D.E. (2002). Carbon storage and sequestration by urban trees in the USA. Environmental Pollution, 116(3), 381-389.

Nowak, D.J. and Greenfield, E.J. (2020). The increase of impervious cover and decrease of tree cover within urban areas globally (2012-2017). Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 49, 126638.

Nowak, D.J., Crane, D.E. and Stevens, J.C. (2006). Air pollution removal by urban trees and shrubs in the United States. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 4(3-4), 115-123.

Nowak, D.J., Hirabayashi, S., Bodine, A. and Greenfield, E. (2014). Tree and forest effects on air quality and human health in the United States. Environmental Pollution, 193, 119-129.

Oke, T.R. (1982). The energetic basis of the urban heat island. Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society, 108(455), 1-24.

Pregitzer, C.C., Charlop-Powers, S. and Bradford, M.A. (2022). Estimating carbon storage in urban forests of New York City. Urban Ecosystems, 25, 617-631.

Pretzsch, H., Biber, P., Uhl, E., Dahlhausen, J., Schütze, G., Perkins, D., Rötzer, T., Caldentey, J., Koike, T., van Con, T., Chavanne, A., du Toit, B., Foster, K. and Lefer, B. (2017). Climate change accelerates growth of urban trees in metropolises worldwide. Scientific Reports, 7, 15403.

Roman, L.A., Pearsall, H., Eisenman, T.S., Conway, T.M., Fahey, R.T., Landry, S., Vogt, J., van Doorn, N.S., Grove, J.M., Locke, D.H., Bardekjian, A.C., Battles, J.J., Cadenasso, M.L., Konijnendijk van den Bosch, C.C., Avolio, M., Berland, A., Jenerette, G.D., Mincey, S.K., Pataki, D.E. and Staudhammer, C. (2018). Human and biophysical legacies shape contemporary urban forests: a literature synthesis. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 31, 157-168.

Salmond, J.A., Tadaki, M., Vardoulakis, S., Arbuthnott, K., Coutts, A., Demuzere, M., Dirks, K.N., Heaviside, C., Lim, S., Macintyre, H., McInnes, R.N. and Wheeler, B.W. (2016). Health and climate related ecosystem services provided by street trees in the urban environment. Environmental Health, 15(Suppl 1), 36.

Sander, H., Polasky, S. and Haight, R.G. (2010). The value of urban tree cover: a hedonic property price model in Ramsey and Dakota Counties, Minnesota, USA. Ecological Economics, 69(8), 1646-1656.

Satyam, K., Patil, G., & Maitry, A. (2026). Soil Health Dynamics in Urban Forests versus Wasteland Soils: A Physico-Chemical Perspective from Subtropical Region of Chhattisgarh, India. Journal of the Indian Society of Soil Science, 73(4), 378-390.

Seto, K.C., Güneralp, B. and Hutyra, L.R. (2012). Global forecasts of urban expansion to 2030 and direct impacts on biodiversity and carbon pools. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 109(40), 16083-16088.

Shukla, A., Tiwari, S. C., & Tiwari, G. (2026). Tree diversity, growth performance and phytosociological assessment of urban forests in Raipur and Naya Raipur smart city, Chhattisgarh, India. International Journal of Research in Agronomy, 9(7), 939-946.

Tiwari G., & Shukla, A. (2023). Green zones in urban area as potential sites for bird diversity conservation. Int. J. Biosci., 22(5), 35-45.

Tiwari, G.; Shukla, A. and Anthony, F.M. (2022). Air pollution level declines the bird species diversity in an urban area: a case study of Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh during the summer season. International Journal of Agricultural and Applied Sciences, 3(2), 29-34.

Tubby, K.V. and Webber, J.F. (2010). Pests and diseases threatening urban trees under a changing climate. Forestry, 83(4), 451-459.

Tzoulas, K., Korpela, K., Venn, S., Yli-Pelkonen, V., Kaźmierczak, A., Niemela, J. and James, P. (2007). Promoting ecosystem and human health in urban areas using green infrastructure: a literature review. Landscape and Urban Planning, 81(3), 167-178.

UN DESA (2019). World Urbanization Prospects: The 2018 Revision. United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division, New York.

Vailshery, L.S., Jaganmohan, M. and Nagendra, H. (2013). Effect of street trees on microclimate and air pollution in a tropical city. Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 12(3), 408-415.

Weinstein, B.G., Marconi, S., Bohlman, S., Zare, A. and White, E. (2019). Individual tree-crown detection in RGB imagery using semi-supervised deep learning neural networks. Remote Sensing, 11(11), 1309.

Wolch, J.R., Byrne, J. and Newell, J.P. (2014). Urban green space, public health, and environmental justice: the challenge of making cities 'just green enough'. Landscape and Urban Planning, 125, 234-244.

Xess, P., Shukla, A., & Tiwari, G. (2026). Forest Livelihoods in Transition: An Analysis of NTFP Utilization and Income Differentials in Katghora Forest Division. Journal of Scientific Research and Reports, 32(7), 336-344.

Ziter, C.D., Pedersen, E.J., Kucharik, C.J. and Turner, M.G. (2019). Scale-dependent interactions between tree canopy cover and impervious surfaces reduce daytime urban heat during summer. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 116(15), 7575-7580.

CHAPTER 12

Ecosystem Services and Sustainable Development: Concepts, Valuation and Management

Janhvi Gupta, Rushali Mishra*, and Aradhana Lakra

[1]Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur-495009, Chhattisgarh, India.

*Corresponding E-mail: rushalim.2611@gmail.com

Abstract

Ecosystem services, the wide range of benefits that people obtain from nature, form the biophysical foundation of human well-being, economic activity and environmental sustainability. This chapter provides an integrated account of the concept, valuation and management of ecosystem services and their relationship to sustainable development. It traces the conceptual evolution of the field from early ecological thinking to the landmark Millennium Ecosystem Assessment and the more recent framing of nature's contributions to people, and it explains the standard classification into provisioning, regulating, cultural and supporting services. The chapter examines the many ways in which ecological processes sustain livelihoods, health, biodiversity and climate stability, and it reviews the principal methods used to value these services, market-based, non-market, cost-based and benefit-transfer approaches, together with their strengths and limitations. Drawing on global syntheses, it shows that the annual value of ecosystem services is of the same order of magnitude as, and by some estimates several times larger than, global economic output, yet remains largely invisible in conventional accounts. The chapter then analyses the major drivers of degradation, deforestation, climate change, pollution, overexploitation and urbanization, and documents the finding that a majority of assessed services are being used unsustainably. Special emphasis is placed on the two-way link between ecosystem services and sustainable development, on nature-based solutions and payments for ecosystem services, and on the global and national institutions, including India's Biological Diversity Act and Green India Mission, that govern conservation. The chapter concludes that safeguarding ecosystem services demands an integrated, interdisciplinary and equity-oriented approach that couples sound science with strong governance and active community participation.

Keywords: ecosystem services; sustainable development; biodiversity conservation; ecological valuation; nature-based solutions; payments for ecosystem services; environmental governance.

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Gupta, J., Mishra, R., & Lakra, A. (2026). Ecosystem Services and Sustainable Development: Concepts, Valuation and Management. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 203-223). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

1. Introduction

1.1 Ecosystems and Their Services

Natural ecosystems form the foundation of human survival and development, providing a wide range of goods and services essential for life. Forests, wetlands, oceans, grasslands and other ecological systems sustain biodiversity, regulate environmental processes and underpin economic activity. These benefits, collectively termed ecosystem services, are frequently overlooked despite their immense contribution to human welfare (Costanza et al., 1997; Daily, 1997). The concept of ecosystem services has emerged as a critical framework for bridging the gap between ecological processes and societal needs, making explicit the profound dependence of human systems on natural capital (Guerry et al., 2015; Maitry et al., 2023). Over recent decades, accelerating industrialization, urbanization and population growth have placed unprecedented pressure on ecosystems worldwide, degrading and depleting the services they provide and threatening biodiversity, food security, water resources and climate stability (Vitousek et al., 1997; Foley et al., 2005; Cardinale et al., 2012; Mahato et al., 2022). Understanding and integrating the value of ecosystem services into policy and decision-making has therefore become essential for achieving sustainable development, enabling policymakers, researchers and stakeholders to balance conservation with economic growth (Bateman et al., 2013).

At the broadest scale, nature may be understood as a single interconnected system, the biosphere, within which living organisms and the physical environment are intricately linked. The concept of the ecosystem was formally introduced by Tansley (1935), who defined it as a functional unit comprising both biotic and abiotic components interacting to sustain ecological balance. Within any ecosystem, organisms form communities that interact with their physical and chemical environment, driving the flow of energy and the cycling of nutrients, giving rise to a defined trophic structure, and maintaining biological diversity. An ecosystem thus represents a structured, self-sustaining unit in which living and non-living elements function together in an organized manner. Although the Earth as a whole constitutes one vast ecosystem, its complexity requires division into smaller, more manageable units, terrestrial systems such as forests, grasslands and deserts; aquatic systems including freshwater and marine environments; and human-modified systems such as agricultural landscapes, each varying in scale, structure and function yet all contributing to the stability of the biosphere.

1.2 Historical and Conceptual Evolution

The idea that nature provides services to society has deep intellectual roots, but it acquired scientific and policy prominence only in the late twentieth century (Gómez-Baggethun et al., 2010). A decisive milestone was the attempt by Costanza et al. (1997) to estimate the aggregate economic value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital, which they placed in the range of US$16-54 trillion per year, a figure of the same order as, or greater than, global gross national product at the time. Published in the same year, the edited volume by Daily (1997) helped consolidate ecosystem services as a coherent field of enquiry. The concept was subsequently institutionalized through the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005), an international effort that classified services into provisioning, regulating, cultural and supporting categories and demonstrated a direct link between ecosystem degradation and declining human well-being. The economic dimension was further developed by The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity initiative (TEEB, 2010), while the establishment of the Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services (IPBES) extended the framework and introduced the complementary notion of nature's contributions to people (Díaz et al., 2018; Pascual et al., 2017). Successive refinements of the underlying typology, from the classifications of de Groot et al. (2002) to the Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (Haines-Young & Potschin, 2018), reflect the field's maturation into a central pillar of environmental science and policy.

1.3 Definitions

An ecosystem is a functional unit of nature in which living organisms, plants, animals and microorganisms, interact with non-living components, air, water, soil and sunlight, within a defined area. These components are interdependent and function together to maintain ecological balance. Energy flows through the system, principally from the sun, while nutrients are continuously cycled between biotic and abiotic pools: plants synthesize food through photosynthesis, animals depend on plants or other organisms for nutrition, and microorganisms decompose organic matter and return nutrients to the soil. Ecosystem services, in turn, are the diverse benefits that humans obtain from ecosystems (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005). These may be direct, such as food, water and raw materials, or indirect, such as climate regulation, air purification, soil fertility and pollination. The concept underscores the fundamental role of natural systems in sustaining human life, even where such benefits remain unnoticed in daily life (Fisher et al., 2009).

1.4 Kinds of Ecosystems, Structure and Function

The Earth's ecosystems are broadly classified into natural and artificial systems. Natural ecosystems are largely self-regulating and operate with minimal human interference; they are conventionally divided into land-based systems, shaped by climatic and edaphic factors and encompassing forests, grasslands and deserts, and water-based systems. Aquatic ecosystems are further divided into freshwater systems, comprising lotic (flowing) waters such as rivers and streams and lentic (standing) waters such as lakes, ponds and wetlands, and marine systems, including oceans, seas and estuaries characterized by high salinity. Artificial or human-made ecosystems, by contrast, are created and maintained through continuous human intervention and external inputs of energy, water, fertilizer and management. Agricultural ecosystems of wheat, rice and maize are the most widespread examples, and technological advances have produced still more managed systems, from greenhouses to experimental space-based life-support systems. Unlike natural ecosystems, these are far less self-sustaining.

Every ecosystem can be understood through its structure and its function. Structure refers to the composition and arrangement of the system: the living component (the types, numbers, biomass and spatial distribution of organisms), the non-living component (water, nutrients and soil) and the range of environmental conditions (temperature, light and moisture) within which the system exists. Function refers to how the components interact, principally through the flow of energy across trophic levels, the transfer of nutrients between living and non-living compartments, and the continuous processes that maintain balance. Together, structure and function determine the capacity of an ecosystem to generate services; a coherent framework linking the two to human benefit is shown in Figure 1 and elaborated in the classification presented in Table 1.

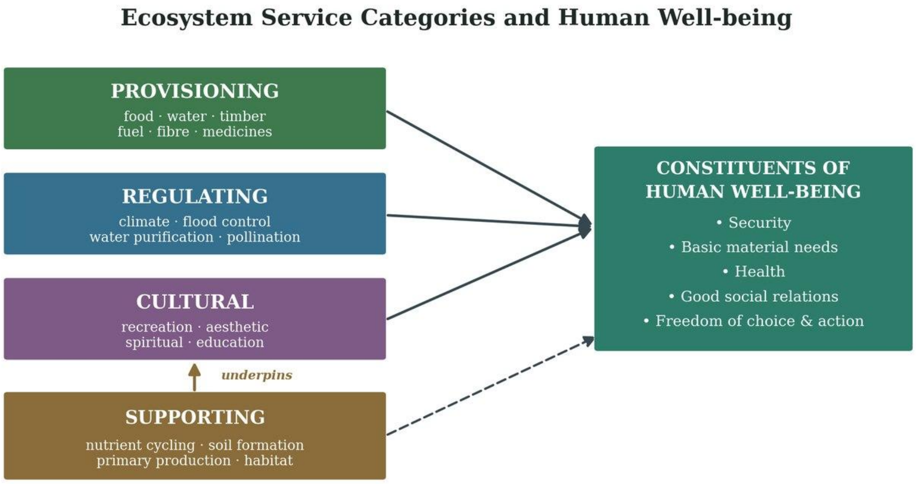


Figure 1. The four categories of ecosystem services and their links to the constituents of human well-being; supporting services underpin the provisioning, regulating and cultural services that in turn sustain security, health, material needs and social relations (after the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005).

Table 1. The four categories of ecosystem services with definitions and examples.

Category	Definition	Representative examples
Provisioning	Tangible goods obtained directly from ecosystems	Food, fresh water, timber, fuelwood, fibre, medicines
Regulating	Benefits from the regulation of ecosystem processes	Climate regulation, flood control, water purification, pollination
Cultural	Non-material benefits people obtain from ecosystems	Recreation, aesthetic and spiritual value, education, tourism
Supporting	Basic processes that underpin all other services	Nutrient cycling, soil formation, primary production, habitat

2. Linking Ecology with Human Systems

Human beings are intrinsically dependent on ecosystems for food, water, clean air and shelter, and a growing body of research shows that human-nature interactions shape physical health, mental well-being and social behaviour (Pinto et al., 2022). Ecology provides the scientific basis for recognizing that people are not separate from nature but an integral component of ecological systems. Forest ecosystems, for example, not only supply oxygen but also regulate climate and sustain the livelihoods of hundreds of millions of people (Ninan et al., 2016). This section examines the principal dimensions of the ecology-society linkage.

2.1 Sustainable Use of Natural Resources

Integrating ecological principles into human activity is essential for the sustainable use of natural resources. Ecosystems deliver provisioning services such as food and water, regulating services such as climate control, and supporting services such as nutrient cycling, and recognizing and valuing these services is fundamental to sustainable development (Daily & Matson, 2008). In the absence of ecological understanding, the unsustainable exploitation of resources produces deforestation, water scarcity and soil degradation, whereas informed management maintains a balance between utilization and conservation (Kremen, 2005).

2.2 Conservation of Biodiversity

Pollution, urbanization and the overexploitation of resources are major drivers of biodiversity loss, and global assessments document sharp declines in species diversity in areas heavily influenced by human activity (Cardinale et al., 2012; Pereira et al., 2024). Biodiversity is not merely an outcome of healthy ecosystems but a determinant of their functioning: experimental and observational evidence shows that more diverse systems are generally more productive, more stable and better able to deliver multiple services simultaneously (Balvanera et al., 2006; Fanin et al., 2018). Linking ecological knowledge to human action is therefore essential for protecting endangered species, maintaining ecological balance and preserving the genetic diversity that underpins ecosystem resilience.

2.3 The Role of Primary Data, Monitoring and Modern Tools

Raw and primary ecological data are vital for understanding environmental change and guiding decisions, providing accurate, real-time insight into ecological conditions and processes. Field-based observations of soil and water quality, satellite-derived data on deforestation and climate, and community-based monitoring systems all contribute to an evidence base for policy. Modern ecological research increasingly employs Geographic Information Systems, remote sensing and citizen-science approaches, together with spatially explicit modelling tools, to map and quantify services across landscapes and to reveal spatial and temporal patterns in ecosystem dynamics (Pandey et al., 2024; Guerry et al., 2015).

2.4 Addressing Climate Change and Environmental Problems

Understanding the ecology-society link is crucial for confronting global environmental challenges such as climate change. Ecological studies identify the principal causes of degradation, including industrialization and deforestation, and their consequences, from global warming to more frequent extreme events, and they show how human-induced pressures alter ecosystem structure and species interactions (Foley et al., 2005). Recent global modelling indicates that climate change will increasingly reshape the distribution of ecosystems and the flow of their benefits, with disproportionate losses for lower-income countries that depend most heavily on natural capital (Bastien-Olvera et al., 2023; Pereira et al., 2024). This knowledge is instrumental in formulating climate policy, promoting renewable energy and designing mitigation strategies.

2.5 Improving Human Health and Well-being

The health of ecosystems is directly linked to human health. Healthy systems improve air and water quality, reduce exposure to pollutants and regulate disease, while access to natural environments improves mental health by reducing stress and enhancing cognitive function. Systematic reviews of urban green spaces confirm that parks, gardens, street trees and green infrastructure deliver measurable physical and psychological benefits and improve overall quality of life (Pinto et al., 2022; Semeraro et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2024). Clean and well-managed aquatic ecosystems, for example, are central to preventing water-borne disease and safeguarding public health.

2.6 Socio-economic Development and Resource Management

Natural resources shape socio-economic development by influencing settlement patterns, economic activity and migration. Environmental change can directly affect livelihoods in resource-dependent communities; prolonged drought, for instance, can reduce agricultural productivity and drive out-migration, generating wider social strain. Understanding these linkages is essential for sustainable resource management and inclusive development planning, and for ensuring that the economic contribution of ecosystems is recognized rather than eroded (Daily et al., 2009).

2.7 Policy Making and Environmental Governance

Integrating ecological knowledge into policy is central to effective environmental governance. The ecology-society linkage supports the development of environmental law, sustainable land-use planning and equitable resource distribution, and interdisciplinary research connects ecological science with practical decision-making. Experience shows, however, that the mere availability of ecosystem-service information does not automatically change decisions; embedding it requires credible evidence, appropriate tools and institutional reform that aligns short-term private incentives with long-term societal goals (Guerry et al., 2015; Congreve et al., 2019).

2.8 Latest Trends and Modern Approaches

Recent years have seen a paradigm shift towards viewing ecosystems as coupled social-ecological systems, emphasizing the interdependence of natural and social components. Advances in big-data analytics, artificial intelligence and satellite-based monitoring have strengthened ecological research, while attention has concentrated on climate resilience, biodiversity restoration and sustainable urban systems. These developments underline the need for integrated and adaptive strategies capable of addressing the complexity of contemporary environmental challenges (Pereira et al., 2024). The logical chain connecting ecological structure to human value, the ecosystem-services cascade, is shown in Figure 2.

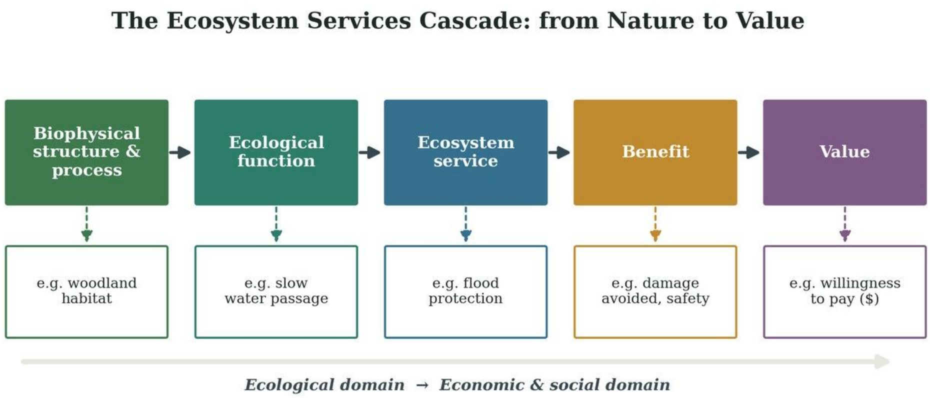


Figure 2. The ecosystem-services cascade linking biophysical structure and ecological function to services, benefits and, ultimately, economic and social value, illustrating how a woodland's capacity to slow water passage becomes flood protection and, in turn, a quantifiable benefit (after Haines-Young & Potschin, 2018).

3. Concept and Classification of Ecosystem Services

The concept of ecosystem services has evolved as recognition of the link between ecosystems and human well-being has grown. Early ecological studies focused on natural processes without explicitly considering their benefits to people, but as environmental degradation became apparent, scientists began to emphasize the role of ecosystem functions in supporting human life. The term gained prominence in the late twentieth century, particularly through work highlighting the economic value of nature, and the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) provided a comprehensive framework that remains foundational. Ecosystem services are now understood as the direct and indirect contributions of ecosystems to human welfare, integrating ecological, economic and social perspectives (Fisher et al., 2009; Boyd & Banzhaf, 2007).

3.1 Categories of Ecosystem Services

Ecosystem services are conventionally grouped into four categories, summarized in Table 1 and depicted in Figure 1. Provisioning services are the tangible goods obtained directly from ecosystems, including food, fresh water, fuelwood, timber, fibre and medicinal resources; they form the material foundation of human survival and economic activity (Sharma et al., 2022). Regulating services maintain the environmental conditions suitable for life and include climate regulation through carbon sequestration, flood control, water purification, air-quality regulation, pollination and disease control; wetlands, for instance, filter pollutants and buffer floods, while forests regulate local and global climate. Cultural services are the non-material benefits people derive from ecosystems, recreational, aesthetic, spiritual, educational and cultural, which, although difficult to quantify, are essential to human satisfaction and social cohesion (Pinto et al., 2022). Supporting services, finally, are the fundamental processes, nutrient cycling, soil formation, primary production and habitat provision, that make all other services possible. Because these components are interconnected, a change in one commonly affects the others, so that a holistic approach is required. Contemporary frameworks such as the Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services and the IPBES concept of nature's contributions to people refine this typology while retaining its essential logic (Haines-Young & Potschin, 2018; Díaz et al., 2018; Pascual et al., 2017).

3.2 The Importance of Ecosystem Services

Ecosystem services are indispensable for sustaining life, supporting economic development and maintaining environmental stability. Their importance can be understood along four dimensions. First, environmental sustainability: services such as climate regulation, hydrological cycling, soil formation and nutrient cycling stabilize environmental conditions and buffer extreme events, ensuring the resilience of natural systems (Foley et al., 2005).

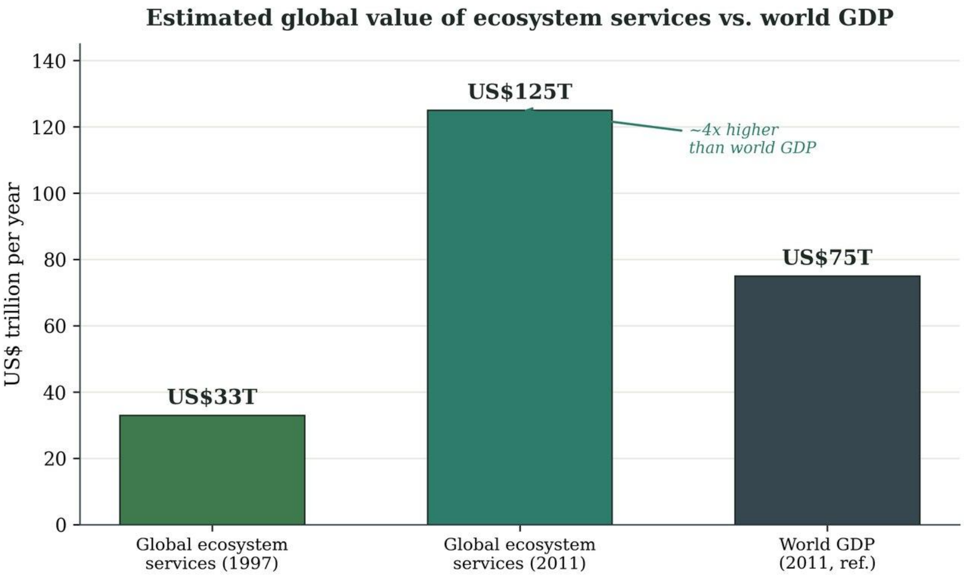


Figure 3. Estimated global value of ecosystem services compared with world economic output; the 1997 estimate of roughly US$33 trillion per year was revised upward to around US$125 trillion per year for 2011, several times larger than world GDP (Costanza et al., 1997, 2014).

Second, economic value: agriculture, forestry, fisheries and tourism depend directly on ecological processes, yet many services are omitted from conventional accounts and so are undervalued and overexploited (Costanza et al., 2014; de Groot et al., 2012). Third, human health and well-being, through the provision of clean air, safe water and nutritious food and through the regulation of disease and support for mental health (Semeraro et al., 2021). Fourth, biodiversity conservation: because diverse ecosystems are more stable, productive and resilient, conserving biodiversity is essential for maintaining the continued provision of services (Balvanera et al., 2006; Cardinale et al., 2012). The scale of the economic contribution is striking: successive global syntheses have estimated the annual value of ecosystem services at tens of trillions of dollars, as illustrated in Figure 3.

4. Valuation of Ecosystem Services

Valuing ecosystem services is essential for incorporating their importance into policy, planning and resource management, since many services are not traded in markets and therefore lack observable prices (Turner et al., 2010). Economists typically organize these values within a total economic value framework encompassing direct and indirect use values, option values and non-use (existence and bequest) values, and a suite of complementary methods has been developed to estimate them, compared in Table 2. Whatever the method, valuation is best understood not as an attempt to price nature absolutely but as a decision-support tool that makes otherwise invisible benefits explicit (Guerry et al., 2015; Bateman et al., 2013).

Table 2. Principal methods for valuing ecosystem services.

Method	Basis of valuation	Example application	Key limitation
Market-based	Observed market prices	Timber, fish, crops, fuelwood	Ignores non-market services
Non-market (stated preference)	Willingness to pay / accept	Clean air, aesthetic & cultural value	Hypothetical bias; scope effects
Cost-based	Replacement or damage-avoided cost	Wetland water purification; erosion control	Substitutes imperfectly reflect function
Benefit transfer	Estimates transferred from other studies	Regional & national ES accounts	Uncertainty from site differences

4.1 Market-Based Valuation

Market-based valuation uses existing market prices to estimate the value of ecosystem goods such as timber, fish, fuelwood and agricultural products. The approach is straightforward and widely used but is limited to services with direct market transactions and does not capture non-market benefits such as climate regulation or biodiversity conservation (Boyd & Banzhaf, 2007).

4.2 Non-Market Valuation

Many services, including clean air, aesthetic beauty and cultural value, lack explicit prices. Non-market or stated-preference methods, principally contingent valuation and choice modelling, estimate value from individuals' willingness to pay for benefits or to accept compensation for their loss. These techniques have a fifty-year history and, despite well-known challenges of hypothetical bias and scope sensitivity, remain among the few means of capturing non-use values; contemporary practice increasingly merges contingent valuation with discrete-choice experiments and applies more flexible econometric models (Haab et al., 2020; Czajkowski et al., 2024).

4.3 Cost-Based Approaches

Cost-based methods estimate value from the cost of replacing a service with a human-made alternative or the cost of damages avoided. The natural water-purification service of a wetland, for instance, can be approximated by the cost of building and operating a treatment plant, and the erosion-control service of a forest by the cost of soil restoration. Such methods are intuitive and data-efficient but can misstate value where engineered substitutes imperfectly reproduce ecological functions (de Groot et al., 2002).

4.4 Benefit Transfer

The benefit-transfer method applies valuation estimates from one context to another similar setting, saving time and cost where primary data collection is infeasible. Its reliability depends on the ecological, social and economic similarity of the study and policy sites, and large valuation databases now underpin its application at regional and global scales (de Groot et al., 2012; Brander et al., 2024). Applying such methods, national assessments have estimated the value of India's forest ecosystem services at the order of US$2.5 trillion per year, with tropical dry deciduous forests contributing the largest share, while protected-area studies confirm that intact forests generate net benefits far exceeding those of alternative land uses (Balasubramanian et al., 2026; Pandey et al., 2024; Ninan et al., 2016). Even so, valuing ecosystem services remains inherently complex given their dynamic, interdependent and often intangible nature (Turner et al., 2010). Figure 4 places several headline estimates on a common scale.

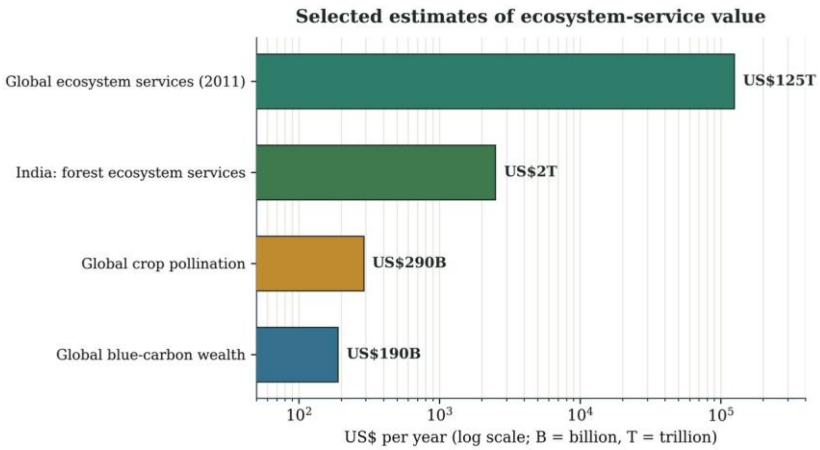


Figure 4. Selected estimates of ecosystem-service value on a logarithmic scale, spanning the global aggregate, India's forest services, the global value of crop pollination and coastal blue-carbon wealth (compiled from Costanza et al., 2014; Balasubramanian et al., 2026; Porto et al., 2020; Bertram et al., 2021).

Sector-specific valuations reinforce the message. Animal-mediated pollination, essential to a large share of global food production, has been valued at between roughly US$195 billion and US$387 billion per year (Porto et al., 2020; Khalifa et al., 2021), and non-bee pollinators add substantially to local food security (Requier et al., 2023). Coastal blue-carbon ecosystems, mangroves, tidal marshes and seagrasses, contribute on the order of US$190 billion per year in carbon-related value alone, besides protecting coastlines and supporting fisheries (Macreadie et al., 2021; Bertram et al., 2021; Choudhary et al., 2024).

5. Threats to Ecosystem Services

Ecosystem services are increasingly degraded by anthropogenic pressure and environmental change. The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) found that approximately 60 per cent of the services it examined, fifteen of twenty-four, were being degraded or used unsustainably, a pattern confirmed and extended by subsequent global analyses (Pereira et al., 2024). Figures 5 and 6 summarize the principal drivers and this headline finding, and Table 3 details their impacts.

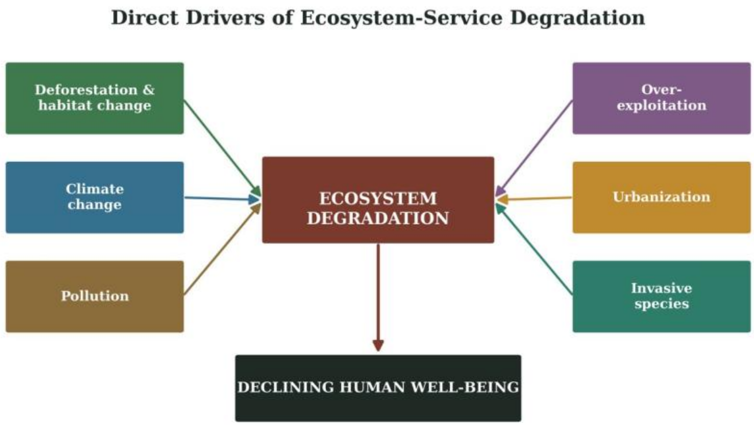


Figure 5. The principal direct drivers of ecosystem-service degradation, deforestation and habitat change, climate change, pollution, overexploitation, urbanization and invasive species, and their convergence on ecosystem degradation and declining human well-being.

5.1 Deforestation and Habitat Change

Deforestation, driven by agricultural expansion, urban development and industrial activity, causes habitat loss, reduces biodiversity and disrupts ecological processes. It diminishes carbon sequestration, climate regulation and soil conservation, and land-use change is among the most consequential of all human impacts on the biosphere (Foley et al., 2005; Cardinale et al., 2012; Maitry et al., 2025).

5.2 Climate Change

Climate change alters temperature regimes, precipitation patterns and seasonal cycles, shifting species distributions, ecosystem productivity and the functioning of ecological processes. It reduces the capacity of ecosystems to provide services and increases the vulnerability of both natural systems and human societies, with losses falling disproportionately on lower-income, natural-resource-dependent regions (Bastien-Olvera et al., 2023; Pereira et al., 2024).

5.3 Pollution

Air, water and soil pollution impair ecosystem health, disrupting biological processes, reducing biodiversity and degrading services. Water pollution damages aquatic ecosystems and the fisheries and water supplies that depend on them, while air pollution harms vegetation and reduces agricultural productivity, illustrating how the degradation of one service cascades through others (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005).

5.4 Overexploitation

The unsustainable extraction of resources, overfishing, excessive logging and the overdraft of groundwater, depletes natural capital and degrades ecosystems. Overexploitation disrupts ecological balance and reduces the long-term availability of services, ultimately undermining the livelihoods and economic stability that depend on them (Kremen, 2005).

5.5 Urbanization

Rapid urbanization drives land-use change, habitat fragmentation and rising pressure on resources. The expansion of built-up areas frequently eliminates green spaces, wetlands and forests, reducing services such as air purification, temperature regulation and flood control (Maitry et al., 2024). Sustainable urban planning and green infrastructure are therefore essential to limit these impacts and maintain ecological balance in cities (Semeraro et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2024). At the planetary scale, several of these pressures are pushing key Earth-system processes beyond safe operating limits, underscoring the urgency of coordinated action (Rockström et al., 2009; Steffen et al., 2015).

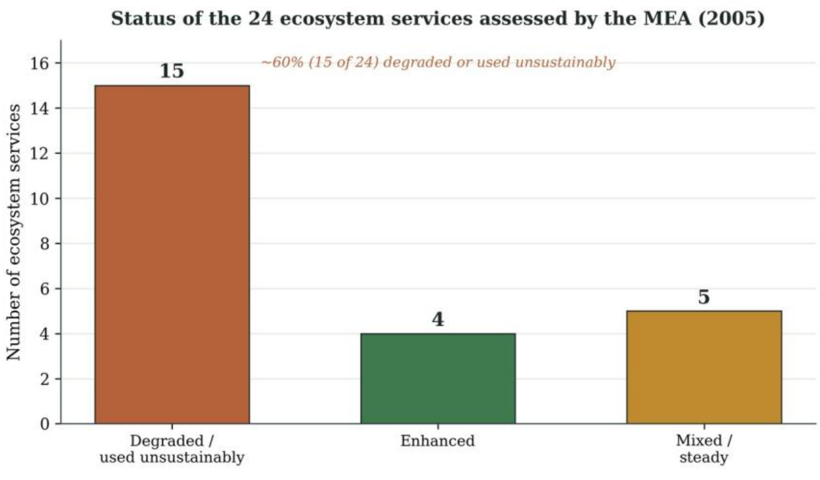


Figure 6. Status of the twenty-four ecosystem services assessed by the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005): about sixty per cent were being degraded or used unsustainably, with only a small number, chiefly provisioning services such as crops and livestock, enhanced.

Table 3. Major threats to ecosystem services and their impacts.

Threat	Main drivers	Impact on ecosystem services
Deforestation & habitat change	Agricultural expansion, urban & industrial growth	Loss of carbon sequestration, biodiversity and soil conservation
Climate change	Greenhouse-gas emissions; warming	Shifts in species ranges and productivity; reduced regulating services
Pollution	Air, water and soil contamination	Impaired water quality, fisheries and agricultural productivity
Overexploitation	Overfishing, over-logging, groundwater overdraft	Resource depletion; reduced long-term service availability
Urbanization	Land-use change; habitat fragmentation	Loss of green space, flood control and temperature regulation

6. Ecosystem Services and Sustainable Development

Ecosystem services and sustainable development are intrinsically linked, since both seek to balance environmental integrity, economic progress and human well-being. Services provide the life-support systems, food, clean water, climate regulation and nutrient cycling, that underpin human survival and economic activity, and thus form the ecological foundation on which sustainable development rests. The concept of sustainable development, as articulated by the World Commission on Environment and Development (1987), requires meeting present needs without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own, which in turn demands that resources be used within their regenerative capacity. The different categories of services contribute in distinct ways: provisioning services support livelihoods and growth, regulating services reduce environmental risk and enhance resilience, supporting services maintain long-term productivity, and cultural services contribute to social well-being and quality of life. The ecosystem-services framework also clarifies the trade-offs inherent in development choices, for example, the way intensive agriculture can raise short-term output while degrading soil, water and biodiversity over the longer term (Bennett et al., 2009; Foley et al., 2005).

The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development makes these links explicit, with several Sustainable Development Goals, notably those on climate action, life below water and life on land, depending directly on the maintenance of ecosystem services (United Nations, 2015; Díaz et al., 2018). Two policy approaches have become central to aligning development with ecological sustainability. The first is payments for ecosystem services, which provide financial incentives to those who conserve and manage ecosystems. Reviews and rigorous evaluations show that such schemes can deliver additional conservation, but that their effectiveness and equity depend heavily on design, targeting and the wider socio-economic context; poorly designed schemes may achieve little or crowd out intrinsic motivations (Wunder, 2007; Engel et al., 2008; Wegner, 2016; Ruggiero et al., 2019; Izquierdo-Tort et al., 2024). The second is nature-based solutions, which harness the restoration and sustainable management of ecosystems to address climate change, water security and disaster risk. A growing evidence base indicates that nature-based interventions are frequently as effective as, or more effective than, engineered alternatives and generate multiple co-benefits, though rigorous evaluation and attention to social outcomes remain essential (Cohen-Shacham et al., 2016; Seddon et al., 2020; Chausson et al., 2020; Villamayor-Tomas et al., 2024).

7. Conservation and Management of Ecosystem Services

Conserving and managing ecosystem services is essential for ecological balance and human well-being, and a range of complementary strategies is required. The protection of natural ecosystems through legally designated areas, national parks, wildlife sanctuaries and biosphere reserves, conserves biodiversity, safeguards habitats and maintains the processes that generate services. Restoration is equally important: afforestation, reforestation and the rehabilitation of wetlands and grasslands rebuild ecological function and service capacity. Global analyses show that well-targeted restoration can yield very large returns; restoring even a modest fraction of converted lands in priority areas could avert a substantial share of expected extinctions and sequester large quantities of carbon, and the benefits of major initiatives such as the Bonn Challenge are estimated to exceed their costs by a wide margin (Strassburg et al., 2020; Verdone & Seidl, 2017; Abhilash, 2021).

Sustainable resource management, through sustainable forestry, agroforestry and community-based natural-resource management, keeps extraction within regenerative limits while supporting livelihoods. Economic instruments, including payments for ecosystem services, carbon credits and green taxes, help internalize environmental costs and reward stewardship (Engel et al., 2008). Policy and institutional frameworks are decisive: at the global level the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992) and its successor targets promote conservation, sustainable use and equitable benefit-sharing, while at the national level India's Biological Diversity Act, 2002, provides the legal foundation for conserving biological resources and sharing benefits, implemented through the National Biodiversity Authority, State Biodiversity Boards and local Biodiversity Management Committees (Government of India, 2002). Integrated ecosystem management at the landscape scale, exemplified by watershed and landscape-level planning, coordinates the management of land, water and biological resources. Community participation is a critical determinant of success, since local users hold valuable traditional knowledge and are more likely to sustain conservation where they receive tangible benefits (Daily et al., 2009). Finally, monitoring and assessment, using ecological indicators, remote sensing and adaptive management, allow strategies to be evaluated and improved over time (Pandey et al., 2024). Persistent obstacles remain, however, including limited awareness, inadequate funding, weak enforcement and conflicts between development and conservation objectives.

8. Global and National Initiatives for Ecosystem Services

Growing recognition of the importance of ecosystem services has produced a suite of global and national initiatives, summarized in Table 4, that seek to integrate ecological values into development planning. At the global level, the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005) evaluated the condition of the world's ecosystems and revealed the widespread degradation of services, while

The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity initiative demonstrated their economic significance and provided tools for incorporating valuation into decisions (TEEB, 2010). IPBES now strengthens the science-policy interface through regular global and regional assessments, playing a role for biodiversity analogous to that of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPBES, 2019; Pascual et al., 2017). International agreements, above all the Convention on Biological Diversity (1992) with its Aichi Targets and subsequent Global Biodiversity Framework, set shared goals for conserving ecosystems, and the Sustainable Development Goals embed ecosystem conservation within the global development agenda (United Nations, 2015).

Table 4. Selected global and national initiatives for ecosystem services.

Initiative	Level / Year	Focus
Millennium Ecosystem Assessment	Global / 2005	First global audit of ecosystem-service condition
The Economics of Ecosystems & Biodiversity	Global / 2010	Economic valuation for policy
Convention on Biological Diversity	Global / 1992	Conservation, sustainable use, benefit-sharing
IPBES	Global / 2012+	Science-policy interface; global assessments
Sustainable Development Goals	Global / 2015	Ecosystem goals (SDG 13, 14, 15)
Biological Diversity Act & NBA	India / 2002	Legal framework; decentralized governance
National Mission for a Green India	India / 2014	Forest/tree cover, restoration, carbon

At the national level, India has developed institutions and programmes aligned with these frameworks. The National Biodiversity Authority implements the Biological Diversity Act, 2002, promoting decentralized governance through State Biodiversity Boards and Biodiversity Management Committees (Government of India, 2002). Flagship programmes include the National Mission for a Green India, under the National Action Plan on Climate Change, which aims to increase forest and tree cover, restore degraded ecosystems and enhance carbon sequestration while improving soil conservation, water regulation and biodiversity (MoEF&CC, 2014). The National Afforestation Programme supports the ecological restoration of degraded forest lands, and the Compensatory Afforestation Fund Management and Planning Authority channels funds collected for forest diversion into afforestation and conservation, helping to compensate for ecological losses. Independent valuations confirm the scale of what is at stake, with India's forest ecosystem services alone worth trillions of dollars annually (Balasubramanian et al., 2026; Ninan et al., 2016).

9. Future Perspectives

The future of ecosystem services will depend increasingly on practical, on-the-ground action rather than on policy declarations alone. Several directions are especially promising. The first is the wider adoption of nature-based solutions, using natural systems, restored wetlands for flood control, or afforestation for carbon sequestration, in place of purely engineered infrastructure, an approach with a rapidly strengthening evidence base and strong alignment with the Sustainable Development Goals (Seddon et al., 2020; Chausson et al., 2020; Baretha et al., 2022). The second is the expansion of community-based ecosystem management, which involves local people directly in conservation; India's experience with Joint Forest Management illustrates that communities protect and sustainably manage ecosystems more effectively when they share in the benefits. The third is urban ecosystem management, as cities incorporate green infrastructure, urban forests, green roofs and rainwater harvesting, to improve air quality, moderate temperatures and enhance well-being (Semeraro et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2024).

A fourth direction is the greater use of economic instruments, payments for ecosystem services, carbon credits and green taxes, which make conservation financially attractive when they are well designed and equitably implemented (Izquierdo-Tort et al., 2024; Wegner, 2016). A fifth is technological advance: Geographic Information Systems, remote sensing and mobile monitoring enable real-time tracking of deforestation, pollution and biodiversity loss, improving the accuracy of assessment and the efficiency of management (Pandey et al., 2024). Finally, individual lifestyle change, reducing waste, conserving water and choosing sustainable products, can collectively relieve pressure on ecosystems. Realizing this potential will require the alignment of strong governance, active public participation and continued scientific innovation, and it must contend with persistent challenges of climate change, population pressure and uneven policy implementation (IPBES, 2019; Pereira et al., 2024).

10. Conclusion

Ecosystem services are fundamental to the survival and progress of human societies, providing essential resources, regulating environmental processes and underpinning economic and social systems. This chapter has shown that ecosystems and human well-being are deeply interconnected, so that any disruption of ecological balance directly affects the quality of human life. The classification and valuation of ecosystem services provide a structured basis for understanding their diverse contributions and for integrating them into planning and policy, even as valuation remains methodologically demanding. The analysis of threats reveals that deforestation, climate change, pollution, overexploitation and urbanization are significantly degrading services, with a majority already used unsustainably, underscoring the urgency of stronger conservation and more sustainable management.

At the same time, global and national initiatives, economic instruments and nature-based solutions offer credible pathways for protecting and restoring ecosystems. Looking ahead, the future of ecosystem services depends on the effective implementation of practical strategies, nature-based solutions, community-based management, technological innovation and sustainable lifestyles, supported by strong governance, public awareness and interdisciplinary research. In conclusion, the conservation and sustainable management of ecosystem services are indispensable for long-term environmental sustainability, economic resilience and human well-being. A holistic and integrated approach that combines ecological knowledge, policy support and active stakeholder participation is essential to ensure that ecosystem services continue to sustain life on Earth for generations to come.

References

Abhilash, P. C. (2021). Restoring the unrestored: Strategies for restoring global land during the UN Decade on Ecosystem Restoration (UN-DER). Land, 10(2), 201.

Balasubramanian, M., et al. (2026). Contribution of forest ecosystem services in India using a meta-regression approach. Environmental and Sustainability Indicators.

Balvanera, P., Pfisterer, A. B., Buchmann, N., He, J.-S., Nakashizuka, T., Raffaelli, D., & Schmid, B. (2006). Quantifying the evidence for biodiversity effects on ecosystem functioning and services. Ecology Letters, 9(10), 1146-1156.

Baretha, G., Maitry, A., & Shah, P. (2022). Assisted natural regeneration: a tool for ecosystem service benefits to achieve sustainable development goals. Patil G. Ecosystem services with sustainable development. New Delhi: International Research Academic Publication, 91-99.

Bastien-Olvera, B. A., et al. (2023). Unequal climate impacts on global values of natural capital. Nature, 620, 982-989.

Bateman, I. J., Harwood, A. R., Mace, G. M., Watson, R. T., Abson, D. J., Andrews, B., ... Termansen, M. (2013). Bringing ecosystem services into economic decision-making: Land use in the United Kingdom. Science, 341(6141), 45-50.

Bennett, E. M., Peterson, G. D., & Gordon, L. J. (2009). Understanding relationships among multiple ecosystem services. Ecology Letters, 12(12), 1394-1404.

Bertram, C., Quaas, M., Reusch, T. B. H., Vafeidis, A. T., Wolff, C., & Rickels, W. (2021). The blue carbon wealth of nations. Nature Climate Change, 11, 704-709.

Boyd, J., & Banzhaf, S. (2007). What are ecosystem services? The need for standardized environmental accounting units. Ecological Economics, 63(2-3), 616-626.

Brander, L. M., et al. (2024). Economic values for ecosystem services: A global synthesis and way forward. Ecosystem Services, 66, 101606.

Cardinale, B. J., Duffy, J. E., Gonzalez, A., Hooper, D. U., Perrings, C., Venail, P., ... Naeem, S. (2012). Biodiversity loss and its impact on humanity. Nature, 486(7401), 59-67.

Chausson, A., Turner, B., Seddon, D., Chabaneix, N., Girardin, C. A. J., Kapos, V., ... Seddon, N. (2020). Mapping the effectiveness of nature-based solutions for climate change adaptation. Global Change Biology, 26(11), 6134-6155.

Choudhary, B., et al. (2024). Blue carbon and the role of mangroves in carbon sequestration: Its mechanisms, estimation, human impacts and conservation strategies for economic incentives. Journal of Sea Research, 199, 102504.

Cohen-Shacham, E., Walters, G., Janzen, C., & Maginnis, S. (Eds.). (2016). Nature-based solutions to address global societal challenges. IUCN.

Congreve, A., et al. (2019). Integrating ecosystem services into environmental decision-making. Journal of Applied Ecology, 56(3), 521-526.

Convention on Biological Diversity. (1992). Convention on Biological Diversity: Text and annexes. Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity.

Costanza, R., d'Arge, R., de Groot, R., Farber, S., Grasso, M., Hannon, B., ... van den Belt, M. (1997). The value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. Nature, 387(6630), 253-260.

Costanza, R., de Groot, R., Sutton, P., van der Ploeg, S., Anderson, S. J., Kubiszewski, I., Farber, S., & Turner, R. K. (2014). Changes in the global value of ecosystem services. Global Environmental Change, 26, 152-158.

Czajkowski, M., et al. (2024). On the inference about a willingness-to-pay distribution using contingent valuation data. Ecological Economics, 220, 108165.

Daily, G. C. (Ed.). (1997). Nature's services: Societal dependence on natural ecosystems. Island Press.

Daily, G. C., & Matson, P. A. (2008). Ecosystem services: From theory to implementation. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 105(28), 9455-9456.

Daily, G. C., Polasky, S., Goldstein, J., Kareiva, P. M., Mooney, H. A., Pejchar, L., ... Shallenberger, R. (2009). Ecosystem services in decision making: Time to deliver. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 7(1), 21-28.

de Groot, R. S., Wilson, M. A., & Boumans, R. M. J. (2002). A typology for the classification, description and valuation of ecosystem functions, goods and services. Ecological Economics, 41(3), 393-408.

de Groot, R., Brander, L., van der Ploeg, S., Costanza, R., Bernard, F., Braat, L., ... van Beukering, P. (2012). Global estimates of the value of ecosystems and their services in monetary units. Ecosystem Services, 1(1), 50-61.

Díaz, S., Pascual, U., Stenseke, M., Martín-López, B., Watson, R. T., Molnár, Z., ... Shirayama, Y. (2018). Assessing nature's contributions to people. Science, 359(6373), 270-272.

Engel, S., Pagiola, S., & Wunder, S. (2008). Designing payments for environmental services in theory and practice: An overview of the issues. Ecological Economics, 65(4), 663-674.

Fanin, N., et al. (2018). Consistent effects of biodiversity loss on multifunctionality across contrasting ecosystems. Nature Ecology & Evolution, 2, 269-278.

Fisher, B., Turner, R. K., & Morling, P. (2009). Defining and classifying ecosystem services for decision making. Ecological Economics, 68(3), 643-653.

Foley, J. A., DeFries, R., Asner, G. P., Barford, C., Bonan, G., Carpenter, S. R., ... Snyder, P. K. (2005). Global consequences of land use. Science, 309(5734), 570-574.

Gómez-Baggethun, E., de Groot, R., Lomas, P. L., & Montes, C. (2010). The history of ecosystem services in economic theory and practice: From early notions to markets and payment schemes. Ecological Economics, 69(6), 1209-1218.

Government of India. (2002). The Biological Diversity Act, 2002. Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change.

Guerry, A. D., Polasky, S., Lubchenco, J., Chaplin-Kramer, R., Daily, G. C., Griffin, R., ... Vira, B. (2015). Natural capital and ecosystem services informing decisions: From promise to practice. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 112(24), 7348-7355.

Haab, T. C., et al. (2020). State of the art of contingent valuation. Oxford Research Encyclopedia of Environmental Science. Oxford University Press.

Haines-Young, R., & Potschin, M. (2018). Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (CICES) V5.1: Guidance on the application of the revised structure. Fabis Consulting.

Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services (IPBES). (2019). Global assessment report on biodiversity and ecosystem services (E. S. Brondízio, J. Settele, S. Díaz, & H. T. Ngo, Eds.). IPBES Secretariat.

Izquierdo-Tort, S., et al. (2024). Redesigning payments for ecosystem services to increase cost-effectiveness. Nature Communications, 15, 3831.

Khalifa, S. A. M., Elshafiey, E. H., Shetaia, A. A., et al. (2021). Overview of bee pollination and its economic value for crop production. Insects, 12(8), 688.

Kremen, C. (2005). Managing ecosystem services: What do we need to know about their ecology? Ecology Letters, 8(5), 468-479.

Macreadie, P. I., Costa, M. D. P., Atwood, T. B., Friess, D. A., Kelleway, J. J., Kennedy, H., ... Duarte, C. M. (2021). Blue carbon as a natural climate solution. Nature Reviews Earth & Environment, 2, 826-839.

Mahato, A., Upadhyay, S., & Sharma, D. (2022). Global water scarcity due to climate change and its conservation strategies with special reference to India: a review. Plant Archives, 22(1).

Maitry, A., Dubey, P., Sharma, D., & Patil, G. (2024). Restoring urban forest ecosystem: a case study from Wetland Biodiversity Park, Talpuri of Chhattisgarh. In Dynamics of Urban Forestry (pp. 91–103). White Falcon Publishing. ISBN 979-8-89222-182-5.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025). Evaluating phytoremediation approaches for the restoration of degraded ecosystems in India. Nature Environment & Pollution Technology, 24(2).

Maitry, A., Sharma, D., Shah, P., Baretha, G., Ramesh, & Patil, G. (2023). Assessment of wetland ecosystem services (RAWES approach) in an urban settlement area: a case study of Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. Indian Journal of Ecology, 50(4), 954–962.

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. (2005). Ecosystems and human well-being: Synthesis. Island Press.

Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change. (2014). National Mission for a Green India. Government of India.

Ninan, K. N., et al. (2016). Valuing forest ecosystem services and disservices - Case study of a protected area in India. Ecosystem Services, 20, 1-14.

Pandey, R., et al. (2024). Quantifying habitat and biodiversity services and hotspots of Indian forests: A GIS-based assessment. Environmental and Sustainability Indicators, 23, 100430.

Pascual, U., Balvanera, P., Díaz, S., Pataki, G., Roth, E., Stenseke, M., ... Yagi, N. (2017). Valuing nature's contributions to people: The IPBES approach. Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability, 26-27, 7-16.

Pereira, H. M., et al. (2024). Global trends and scenarios for terrestrial biodiversity and ecosystem services from 1900 to 2050. Science, 384(6694), 458-465.

Pinto, L., et al. (2022). Ecosystem services and well-being dimensions related to urban green spaces - A systematic review. Sustainable Cities and Society, 85, 104072.

Porto, R. G., de Almeida, R. F., Cruz-Neto, O., Tabarelli, M., Viana, B. F., Peres, C. A., & Lopes, A. V. (2020). Pollination ecosystem services: A comprehensive review of economic values, research funding and policy actions. Food Security, 12, 1425-1442.

Requier, F., et al. (2023). Bee and non-bee pollinator importance for local food security. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 38(2), 196-205.

Rockström, J., Steffen, W., Noone, K., Persson, Å., Chapin, F. S., Lambin, E. F., ... Foley, J. A. (2009). A safe operating space for humanity. Nature, 461(7263), 472-475.

Ruggiero, P. G. C., et al. (2019). Payment for ecosystem services programs in the Brazilian Atlantic Forest: Effective but not enough. Land Use Policy, 82, 283-291.

Seddon, N., Chausson, A., Berry, P., Girardin, C. A. J., Smith, A., & Turner, B. (2020). Understanding the value and limits of nature-based solutions to climate change and other global challenges. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B, 375(1794), 20190120.

Semeraro, T., Scarano, A., Buccolieri, R., Santino, A., & Aarrevaara, E. (2021). Planning of urban green spaces: An ecological perspective on human benefits. Land, 10(2), 105.

Sharma, D., Patil, G., & Shah, P. (2022). Provisioning services of forest ecosystem: a case study of southern Achanakmar Tiger Reserve, Central India. International Journal of Biosciences, 21(4), 1–10.

Steffen, W., Richardson, K., Rockström, J., Cornell, S. E., Fetzer, I., Bennett, E. M., ... Sörlin, S. (2015). Planetary boundaries: Guiding human development on a changing planet. Science, 347(6223), 1259855.

Strassburg, B. B. N., Iribarrem, A., Beyer, H. L., Cordeiro, C. L., Crouzeilles, R., Jakovac, C. C., ... Visconti, P. (2020). Global priority areas for ecosystem restoration. Nature, 586, 724-729.

Tansley, A. G. (1935). The use and abuse of vegetational concepts and terms. Ecology, 16(3), 284-307.

TEEB. (2010). The economics of ecosystems and biodiversity: Ecological and economic foundations (P. Kumar, Ed.). Earthscan.

Turner, R. K., Morse-Jones, S., & Fisher, B. (2010). Ecosystem valuation: A sequential decision support system and quality assessment issues. Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1185(1), 79-101.

United Nations. (2015). Transforming our world: The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. United Nations.

Verdone, M., & Seidl, A. (2017). Time, space, place, and the Bonn Challenge global forest restoration target. Restoration Ecology, 25(6), 903-911.

Villamayor-Tomas, S., et al. (2024). Developing countries can adapt to climate change effectively using nature-based solutions. Communications Earth & Environment, 5, 249.

Vitousek, P. M., Mooney, H. A., Lubchenco, J., & Melillo, J. M. (1997). Human domination of Earth's ecosystems. Science, 277(5325), 494-499.

Wegner, G. I. (2016). Payments for ecosystem services (PES): A flexible, participatory, and integrated approach for improved conservation and equity outcomes. Environment, Development and Sustainability, 18, 617-644.

World Commission on Environment and Development. (1987). Our common future. Oxford University Press.

Wunder, S. (2007). The efficiency of payments for environmental services in tropical conservation. Conservation Biology, 21(1), 48-58.

Zhang, F., et al. (2024). A comprehensive review of the environmental benefits of urban green spaces. Environmental Research, 245, 118837.

CHAPTER 13

Role of Tribal Women in Sustainable Utilization of Non-wood Forest Produce

Poonam Xess*, Animesh Shukla and Garima Tiwari

Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur Chhattisgarh

*Corresponding E-mail: poonamxess95@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Xess, P., Shukla, A., & Tiwari, G. (2026). Role of Tribal Women in Sustainable Utilization of Non-wood Forest Produce. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 224-230). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

The sustainable utilization of minor forest produce is essential for ecological balance, rural livelihoods, and cultural continuity in forest-dependent communities. Tribal and rural women play a pivotal role in this domain, serving as primary collectors, processors, and custodians of diverse forest resources such as medicinal plants, fruits, tubers, gums, resins, and leaves. Their indigenous ecological knowledge, transmitted across generations, ensures that harvesting practices remain selective, seasonal, and regenerative, thereby safeguarding biodiversity and forest health. This chapter highlights the collection and utilization contributions of women in NWFP management, in relation with Indian tribal communities such as the Baiga, Muria, and another tribe. It further examines how women's participation in self-help groups and cooperatives enhance the value addition, market access, and household income, while aligning with global sustainability frameworks like the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)—particularly SDG 5 (Gender Equality) and SDG 15 (Life on Land). By foregrounding women's agency, the chapter reveals their indispensable role in sustainable forestry and biodiversity conservation, while calling for inclusive policies that strengthen their ecological stewardship and socio-economic empowerment.

Keywords: Women; non-wood forest produce; collection, utilization; tribal; SDGs; forestry.

1. Introduction

The sustainable utilization of non-wood forest produce (NWFPs) is a cornerstone of tribal livelihoods, ecological balance, and cultural heritage in India. NWFPs like tendu leaves, mahua flowers, sal seeds, lac, gums, honey, and medicinal plants contribute significantly to rural economies, often accounting for 70–80% of tribal household income in forest regions (Mesta, 2021). Tribal women play a central role to this sector, serving as primary collectors, processors, and custodians of ecological knowledge. Their daily interaction with forests, equips them with nuanced understanding of seasonal cycles, species diversity, and sustainable harvesting practices (Jagati, 2024).

In states such as Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Odisha, and Madhya Pradesh, tribal women from communities like the Baiga, Muria, and Gond exemplify sustainable NWFP management. Baiga women are known for their expertise in medicinal plant identification and selective harvesting, ensuring regeneration (Pandey & Mishra, 2025). Muria women contribute to lac cultivation, practicing ecological restraint to protect host trees (Khemundu & Majhi, 2026). Gond women, through self-help groups, have pioneered value addition in mahua products, enhancing both income and market access (Chhattisgarh SRLM, 2022).

Beyond economic contributions, NWFPs sustain nutrition, healthcare, and cultural traditions. Mahua flowers are used in food and rituals, sal leaves provide eco-friendly utensils, and medicinal herbs, which form the backbone of tribal healthcare (Mesta, 2021). Women's practices such as rotational harvesting, seed dispersal, and community regulation mirror global sustainability frameworks and directly support SDG 5 (Gender Equality) and SDG 15 (Life on Land) (Jagati, 2024).

Recognizing and empowering tribal women in NWFP governance is therefore not only a matter of social justice but it is also a strategic necessity for biodiversity conservation, climate resilience, and rural development. Their role exemplifies how gendered ecological wisdom can bridge the gap between tradition and sustainability.

Tribal Women

↓

Collection → Processing → Value Addition → Market Access

↓

Sustainable Harvesting Practices

↓

Biodiversity Conservation + Livelihood Security

↓

Alignment with SDGs (Gender Equality, Life on Land, Poverty Reduction)

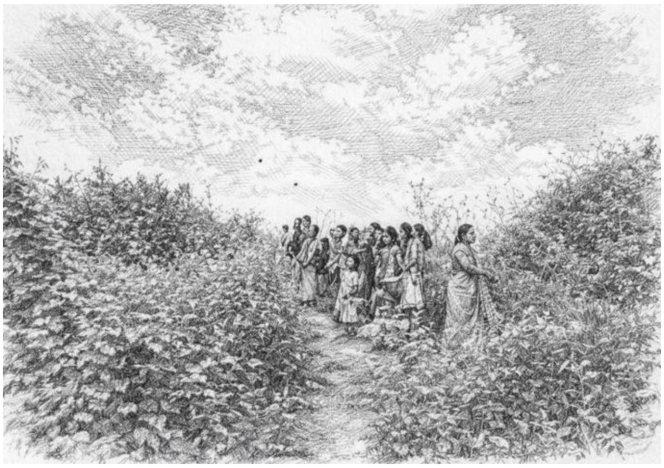
Figure 1. Flowchart showing the cycle of Women–NWFP–Sustainability.

2. Sustainable Collection Pattern by Tribal Women

Tribal women practice sustainable collection of non-wood forest produce (NWFPs) through traditional ecological knowledge, selective harvesting, seasonal rotation, and community regulation, ensuring biodiversity conservation while supporting livelihoods. Their collection methods balance immediate household needs with long-term forest regeneration (Xess and Tiwari, 2024).

2.1 Selective Harvesting

- Women avoid uprooting entire plants; instead, they pluck leaves, fruits, or flowers carefully to allow regrowth.
- Example: Baiga women in Madhya Pradesh harvest medicinal herbs by cutting only mature parts, leaving roots intact for regeneration.
- This prevents species decline and maintains ecological balance (Bhattacharya & Anjali, 2025)



(a)

(b)

Figure 2. (a) Women Involved in the Collection of NWFP from Forest; (b) Sorting of collected NWFPs for usage and replanting

2.2 Seasonal and Rotational Collection

- NWFPs are collected according to natural cycles mahua flowers in spring, tendu leaves in summer, and sal seeds during monsoon.
- Rotational harvesting ensures that no single patch of forest is overexploited.
- Gond and Baiga communities practice seasonal rotation to maintain soil fertility and wildlife food chains (Bhattacharya & Anjali, 2025).

2.3 Community-Based Regulation

- Women often enforce informal rules: restricting collection during flowering/fruiting seasons, banning destructive methods like branch cutting.
- In participatory studies across two Indian states, women emphasized sanctions against unsustainable practices and promoted collective monitoring (Jalonen et al., 2023)

2.4 Value Addition and Post-Harvest Care

- Training programs (e.g., Sashakt Women for Sustainable Forest Produce in Sheopur, Madhya Pradesh) taught women to clean, dry, and pack NWFPs properly, reducing post-harvest losses and improving market value (Humana, 2022).
- This reduces wastage and incentivizes sustainable collection.

2.5 Knowledge Transmission

- Women pass ecological wisdom to younger generations, teaching sustainable practices like seed dispersal and controlled harvesting.
- However, studies show erosion of traditional knowledge due to market pressures and reduced inter-generational transfer, highlighting the need for policy support (Bhattacharya & Anjali, 2025).

3. Sustainable Utilization of NWFPs by Tribal Women

3.1 Economic Utilization

NWFPs are the backbone of tribal economies. Products such as tendu leaves, lac, mahua flowers, sal seeds, gums, and honey are collected, processed, and sold in local and regional markets (Xess and Tiwari, 2025).

- Leaves of tendu are used for making bidis (traditional cigarettes) which provide seasonal employment to thousands of tribal women, often forming a major source of cash income (Tiwari, 2015).
- Lac cultivation, managed by women, generates revenue through resin extraction, which is sold to industries for varnishes and dyes.

- Mahua flowers are dried and sold, either directly or processed into liquor, sweets, and syrups.
- Studies show that NWFPs contribute 70–80% of household earnings in forest-dependent communities, making them critical for financial resilience (Mesta, 2021).

3.2 Nutritional Utilization

Tribal women involvement in collection and consumption for a wide variety of wild fruits, edible leaves for medicinal purposes, tubers, roots, and flowers, reflects the nutritional sustenance which supplement their diets and improve food security (Xess and Tiwari, 2023).

- Wild tubers and roots (e.g., Dioscorea species) provide carbohydrates and are consumed during lean agricultural seasons.
- Fruits like amla (Indian gooseberry) and jamun are rich in vitamins and antioxidants.
- Mahua flowers are used as a staple food in some communities, especially during food scarcity (Tiwari, 2020).
- This diversity of forest foods ensures dietary balance and reduces dependency on external markets (Bhattacharya & Anjali, 2025).

3.3 Healthcare Utilization

Medicinal plants collected by tribal women form the foundation of primary healthcare systems in remote areas where modern medical facilities are scarce.

- Neem leaves are used for antiseptic purposes.
- Tulsi (holy basil) is consumed for respiratory ailments.
- Harra (Terminalia chebula) and bahera (Terminalia bellirica) are used in traditional remedies for digestive issues (Xess et al., 2024).
- Women act as custodians of indigenous medical knowledge, ensuring that families and communities have access to affordable, natural healthcare (Jagati, 2024).

3.4 Cultural Utilization

NWFPs are deeply embedded in tribal rituals, festivals, and cultural practices.

- Mahua flowers are considered sacred and used in religious ceremonies, marriages, and community feasts.
- Sal leaves are stitched into eco-friendly plates and cups, widely used during festivals and social gatherings.
- Sacred groves and medicinal plants hold spiritual significance, with women often leading rituals that reinforce ecological stewardship.

- These cultural practices strengthen community identity and highlight the spiritual connection between tribal women and forests (Chhattisgarh SRLM, 2022).

4. Conclusion

The role of tribal women in the sustainable utilization of non-wood forest produce (NWFPs) is both economic and ecological, deeply rooted in traditional knowledge systems. Their practices such as selective harvesting, seasonal rotation, community regulation, and value addition demonstrate a balance between livelihood security and biodiversity conservation. By ensuring regeneration of forest resources, tribal women act as custodians of ecological wisdom, transmitting sustainable methods across generations. The utilization of NWFPs extends beyond income generation to encompass nutrition, healthcare, and cultural identity. Wild fruits, tubers, and flowers enhance food security; medicinal plants provide affordable healthcare in remote areas and products like mahua flowers and sal leaves sustain cultural rituals and traditions. These multidimensional uses highlight the inseparable link between forests and tribal life.

However, challenges such as market-driven overharvesting, erosion of traditional knowledge, and limited institutional support threaten the sustainability of NWFPs. Strengthening women's agency through policy interventions, fair market access, and capacity-building programs is essential to safeguard both livelihoods and ecosystems. Ultimately, the sustainable utilization of NWFPs by tribal women exemplifies how gendered ecological wisdom contributes to biodiversity conservation, climate resilience, and the achievement of Sustainable Development Goals (SDG 5: Gender Equality, SDG 15: Life on Land). Recognizing and empowering tribal women is therefore not only a matter of social justice but also a strategic pathway toward sustainable development.

Reference

Bhattacharya, A. K., & Anjali. (2025). Non-Timber Forest Products as Drivers of Sustainable Livelihoods and Biodiversity Conservation: A Case Study from Gond and Baiga Tribal Communities of Central India. International Partnership for the Satoyama Initiative. https://satoyamainitiative.org

Chhattisgarh State Rural Livelihoods Mission. (2022). Transformation of Lives: The Changing Era of PVTGs. Government of Chhattisgarh.

Humana People to People India. (2022). Shashakt Women for Sustainable Forest Produce.

Jagati, P. (2024). Issues and challenges with empowerment of tribal women in India: A forest-based study. Asia Minor Studies Review, 12(2), 55–70.

Jalonen, R., Ziegert, R. F., Lamers, H. A., & Hegde, N. (2023). From within and without: gender, agency and sustainable management of non-timber forest products in two Indian states. Small-scale Forestry, 22(2), 323-349.

Khemundu, K., & Majhi, N. (2026). The Role of Tribal Women and Environmental Sustainability in Koraput, Odisha, India. In Democracy in Retreat and the Climate Crisis: Challenges and

Strategies for Adaptation in an Evolving Political Landscape (pp. 195-210). Cham: Springer Nature Switzerland.

Mesta, D. (2021). A study on role of tribal women in collection of forest product and joint management system in India. Indian Journal of Law and Legal Research, 2(2), 1-10

Pandey, S. K., & Mishra, A. K. (2025). Descriptive study Socio-economic status of Baiga tribe with special reference to Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Novel Research and Development (IJNRD), 10(2), 56-61.

Tiwari G 2015. Role of women in conservation and sustainable natural resource management in Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Managerial Studies and Research (IJMSR), 3(7), 153-155.

Tiwari G 2020. Sustainable energy management in low forest density sites of central India: Significance of women participation. Journal Plant Archives, 20(1), 1619-1623.

Xess, P., & Tiwari, G. (2023). Indigenous pattern of collection and utilization of NWFPS and socio-economic sustainability for tribal women of central Chhattisgarh. Indian Journal of Ecology, 50(3), 768-773.

Xess, P., & Tiwari, G. (2024). Indigenous varieties of plant-based food and dietary habits of tribal women in Chhattisgarh. Journal of Biodiversity and Environmental Sciences (JBES), 24(5), 153-158.

Xess, P., & Tiwari, G. (2025). Body Mass Index and Nutritional Status of the Tribal Women in Katghora Forest Division. European Journal of Nutrition and Food Safety, 17(8), 357-366.

Xess, P., Tiwari, G., & Thakur, K. (2024). Role of Traditional Knowledge in Modern Era for Sustainable Utilization of Forest Produce in Central India. Indian Journal of Ecology, 51(6), 1172-1175.

CHAPTER 14

Forests as Carbon Sinks: Mechanisms, Measurement and Climate Mitigation

Nalini[1*], Damini Sharma[1], Ujjwal Swarnkar[2], Aishwary Kant Vaishnav[3]

[1]*Department of Forest Biology and Tree Improvement, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India*

[2]*Department of Silviculture and Agroforestry, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India*

[3]*Department of Forest Product and Utilization, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Sankara, Patan, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India*

*Corresponding E-mail: hnalini.niralaa93@gmail.com

Sustainable Forestry

ISBN: 978-93-88683-36-4

Suggested Citation: Nalini, Sharma, D., Swarnkar, U., & Vaishnav, A. K. (2026). Forests as Carbon Sinks: Mechanisms, Measurement and Climate Mitigation. In G. Patil, B. Dixit & A. Maitry (Eds.), *Sustainable Forestry* (pp. 231-245). International Research Academic Publication, New Delhi.

Abstract

Forests are equally important components of the globally carbon cycle, acting as major carbon sinks that absorb atmospheric CO_2 and store it in biomass and soil. Carbon is distributed across pools such as living biomass, deadwood, litter, soil, and understory vegetation, with soil and biomass being the largest reservoirs. Natural forests provide the highest long-term carbon storage, while plantation forests offer rapid short-term sequestration. Agroforestry systems balance carbon storage with livelihood benefits, especially in regions like Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh, and urban forests support localized climate regulation. Carbon sequestration is influenced by factors such as different forest types, species composition, age, climate, soil conditions, and disturbances like fire and deforestation. However, climate change and land-use changes are weakening forest carbon sinks, sometimes turning them into carbon sources. Accurate monitoring through field measurements, allometric equations, and remote sensing, guided by IPCC standards, is essential for reliable carbon assessment. In India, forests play a crucial role in achieving climate goals, including the target of creating an additional carbon sink of 2.5–3 billion tonnes of CO_2. Agroforestry and community-based management are crucial strategies. Overall, sustainable management, climate-smart practices, and policy support are essential to maintain and enhance forest carbon sequestration.

Keywords: Forest carbon sequestration; Carbon sinks; Soil and Biomass carbon; Natural forests; Plantation forests; Agroforestry systems; Urban forests; Climate change mitigation; Carbon cycle; Forest management; Remote sensing and GIS; Carbon accounting; IPCC guidelines; India forest carbon; Climate-smart forestry.

1. Introduction

Forests play a pivotal role in carbon cycle for global by absorbing atmospheric CO_2 through tree growth and photosynthesis, generating keen interest in harnessing both established woodlands and new plantations to address climate change and achieve targets like the UK's net zero emissions by 2050. In the UK, for instance, 3.1 million hectares of forest hold around 250 million tonnes of carbon (MtC) in living trees, rising to 1,095 MtC when accounting for deadwood, litter, and soils, while also supplying over 10 million green tonnes of timber—mainly softwood (92%)—in 2022 for long-lasting products and renewable energy that sustain carbon storage post-harvest [Forest Research, 2023; Forestry Facts & Figures 2024].

These ecosystems rank among the planet's most expansive and dynamic carbon cycle components, acting as sinks or sources depending on ecological shifts, management approaches, and climate fluctuations (IPCC, 2013; Friedlingstein et al., 2022). Forest sinks achieve net CO_2 removal via biomass expansion that surpasses outflows from decay, respiration, disturbances, and land changes, having offset a major portion of human emissions in recent decades to ease warming trends (Pan et al., 2011; Pan et al., 2024; Walker et al., 2021; IPCC WG II, 2023).

IPCC assessments consistently highlight forests' core mitigation value, advancing preservation, sustainable use, and expansion as prime nature-based countermeasures (IPCC, 2015; Nabuurs et al., 2022). Still, emerging data signal rising risks to sink strength from woodland loss, deterioration, extreme weather, and saturation thresholds (Brienen et al., 2015; Hubau et al., 2020; Fan et al., 2023). This chapter synthesizes global carbon records, IPCC insights, and key studies to examine the resilient yet at-risk nature of forest sequestration.

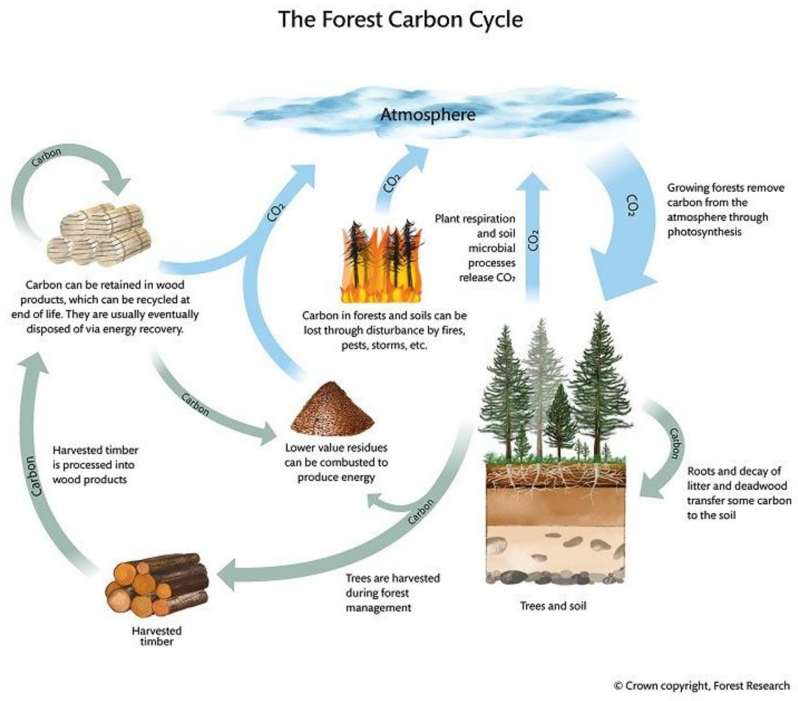


Figure 1. Basic outline of the forest carbon cycle showing how forests provide a route to sequester carbon in land and soil, and that harvested wood products can be used to displace fossil fuels, and provide a long-term carbon store until they are disposed of. Forests and soils can also be disturbed by human behaviour or natural disturbance which can release stored carbon further back to the atmosphere.

2. Forest Carbon basics

Forest carbon stocks encompass multiple compartments, including living:

- Tree biomass (both aboveground and belowground)
- Deadwood
- litter layer, and mineral soil.

Carbon sequestration describes the on-going build up and preservation of carbon in these forest components—trees, woody debris, surface litter, and soils. Forests lose carbon through tree respiration, which emits CO_2 back to the atmosphere, as well as via root turnover and fallen plant matter that feeds into litter and soil pools, where microbial breakdown further releases significant CO_2. Harvested wood extends carbon storage beyond the forest in products ranging from short-lived items like paper to durable goods such as furniture, panel products, and construction timber. At product end-of-life, wood enters recycling loops (e.g., into particleboard) before final disposal, often for bioenergy production; throughout, lower-grade residues serve as renewable fuel, offsetting fossil fuel emissions.

3. Carbon and Tree Growth

Trees absorb atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO_2) through photosynthesis, a process where sunlight powers the conversion of CO_2 and water into sugars that form the building blocks of stems, branches, leaves, and roots. Dry wood contains roughly 50% carbon by weight, making trees natural carbon storehouses. Within a typical tree, the stem holds the largest share (50-65% of total carbon), woody roots account for 20-30%, and the balance distributes across branches, foliage, and fine roots that cycle nutrients back to soil.

A forest stand's carbon accumulation evolves dramatically with age: young plantations start with negligible stocks as trees establish, but mature, dense woodlands with large trees can sequester up to 1,100 tonnes of CO_2 equivalent per hectare—equivalent to offsetting emissions from thousands of cars annually. This age-dependent trajectory underscores why managing rotation lengths and species mix is crucial for maximizing long-term sequestration in restoration projects.

4. Forest and their Carbon Pools

4.1. Living Biomass – Major Carbon Storage Component

Living biomass represents the largest and most dynamic carbon pool in forest ecosystems, accounting for nearly 44% of total forest carbon globally. It includes all living plant materials like trunks of tree, branches, leaves, bark, and roots. Through the action of Photosynthesis, trees absorb atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO_2) and convert it into organic compounds that are stored in woody tissues, which typically contain about 45–50% carbon by dry weight. Young and rapidly growing forests demonstrate high rates associated with carbon sequestration due to active growth, whereas fully mature forests capture large amounts of carbon over long periods, functioning as stable reservoirs. Although current investigation indicate that biomass carbon accumulation has slowed in some regions, living biomass remains the most significant and visible component of forest carbon storage and plays a crucial role in short- to medium-term carbon sequestration. (Ren et al., 2025)

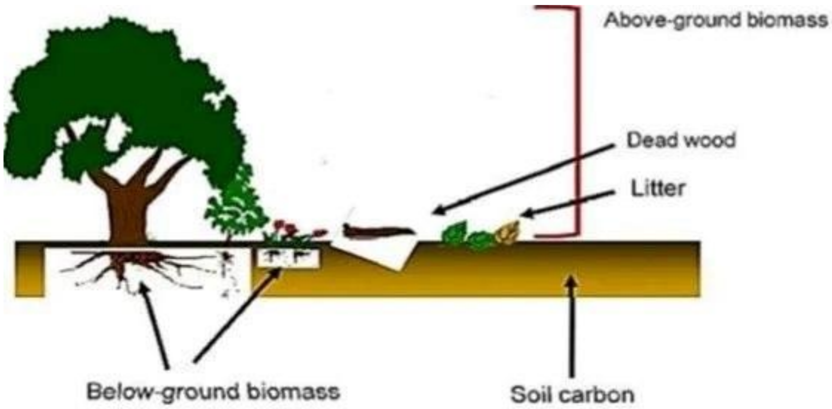


Figure 2. Different pools of carbons in forest ecosystem. Source: Sedjo (1993)

4.2. Dead Wood and Litter – Intermediate Carbon Storage

Dead wood and litter together form an intermediate carbon pool that temporarily stores carbon before it is either released back into the atmosphere or transferred into the soil. Dead wood includes dead trees (snags) and fallen logs, and coarse wood debris, which can retain carbon for several decades due to slow decomposition processes. Litter consists of fallen leaves, twigs, fruits, and fine roots that accumulate on the forest floor and decompose at varying rates depending on environmental conditions. Globally, dead wood and litter contribute approximately 6% and 5% of forest carbon stocks, respectively. These components act as a transitional link between living biomass and soil organic carbon. In tropical forests, high temperature and moisture accelerate decomposition, whereas in boreal regions, low temperatures slow down decay, allowing carbon to remain stored for longer periods. Thus, this pool plays a buffering role in forest carbon dynamics. (Błońska et al., 2017)

4.3. Soil Organic Carbon – Long-Term and Stable Carbon Pool

Soil organic carbon (SOC) is the most stable and often the largest carbon pool in forest ecosystems, storing approximately 45% of total forest carbon globally. It consists of decomposed plant and animal residues, microbial biomass, root exudates, and stable humus formed over long periods. Carbon enters through litter fall on soil, part of root turnover, and microbial processes, and is stabilized through interactions with soil minerals and aggregation. SOC is highly concentrated in the upper portion of soil layers (0–50 cm), where biological activity is greatest, but it can persist at deeper levels for extended periods. As opposed to other carbon pools, if maintained undisturbed, soil carbon can potentially be stored for years or even millennia. However, disturbances such as deforestation, soil erosion, and land-use changes can destabilize this pool and lead to significant carbon losses. Despite some uncertainties regarding the stability of newly added carbon, SOC remains critical for long-term carbon sequestration, soil fertility, and ecosystem resilience (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Maitry et al., 2025b)

4.4. Understory Vegetation – Minor but Significant Contribution

Understory vegetation, which includes shrubs, herbs, grasses, seedlings, and small trees growing beneath the forest canopy, represents a relatively small but ecologically important carbon pool. Although it generally contributes less than 5% of total forest biomass in dense forests, its play more significant role to becomes in open forests, savannas, and agroforestry systems. Understory plants have high productivity and rapid turnover rates, meaning they absorb carbon quickly but also release it back into the system through decomposition. This rapid cycling contributes to continuous carbon input into litter and soil pools. Additionally, understory vegetation enhances biodiversity, protects soil from erosion, and supports nutrient cycling. In agroforestry systems, the presence of understory crops and shrubs can significantly increase overall carbon storage, making this pool important for both ecological balance and sustainable land management. (Haritika et al., 2025)

5. Types of Forest Carbon Sinks

5.1. Natural Forests – High Biodiversity and Large Carbon Storage Capacity

Natural forests are ecosystems that flourish with very little input by people and are characterized by high species diversity, complex canopy structures, and long-lived trees (Pan et al., 2024; Cook-Patton et al., 2020). These forests represent the most efficient and stable carbon sinks due to their ability to store large quantities of carbon in both biomass and soil over extended periods (Brienen et al., 2015; Hubau et al., 2020). Through continuous photosynthesis, natural forests accumulate carbon in multiple layers, including aboveground vegetation, roots, and soil organic matter (Forest Research, 2023; Pan et al., 2011).

Their biodiversity enhances ecological stability, allowing them to maintain consistent carbon sequestration even under environmental stress such as drought (Hubau et al., 2020; Brienen et al., 2015). Studies indicate that natural compared to crops and forests offer a much greater potential to store carbon per hectare, often by 30–50% or more, and may provide substantially higher long-term sequestration potential (Brienen et al., 2015; Cook-Patton et al., 2020). Furthermore, identified natural forest regeneration has been play as a key strategy for climate mitigation, with the potential to sequester billions of tonnes of carbon globally by the end of the century (Cook-Patton et al., 2020; Walker et al., 2022). These forests also act as long-term carbon reservoirs, with carbon stored for centuries in biomass and millennia in soil, making them critical for sustainable climate regulation (Pan et al., 2024; IPCC, 2022).

5.2. Plantation Forests – Fast-Growing Species with Rapid Carbon Uptake

Plantation forests are human-managed systems typically established with fast-growing, often single-species trees such as eucalyptus, teak, pine, or acacia (Nabuurs et al., 2022; Ren et al., 2025). These forests are designed for rapid biomass production and are highly effective in short-term carbon sequestration due to their high growth rates, particularly in the initial phases of development (Ren et al., 2025; Forest Research, 2024). Plantation forests can sequester carbon faster than natural forests in initial years, making them useful for achieving short-term climate targets (Forest Research, 2024; Henttonen et al., 2024; Maitry et al., 2025a).

However, their overall carbon storage capacity is generally lower because of simplified structure, shorter rotation cycles, and periodic harvesting (Brienen et al., 2015; Nabuurs et al., 2022). Additionally, monoculture plantations are more vulnerable to environmental stresses such as drought, pests, and diseases, which can reduce their carbon sequestration efficiency and stability (Hubau et al., 2020; Hlásny et al., 2019). A significant portion of carbon stored in plantation biomass may also be released back into the atmosphere after harvesting, unless it is retained in long-lived wood products (Peng et al., 2023; Birdsey et al., 2018). Despite these limitations, plantations play an important role when established on degraded lands, contributing to carbon uptake while supporting timber and economic needs (Arneth et al., 2021; Sasaki et al., 2016).

5.3. Agroforestry Systems – Combine Crops and Trees, Enhancing Carbon Sequestration

Agroforestry systems integrate trees with crops and/or livestock on the same land, creating multifunctional landscapes that enhance carbon sequestration while supporting livelihoods (Haritika & Negi, 2025; Sasaki et al., 2016). These systems store carbon in tree biomass, crop residues, roots, and soil, resulting in higher carbon storage compared to conventional agricultural systems (Haritika & Negi, 2025; FAO, 2020).

The presence of diverse plant species increases litter input and root activity, which improves soil organic carbon and long-term stability (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Haritika & Negi, 2025). Agroforestry systems offer an intermediate carbon sequestration potential between natural forests and plantations, with significant global potential for carbon storage (Cook-Patton et al., 2020; Walker et al., 2022). In regions like Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh, agroforestry practices involving native species such as teak (Tectona grandis) and siris (Albizia lebbeck) can effectively balance rapid carbon uptake with sustainable soil carbon storage (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Haritika & Negi, 2025).

Additionally, these systems provide multiple benefits, including food, fodder, timber, and income, making them socially and economically viable (Sasaki et al., 2016; FAO, 2020). Their diversified structure also enhances resilience to climate variability, pests, and market risks, making agroforestry a practical and sustainable approach to climate change mitigation (Haritika & Negi, 2025; IPCC, 2022).

5.4. Urban Forests – Contribute to Localized Carbon Reduction

Urban forests include trees and vegetation found in cities, such as street trees, parks, gardens, and green infrastructure (Forest Research, 2023; Nassauer, 2022). Although their total carbon storage capacity is relatively small compared to natural and rural forests, they have a major function to perform in localized carbon management and environmental improvement (Forest Research, 2023; Successor et al., 2019).

Urban trees sequester carbon in their biomass and soil, but their contribution to overall emissions reduction is limited due to space constraints and lower biomass density (NOAA, 2024; USDA, 2023). However, their indirect benefits are highly significant; by providing shade and reducing urban heat, they decrease energy demand for cooling and heating, thereby lowering fossil fuel emissions (USDA, 2023; Nowak et al., 2014).

Urban forests also improve air quality by removing pollutants and contribute to human well-being and urban biodiversity (Forest Research, 2023; IPCC, 2022). Despite limitations such as maintenance requirements and restricted land availability, urban forests are valuable components of climate adaptation strategies, especially in rapidly urbanizing regions (Nassauer, 2022; IPCC, 2022).

6. Factors Affecting Carbon Sequestration

6.1. Forest Type and Species Composition

The type of forest and species composition play a fundamental role in determining carbon sequestration capacity (Pan et al., 2011; Ren et al., 2025). Different forest types—such as tropical, temperate, and boreal forests—vary significantly in productivity, biomass accumulation, and carbon storage potential (Fan et al., 2023; Walker et al., 2019). For example, tropical forests generally exhibit higher rates of photosynthesis due to favorable climatic conditions, leading to greater carbon uptake (Hubau et al., 2020; Brienen et al., 2015).

Species composition is equally important, as fast-growing species like eucalyptus or poplar sequester carbon rapidly, while slow-growing hardwood species store carbon over longer periods (Ren et al., 2025; Nabuurs et al., 2022). Mixed-species forests often show higher carbon storage and resilience compared to monocultures due to complementary resource use and reduced vulnerability to disturbances (Haritika & Negi, 2025; IPCC, 2022).

6.2. Age of Forest

The age of a forest significantly affects its carbon sequestration dynamics (Forest Research, 2024; Kauppi et al., 2022). Young forests exhibit high rates of carbon uptake because trees grow rapidly and actively absorb CO_2 for biomass production (Ren et al., 2025; Forest Research, 2024). As forests mature, the sequestration speed slows, but the total amount of carbon stock will be increases due to accumulated biomass over time (Pan et al., 2011; Walker et al., 2022).

Mature and old-growth forests act as long-term carbon reservoirs, maintaining large carbon stocks even when annual sequestration stabilizes (Pan et al., 2024; IPCC, 2022). Thus, both young and mature forests are essential—young forests for rapid carbon uptake and older forests for sustained carbon storage (Nabuurs et al., 2022; Kauppi et al., 2022).

6.3. Climate Conditions (Temperature and Rainfall)

Climatic factors such as temperature and precipitation strongly influence forest growth and carbon sequestration (Dai, 2013; Walker et al., 2019). Optimal temperature and sufficient rainfall enhance plant growth and carbon uptake, whereas extreme conditions limit productivity (Phillips et al., 2009; Brienen et al., 2015).

In warm and humid climates, high photosynthetic activity leads to greater carbon sequestration (Hubau et al., 2020; Fan et al., 2023), while cold or arid regions experience slower growth and lower carbon uptake (Walker et al., 2019; Kurz et al., 2013). Climate variability, including droughts and heatwaves, can stress vegetation, reduce photosynthesis, and increase respiration, thereby decreasing net carbon sequestration (Dai, 2013; Salomón et al., 2022). Long-term climate change may further alter forest structure and productivity, influencing their role as carbon sinks (IPCC, 2022; Fan et al., 2023).

6.4. Soil Fertility and Texture

Soil fertility and texture are critical factors influencing forest carbon sequestration (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Forest Research, 2023). Fertile soils rich in essential nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus support higher plant growth, leading to increased biomass and carbon storage (Yang et al., 2022; IPCC, 2006).

Soil texture affects water retention, aeration, and nutrient availability. Clay-rich soils are particularly effective in stabilizing soil organic carbon by protecting it from decomposition, whereas sandy soils generally have lower carbon retention capacity due to rapid drainage and limited nutrient availability (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Forest Research, 2023).

Thus, healthy soils enhance both aboveground and belowground carbon storage, playing a crucial role in sustaining long-term carbon sequestration (Haritika & Negi, 2025; Ciais et al., 2022; Satyam et al., 2026).

6.5. Disturbances (Fire, Deforestation, Pests)

Natural and anthropogenic disturbances significantly influence forest carbon dynamics. Events such as forest fires, deforestation, insect outbreaks, and disease can reduce biomass, release stored carbon into the atmosphere, and disrupt ecosystem processes. For example, deforestation not only removes carbon-storing vegetation but also often leads to soil carbon loss. Wildfires can rapidly release large amounts of carbon, although some ecosystems are adapted to fire and may recover over time. Pest infestations can weaken or kill trees, reducing carbon uptake and increasing decomposition. The importance of sustainable forest management in preserving carbon sequestration potential is highlighted by the fact that frequent or severe disturbances can turn forests from carbon sinks into carbon sources.

7. Role in Climate Change Mitigation

Forests are essential for reducing the effects of climate change by acting as the planet's most effective natural solution for removing carbon dioxide (CO_2) from the atmosphere. Through photosynthesis, forests absorb approximately 30% of annual human-produced CO_2 emissions—roughly 11–12 billion tons globally—effectively offsetting the impact of fossil fuel use and industrial activities that drive global warming (Friedlingstein et al., 2022; Forest Research, 2023). This massive carbon sequestration capacity slows the rate of atmospheric CO_2 accumulation, reducing the greenhouse effect and helping to stabilize global temperatures within safer limits.

Different forest types contribute uniquely to this effort: natural forests provide the largest, most stable long-term carbon stores due to their biodiversity and century-old trees; plantation forests offer rapid, short-term carbon uptake through fast-growing species; agroforestry systems integrate carbon storage with food production, making them vital for rural livelihoods in developing nations; and urban forests locally reduce energy demand through shading and cooling, indirectly lowering emissions (Brienen et al., 2015; Fan et al., 2023; Hubau et al., 2020).

However, this critical service is increasingly threatened by deforestation, degradation, droughts, and perturbations that cause forests to become sources of carbon instead of sinks, as seen in the declining Amazon sink and Siberian fire-affected boreal forests (Brienen et al., 2015; Fan et al., 2023). Therefore, preserving existing forests, restoring degraded landscapes, and expanding sustainable agroforestry are not just ecological imperatives but essential climate strategies. By enhancing forest cover and health, we can unlock billions of tons of additional carbon removal potential, making forests a cornerstone of global efforts to limit warming to 1.5°C–2°C under the Paris Agreement (Friedlingstein et al., 2022; Forest Research, 2024).

8. Measurement and Monitoring of Forest Carbon

Accurate measurement and monitoring of forest carbon are important for better understanding carbon sequestration potential, evaluating climate mitigation strategies, and ensuring transparent reporting under international frameworks such as the Paris Agreement (IPCC, 2006; Nabuurs et al., 2022). Forest carbon stock estimation relies on a combination of field-based measurements, mathematical modeling, and advanced technological tools (Forest Research, 2023; FAO, 2020). Field inventory methods involve direct measurement of key tree parameters such as diameter at breast height (DBH), tree height, and species composition. Next, these measurements are utilised to estimate biomass through allometric equations, providing reliable and site-specific carbon data (Forest Research, 2023; Błońska et al., 2017). But these techniques are frequently time-consuming and labor-intensive, particularly in large or inaccessible forest landscapes (FAO, 2020; Poulter et al., 2025).

Allometric equations play an important part in scaling biomass estimates from individual trees to larger forest stands by identifying associations between variables that are measurable and total biomass (Forest Research, 2023; Suarez et al., 2019). In present decades, Geographic Information System (GIS) and remote sensing technologies have significantly enhanced forest carbon monitoring. Different techniques such as satellite imagery, LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging), and drone-based assessments allow large-scale mapping of forest cover, biomass distribution, and temporal changes with high precision (Fan et al., 2023; Araza et al., 2023; Lang et al., 2022). Furthermore, close-range remote sensing approaches, including UAV-based LiDAR, are increasingly recognized as highly effective methods for estimating aboveground biomass, especially when integrated with multi-source datasets (Chen et al., 2024; MaxaPress, 2025).

Standardization of carbon accounting methodologies is ensured through guidelines developed through the Inter-governmental Panel on Climate Change, which provide internationally accepted protocols for greenhouse gas inventories (IPCC, 2006; IPCC, 2019). These guidelines promote consistency, transparency, and comparability across nations and form the scientific basis for global carbon reporting (IPCC, 2006; Ciais et al., 2022). Among the recommended approaches, the stock-difference method and the gain–loss method are widely used to estimate changes in carbon stocks, depending on availability of data and management of forest conditions (Forest Research, 2023).

9. Challenges and Limitations

Despite advancements in measurement and monitoring techniques, forest carbon sequestration faces several critical challenges and limitations. Deforestation and land-use change remain the most significant threats, directly reducing forest cover and releasing carbon was stored into the atmosphere (Houghton & Castanho, 2023; Hansen et al., 2013). The conversion of forests into agricultural land, urban areas, or industrial zones not only diminishes carbon storage capacity but additionally upsets the ecological equilibrium and long-term sustainability (Vijay et al., 2016; Gutman & Radeloff, 2017).

Climate change is made worse challenges by affecting forest health and productivity. Rising temperatures, prolonged droughts, and extreme climatic events can reduce tree growth, increase mortality rates, and intensify disturbances such as wildfires and pest outbreaks (Dai, 2013; Walker et al., 2019). Under such conditions, forests may become carbon sources rather than carbon sinks, more carbon is released than is absorbed. This phenomenon has been noted in places like the boreal forests of Siberia and the Amazon, where droughts and fires have significantly weakened carbon sink capacity (Brienen et al., 2015; Fan et al., 2023; Phillips et al., 2009).

Another major limitation is the uncertainty associated with carbon accounting. Variability in forest types, soil properties, species composition, and methodological approaches can lead to inconsistencies in carbon stock estimation (Bastos et al., 2020; O'Sullivan et al., 2022). In addition, limited data availability—particularly in developing countries—and differences in measurement techniques contribute to global carbon budget uncertainties (Schimel et al., 2014; Sitch et al., 2015).

Reducing these uncertainties is essential for improving the accuracy of climate models and strengthening policy decisions related to carbon management (Pan et al., 2024; IPCC, 2019).

10. The Indian Context of Forest Carbon

Forests in India are precious to achieving national climate commitments and sustainable development objectives. India has pledged to create an additional carbon sink of 2.5–3 billion tonnes of CO_2 equivalent through increased forest and tree cover as the primary component of its obligations under the Paris Agreement (UNFCCC, 2015; India's NDC, 2015). This challenging objective emphasises the importance of afforestation, regeneration, and sustainable methods for forest management across the country (FAO, 2020).

Agroforestry and social forestry initiatives are particularly important in central Indian states such as Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh, where integrated land-use systems combine trees with crops and livestock (Haritika & Negi, 2025; Bhattacharyya et al., 2011). These systems enhance carbon sequestration by increasing both aboveground biomass and soil organic carbon, while also supporting rural livelihoods and economic stability (Bhattacharyya et al., 2011; Sasaki et al., 2016). Commonly used species such as teak (Tectona grandis), neem (Azadirachta indica), and siris (Albizia lebbeck) are valued for their adaptability, rapid growth, and high biomass accumulation (Li et al., 2025).

In addition, national programs such as the Green India Mission (GIM) and Joint Forest Management (JFM) have contributed significantly to increasing forest cover and promoting community participation in forest conservation. These programs improve biodiversity conservation while simultaneously fortifying carbon sinks, soil fertility, and climate resilience (Haritika & Negi, 2025; IPCC, 2022). Recent research indicates that mixed-species agroforestry systems in subtropical India can store substantial amounts of carbon in both biomass and soil, making them vital for achieving national climate targets (Yang et al., 2022; Bhattacharyya et al., 2011).

11. Future Perspectives

Future of forest carbon sequestration depends on integration for scientific advancements, policy support, and community participation. The creation of carbon markets and carbon credit systems, which offer financial incentives for carbon sequestration operations, is one of the most promising strategies (Fuss et al., 2018; ARB Carbon, 2025). By assigning financial value to stored carbon, these mechanisms encourage afforestation, reforestation, and sustainable land management practices (Nabuurs et al., 2022).

Another important tactic for improving carbon sinks is community-based forest management. Active involvement of nearby communities ensures better forest protection, sustainable resource utilization, and long-term success of conservation efforts (Hlásny et al., 2019; IPCC, 2022). Combining conventional ecological knowledge with contemporary scientific methods can further improve forest management outcomes and resilience (Haritika & Negi, 2025).

Moreover, climate-smart the importance of forestry practices is growing in the face of climate change. These include the selection of drought-resistant and native species, adoption of mixed-species plantations, improved soil management, and adaptive strategies to minimize the impacts of disturbances (Kauppi et al., 2022; Hurteau et al., 2019). Such approaches enhance ecosystem resilience while maintaining long-term carbon sequestration potential (Hubau et al., 2020).

12. Conclusion

Forests are vital carbon sinks that absorb a significant portion of atmospheric CO_2, helping to mitigate climate change and maintain ecological balance. Carbon is stored in different pools such as biomass, dead organic matter, and soil, with soil and fully developed forests providing long-term stability. However, the capability of forests to act as carbon sinks is increasingly threatened by climate change, deforestation, and disturbances like fire and pests, which can even convert them through carbon sources. Accurate monitoring using field methods, models, and remote sensing is important for effective carbon management. In India, forests and agroforestry systems play importance in achieving climate targets, especially through initiatives aimed at increasing carbon sinks. Future strategies should focus on sustainable way to manage forest, community participation, and carbon market mechanisms. Overall, protecting and enhancing forests is essential for long-term climate change mitigation.

References

Armstrong McKay, D. I., Staal, A., Abrams, J. F., Winkelmann, R., Sakschewski, B., Loriani, S., ... & Lenton, T. M. (2022). Exceeding 1.5° C global warming could trigger multiple climate tipping points.

Bastos, A., O'Sullivan, M., Ciais, P., Makowski, D., Sitch, S., Friedlingstein, P., ... & Zaehle, S. (2020). Sources of uncertainty in regional and global terrestrial CO2 exchange estimates. Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 34(2), e2019GB006393.

Bhattacharyya, R., Kundu, S., Srivastva, A. K., Gupta, H. S., Prakash, V., & Bhatt, J. C. (2011). Long term fertilization effects on soil organic carbon pools in a sandy loam soil of the Indian sub-Himalayas. Plant and soil, 341(1), 109-124.

Birdsey, R., Duffy, P., Smyth, C., Kurz, W. A., Dugan, A. J., & Houghton, R. (2018). Climate, economic, and environmental impacts of producing wood for bioenergy. Environmental research letters, 13(5), 050201.

Błońska, E., Kacprzyk, M., & Spolnik, A. (2017). Effect of deadwood of different tree species in various stages of decomposition on biochemical soil properties and carbon storage. Ecological Research, 32(2), 193-203.

Brienen, R. J. W., Phillips, O. L., Feldpausch, T. R., Gloor, E., Baker, T. R., Lloyd, J., … Lewis, S. L. (2015). Long-term decline of the Amazon carbon sink. Nature, 519(7543), 344–348. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature14283

Ciais, P., Bastos, A., Chevallier, F., Lauerwald, R., Poulter, B., Canadell, P., ... & Zheng, B. (2022). Definitions and methods to estimate regional land carbon fluxes for the second phase of the REgional Carbon Cycle Assessment and Processes Project (RECCAP-2). Geoscientific model development, 15, 1289-1316.

Cook-Patton, S. C., Leavitt, S. M., Gibbs, D., Harris, N. L., Lister, K., Anderson-Teixeira, K. J., ... & Griscom, B. W. (2020). Mapping carbon accumulation potential from global natural forest regrowth. Nature, 585(7826), 545-550.

Dai, A. (2013). Increasing drought under global warming in observations and models. Nature Climate Change, 3, 52–58.

Fan, L., Wigneron, J.-P., Xiao, Q., Al-Yaari, A., Brandt, M., Fensholt, R., … Ciais, P. (2023). Siberian carbon sink reduced by forest disturbances. Nature Geoscience, 16(1), 56–62. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41561-022-01093-3

Fatichi, S., Pappas, C., Zscheischler, J., & Leuzinger, S. (2019). Modelling carbon sources and sinks in terrestrial vegetation. New Phytologist, 221, 652–668.

Food and Agriculture Organization. (2020). Global forest resources assessment 2020. https://doi.org/10.4060/ca9825en

Forest Research. (2023). Forest carbon factsheet. https://cdn.forestresearch.gov.uk/2023/07/Forest-carbon-factsheet.pdf

Forest Research. (2024). Forestry facts & figures 2024. https://www.forestresearch.gov.uk/publications/forestry-facts-figures-2024/

Friedlingstein, P., Jones, M. W., O'Sullivan, M., Andrew, R. M., Hauck, J., Peters, G. P., … Zaehle, S. (2022). Global carbon budget 2022. Earth System Science Data, 14(11), 4811–4900. https://doi.org/10.5194/essd-14-4811-2022

Gutman, G., & Radeloff, V. (Eds.). (2017). Land-cover and land-use changes in Eastern Europe after the collapse of the Soviet Union. Springer.

Hansen, M. C., Potapov, P. V., Moore, R., Hancher, M., Turubanova, S. A., Tyukavina, A., ... & Townshend, J. R. (2013). High-resolution global maps of 21st-century forest cover change. science, 342(6160), 850-853.

Haritika, & Negi, A. K. (2025). The underestimated role of understory vegetation dynamics for forest ecosystem resilience: a review. Plant Ecology, 226(7), 763-787.

Hlásny, T., et al. (2019). Living with bark beetles: Impacts, outlook and management options. European Forest Institute.

Houghton, R. A., & Castanho, A. (2023). Annual emissions of carbon from land-use change and forestry. Earth System Science Data, 15, 2025–2054.

Hubau, W., Lewis, S. L., Phillips, O. L., Affum-Baffoe, K., Beeckman, H., Cuní-Sanchez, A., … Zemagho, L. (2020). Asynchronous carbon sink saturation in African and Amazonian tropical forests. Nature, 579, 80–87. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-020-2035-0

Hurteau, M. D., North, M. P., Koch, G. W., & Hungate, B. A. (2019). Managing for disturbance stabilizes forest carbon. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 116, 10193–10195.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2006). IPCC guidelines for national greenhouse gas inventories.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2013). Climate change 2013: The physical science basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. https://www.ipcc.ch/report/ar5/wg1/

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2015). Climate change 2014: Mitigation of climate change. Contribution of Working Group III to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. https://www.ipcc.ch/report/ar5/wg3/

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2019). Refinement to the 2006 IPCC guidelines for national greenhouse gas inventories.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2023). Climate change 2022: Impacts, adaptation and vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press. https://www.ipcc.ch/report/sixth-assessment-report-working-group-ii/

Kauppi, P. E., Stål, G., Arnesson-Ceder, L., Sramek, I. H., Hoen, H. F., Svensson, A., ... & Nordin, A. (2022). Managing existing forests can mitigate climate change. Forest Ecology and Management, 513, 120186.

Lang, N., Kalischek, N., Armston, J., Schindler, K., Dubayah, R., & Wegner, J. D. (2022). Global canopy height regression and uncertainty estimation from GEDI LIDAR waveforms with deep ensembles. Remote sensing of environment, 268, 112760.

Law, B. E., Hudiburg, T. W., Berner, L. T., Kent, J. J., Buotte, P. C., & Harmon, M. E. (2018). Land use strategies to mitigate climate change in carbon dense temperate forests. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 115(14), 3663-3668.

Li, X., Bi, C., Wu, J., Zhang, C., Yan, W., Xiao, Z., ... & Su, Y. (2025). Maximum carbon uptake potential through progressive management of plantation forests in Guangdong Province, China. Communications Earth & Environment, 6(1), 9.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., & Dubey, P. (2025a). Quantitative Assessment of Vegetation Dynamics through Species Composition and Diversity Indices in Restoring Nandini Limestone Mines, Chhattisgarh. *International Journal of Bio-Resource & Stress Management*, *16*(4), 1.

Maitry, A., Patil, G., Dubey, P., & Ramesh (2025b). Seasonal analysis of Physico-chemical parameters of mine soil under various forest tree species in Nandini limestone mines, Chhattisgarh. International Journal of Advanced Chemistry Research, 7(2), 6-14.

Murdiyarso, D., Kauffman, J. B., & Verchot, L. (2014). Climate mitigation in tropical wetlands. Carbon Management, 4, 491–499.

Nabuurs, G. J., Mrabet, R., Abu Hatab, A., Bustamante, M., Clark, H., Havlík, P., ... & Towprayoon, S. (2023). Agriculture, forestry and other land uses (chapter 7). IPCC 2022: climate change 2022: mitigation of climate change. Contribution of Working Group III to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, 747-860.

Nabuurs, G. J., Pugh, T. A. M., Huettl, R., & Sitch, S. (2022). The European forest carbon budget response to climate extremes. Global Change Biology, 28(12), 3875–3890.

NOAA. (2024). Trends in atmospheric greenhouse gases. https://gml.noaa.gov/ccgg/trends/

O'sullivan, M., Friedlingstein, P., Sitch, S., Anthoni, P., Arneth, A., Arora, V. K., ... & Zaehle, S. (2022). Process-oriented analysis of dominant sources of uncertainty in the land carbon sink. Nature Communications, 13(1), 4781.

Pan, Y., Birdsey, R. A., Fang, J., Houghton, R. A., Kauppi, P. E., Kurz, W. A., … Hayes, D. (2011). A large and persistent carbon sink in the world's forests. Science, 333(6045), 988–993.

Pan, Y., Birdsey, R. A., Phillips, O. L., Houghton, R. A., Fang, J., Kauppi, P. E., … Murdiyarso, D. (2024). The enduring world forest carbon sink. Nature, 631(8022), 563–569.

Phillips, O. L., Aragão, L. E., Lewis, S. L., Fisher, J. B., Lloyd, J., López-González, G., ... & Torres-Lezama, A. (2009). Drought sensitivity of the Amazon rainforest. Science, 323(5919), 1344-1347.

Poulter, B., Murray-Tortarolo, G., Hayes, D. J., Ciais, P., Andrew, R. M., Bastos, A., ... & Zhang, Z. (2025). The North American greenhouse gas budget: emissions, removals, and integration for CO2, CH4, and N2O (2010-2019): results from the second regional carbon cycle assessment and processes study (RECCAP2). Global Biogeochemical Cycles, 39(4), 1-31.

Requena Suarez, D., Rozendaal, D. M., De Sy, V., Phillips, O. L., Alvarez-Dávila, E., Anderson-Teixeira, K., ... & Herold, M. (2019). Estimating aboveground net biomass change for tropical and subtropical forests: Refinement of IPCC default rates using forest plot data. Global Change Biology, 25(11), 3609-3624.

Sasaki, N., Asner, G. P., Pan, Y., Knorr, W., Durst, P. B., Ma, H. O., ... & Putz, F. E. (2016). Sustainable management of tropical forests can reduce carbon emissions and stabilize timber production. Frontiers in Environmental Science, 4, 50.

Satyam, K., Patil, G., & Maitry, A. (2026). Soil Health Dynamics in Urban Forests versus Wasteland Soils: A Physico-Chemical Perspective from Subtropical Region of Chhattisgarh, India. Journal of the Indian Society of Soil Science, 73(4), 378-390.

Schimel, D., Stephens, B. B., & Fisher, J. B. (2014). Effect of increasing CO_2 on the terrestrial carbon cycle. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 112, 436–441.

Sedjo, R. A. (1993). The carbon cycle and global forest ecosystem. Water, Air, and Soil Pollution, 70 (1), 295-307.

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change. (2015). Paris Agreement.

Walker, W. S., Gorelik, S. R., Baccini, A., Aragon-Osejo, J. L., Josse, C., Meyer, C., … Houghton, R. A. (2022). The global potential for increased storage of carbon on land. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 119(12), Article e2111312119.

Wang, J. A., Baccini, A., Farina, M., Randerson, J. T., & Friedl, M. A. (2021). Disturbance suppresses the aboveground carbon sink in North American boreal forests. Nature Climate Change, 11(5), 435-441.

Yang, C., Shi, Y., Sun, W., Zhu, J., Ji, C., Feng, Y., ... & Fang, J. (2022). Updated estimation of forest biomass carbon pools in China, 1977–2018. Biogeosciences, 19(12), 2989-2999.

Sustainable Forestry is an edited interdisciplinary, India-focused volume of fourteen chapters on the science, governance and practice of sustainable forestry spanning forest carbon and climate mitigation, ecosystem services, social forestry and livelihoods, urban forestry, and frontier perspectives from living root bridges to the materials science of wood. A concise reference for students, researchers, managers and policymakers.

ABOUT THE EDITORS

Dr. Gunjan Patil is an Associate Professor in the Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. She earned her B.Sc. (Forestry) degree from Jawaharlal Nehru Agricultural University, Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh; thereafter, an M.Sc. (Forestry) from Indira Gandhi Agricultural University, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, and Ph.D. (Forestry) from Tamil Nadu Agricultural University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu. Her major research fields are Forestry, Restoration Ecology, Phytoremediation, Seed Technology, and Ecorestoration services. She was awarded an SRF-ASRB, ICAR fellowship in 2009, and qualified for ASRB NET-2009 and 2010. She has over 13 years of experience in teaching and simultaneously has been engaged in research and guiding M.Sc. and Ph.D. students. Presently, she has two major and one minor project. She has published multiple books, International and National research and review articles, conference papers and book chapters. She is an active member in various research organisations and bears various academic and administrative responsibilities at her university.

Dr. Bhavana Dixit is an Associate Professor in the Department of Forestry, Wildlife and Environmental Sciences, Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh, India. Currently she is in deputation as Joint Director at Chhattisgarh Rajya Niti Aayog, Raipur, Chhattisgarh. She has completed her M.Sc. (Forestry) with Gold Medal and Ph.D. (Forestry) from Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh. She has over 20 years of experience in teaching and research in the fields of Forestry and Environmental Sciences. She has made significant contributions to academic teaching, research, and natural resource management. Her major research interests include Forest Pathology, Lichenology, Carbon Forestry, Natural Resource Management, Forest Ecology, Biodiversity, Applied Microbiology, and Soil Forestry. She has authored and contributed to several books, national and international research and review articles, conference papers, and book chapters. She has been actively involved in teaching, research, student mentoring, and academic activities.

Dr. Abhishek Maitry is currently working as a Guest Teacher in the College of Forestry and Research Station, Mahatma Gandhi Udyanikee Evam Vanikee Vishwavidyalaya, Durg, Chhattisgarh, India. He has completed his M.Sc. (Forestry, Wildlife & Environmental Sciences), and Ph.D. (Forestry & Environmental Sciences) degrees from Guru Ghasidas Vishwavidyalaya, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh. His research interests encompass Restoration Ecology, Soil Reclamation, Wetland Ecology, Forest Genetics, and Wildlife Sciences. He has qualified UGC-NET in Environmental Sciences and Forestry and published multiple research and review articles, book chapters, and conference papers. He has over three years of professional experience, including 1.5 years as a Senior Research Fellow at the State Forest Research & Training Institute, Raipur, along with experience in teaching, research, field training, and environmental outreach programmes.

MRP: INR 750/-

ISBN 978-93-88683-36-4

9 789388 683364

Publisher: International Research Academic Publication
233/1, Pkt: D-12, Sector-7, Rohini, New Delhi-110085, India
Contact: +91-9555269393 | Website: www.irapublication.com
info@irapublication.com